Essential Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students of English

Raymond Murphy

Third Edition

FREE pull-out grammar reference pocket guide
Essential Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students of English

with answers

THIRD EDITION

Raymond Murphy

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org
Contents

Thanks vii
To the student viii
To the teacher x

Present
1 am/is/are
2 am/is/are (questions)
3 I am doing (present continuous)
4 are you doing? (present continuous questions)
5 I do/work/like etc. (present simple)
6 I don’t … (present simple negative)
7 Do you … ? (present simple questions)
8 I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)
9 I have … and I’ve got …

Past
10 was/were
11 worked/got/went etc. (past simple)
12 I didn’t … Did you … ? (past simple negative and questions)
13 I was doing (past continuous)
14 I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)

Present perfect
15 I have done (present perfect 1)
16 I’ve just … I’ve already … I haven’t … yet (present perfect 2)
17 Have you ever … ? (present perfect 3)
18 How long have you … ? (present perfect 4)
19 for since ago
20 I have done (present perfect) and I did (past)

Passive
21 is done was done (passive 1)
22 is being done has been done (passive 2)

Verb forms
23 be/have/do in present and past tenses
24 Regular and irregular verbs

Future
25 What are you doing tomorrow?
26 I’m going to …
27 will/shall 1
28 will/shall 2

Modals, imperative etc.
29 might
30 can and could
31 must mustn’t don’t need to

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS TO STUDY, USE THE STUDY GUIDE ON PAGE 271
should
I have to ...
Would you like ...? I'd like ...
Do this! Don't do that! Let's do this!
I used to ...

There and it
there is there are
there was/were there has/have been there will be
It ...

Auxiliary verbs
I am, I don't etc.
Have you? Are you? Don't you? etc.
too/either so am I / neither do I etc.
isn't, haven't, don't etc. (negatives)

Questions
is it ...? have you ... ? do they ... ? etc. (questions 1)
Who saw you? Who did you see? (questions 2)
Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)
What ...? Which ...? How ...? (questions 4)
How long does it take ...?
Do you know where ...? I don't know what ... etc.

Reported speech
She said that ... He told me that ...

-ing and to ...
work/working go/going do/doing
to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)
I want you to ... I told you to ...
I went to the shop to ...

Go, get, do, make and have
go to ..., go on ..., go for ..., go -ing
get
do and make
have

Pronouns and possessives
I/me he/him they/them etc.
my/his/their etc.
Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers etc.
I/me/my/mine
myself/yourselves/themselves etc.
's (Kate's camera / my brother's car etc.)
A and the
65 a/an ...
66 train(s) bus(es) (singular and plural)
67 a bottle / some water (countable/uncountable 1)
68 a cake / some cake / some cakes (countable/uncountable 2)
69 a/an and the
70 the ...
71 go to work go home go to the cinema
72 I like music I hate exams
73 the ... (names of places)

Determiners and pronouns
74 this/that/these/those
75 one/ones
76 some and any
77 not + any no none
78 not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing
79 somebody/anything/nowhere etc.
80 every and all
81 all most some any no/none
82 both either neither
83 a lot much many
84 (a) little (a) few

Adjectives and adverbs
85 old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)
86 quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)
87 old/older expensive / more expensive
88 older than ... more expensive than ...
89 not as ... as
90 the oldest the most expensive
91 enough
92 too

Word order
93 He speaks English very well. (word order 1)
94 always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)
95 still yet already
96 Give me that book! Give it to me!

Conjunctions and clauses
97 and but or so because
98 When ...
99 If we go ... If you see ... etc.
100 If I had ... If we went ... etc.
101 a person who ... a thing that/which ... (relative clauses 1)
102 the people we met the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)
Prepositions
103 at 8 o'clock on Monday in April
104 from ... to until since for
105 before after during while
106 in at on (places 1)
107 in at on (places 2)
108 to in at (places 3)
109 under, behind, opposite etc.
110 up, over, through etc.
111 on at by with about
112 afraid of ... , good at ... etc. of/at/for etc. (prepositions) + -ing
113 listen to ... , look at ... etc. (verb + preposition)

Phrasal verbs
114 go in, fall off, run away etc. (phrasal verbs 1)
115 put on your shoes put your shoes on (phrasal verbs 2)

Appendices
Appendix 1 Active and passive 243
Appendix 2 List of irregular verbs 244
Appendix 3 Irregular verbs in groups 245
Appendix 4 Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.) 246
Appendix 5 Spelling 248
Appendix 6 Phrasal verbs (take off / give up etc.) 250
Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (put out a fire / give up your job etc.) 251

Additional exercises 252

Study guide 271

Key to Exercises 283
Key to Additional exercises 310
Key to Study guide 313

Index 315

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS TO STUDY, USE THE STUDY GUIDE ON PAGE 271.
Thanks

For their help in producing this third edition of Essential Grammar in Use, I would like to thank Liz Driscoll, Jessica Roberts and Alison Sharpe. I would also like to thank the teachers and reviewers from various countries who provided me with feedback on the previous edition.

Illustrations by Kate Charlesworth, Richard Deverell, Gillian Martin, Roger Penwill, Lisa Smith, Ian West and Simon Williams

Design by Kamae Design
To the student (working without a teacher)

This is a grammar book for elementary students of English. There are 115 units in the book and each unit is about a different point of English grammar. There is a list of units at the beginning of the book (Contents).

Do not study all the units in order from beginning to end. It is better to choose the units that you need to do. For example, if you have a problem with the present perfect (I have been, he has done etc.), study Units 15–20.

Use the Contents or the Index (at the back of the book) to find the unit (or units) that you need.

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the Study guide at the back of the book.

Study guide (pages 271–282)
Each unit is two pages. The information is on the left-hand page and the exercises are on the right:

Study the left-hand page (information), and then do the exercises on the right-hand page. Use the Key to check your answers. The Key is on pages 283–309. Study the left-hand page again if necessary.

Don’t forget the seven Appendices at the back of the book (pages 243–251). These will give you information about active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms, spelling and phrasal verbs.

There are also Additional exercises at the back of the book (pages 252–270). There is a list of these exercises on page 252.

**CD Rom**

You can buy this book with or without a CD Rom. On the CD Rom there are more exercises on all the units, and these are different from the exercises in the book. There are also more than 600 test questions.
To the teacher

The most important features of this book are:

- It is a grammar book. It does not deal with other aspects of the language.
- It is for elementary learners. It does not cover areas of grammar which are not normally taught at elementary level.
- It is a reference book with exercises. It is not a course book and is not organised progressively.
- It is addressed to learners and intended for self-study.

Organisation of the book

There are 115 units in the book, each one focusing on a particular area of grammar. The material is organised in grammatical categories, such as tenses, questions and articles. Units are not ordered according to difficulty, and should therefore be selected and used in the order appropriate for the learner(s). The book should not be worked through from beginning to end. The units are listed in the Contents and there is a comprehensive Index at the end of the book.

Each unit has the same format consisting of two facing pages. The grammar point is presented and explained on the left-hand page and the corresponding exercises are on the right. There are seven Appendices (pages 243–251) dealing with active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms (contractions), spelling and phrasal verbs. It might be useful for teachers to draw students’ attention to these.

At the back of the book there is a set of Additional exercises (pages 252–270). These exercises provide ‘mixed’ practice bringing together grammar points from a number of different units (especially those concerning verb forms). There are 35 exercises in this section and there is a full list on page 252.

Also at the back of the book there is a Study guide to help students decide which units to study — see page 271.

Finally, there is a Key (pages 283–309) for students to check their answers to all the exercises in the book. An edition without the Study guide and Key is available for teachers who would prefer it for their students.

Level

The book is for elementary learners, i.e. learners with very little English, but not for complete beginners. It is intended mainly for elementary students who are beyond the early stages of a beginners’ course. It could also be used by low-intermediate learners whose grammar is weaker than other aspects of their English or who have problems with particular areas of basic grammar.

The explanations are addressed to the elementary learner and are therefore as simple and as short as possible. The vocabulary used in the examples and exercises has also been restricted so that the book can be used at this level.

Using the book

The book can be used by students working alone (see To the student) or as supplementary course material. In either case the book can serve as an elementary grammar book.

When used as course material, the book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help and practice.
In some cases it may be desirable to use the left-hand pages (presentation and explanation) in class, but it should be noted that these have been written for individual study and reference. In most cases, it would probably be better for teachers to present the grammar point in their preferred way with the exercises being done for homework. The left-hand page is then available for later reference by the student.

Some teachers may prefer to keep the book for revision and remedial work. In this case, individual students or groups of students can be directed to the appropriate units for self-study and practice.

**CD Rom**

The book is sold with or without a CD Rom. This contains further exercises on all the units in the book, as well as a bank of more than 600 test questions from which users can select to compile their own tests. The CD Rom is also available separately.

---

**Essential Grammar in Use Third Edition**

This is a new edition of *Essential Grammar in Use*. The differences between this edition and the second edition are:

- The book has been redesigned with new colour illustrations.
- There is one new unit (Unit 35) and some reorganisation, so that most units have different numbers from the previous edition.
- There are many (usually minor) revisions to the explanations, examples and exercises.
- There are two new pages of *Additional exercises* (pages 252–270).
- There is a new *Study guide* at the back of the book to help users decide which units to study.
- There is a new CD Rom with further exercises to accompany the book.
am/is/are

**positive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am</th>
<th>(I'm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he is</td>
<td>(he's)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she is</td>
<td>(she's)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it is</td>
<td>(it's)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we are</td>
<td>(we're)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are</td>
<td>(you're)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are</td>
<td>(they're)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**negative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am not</th>
<th>(I'm not)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he is not</td>
<td>(he's not or he isn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she is not</td>
<td>(she's not or she isn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it is not</td>
<td>(it's not or it isn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we are not</td>
<td>(we're not or we aren't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are not</td>
<td>(you're not or you aren't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are not</td>
<td>(they're not or they aren't)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I'm cold. Can you close the window, please?
- I'm 32 years old. My sister is 29.
- Steve is ill. He's in bed.
- My brother is afraid of dogs.
- It's ten o'clock. You're late again.
- Ann and I are good friends.
- Your keys are on the table.
- I'm tired, but I'm not hungry.
- Tom isn't interested in politics. He's interested in music.
- Jane isn't a teacher. She's a student.
- Those people aren't English. They're Australian.
- It's sunny today, but it isn't warm.

that's = that is   there's = there is   here's = here is

- Thank you. That's very kind of you.
- Look! There's Chris.
- 'Here's your key.' 'Thank you.'
1.1 Write the short form (she’s / we aren’t etc.).
1. she is .............................................. 3. it is not .............................................. 5. I am not ..............................................
2. they are .............................................. 4. that is .............................................. 6. you are not ..............................................

1.2 Write am, is, or are.
1. The weather ........... nice today. 5. Look! There .......... Carol.
2. I ........... not rich. 6. My brother and I ........... good tennis players.
3. This bag ........... heavy. 7. Emily ........... at home. Her children ........... at school.
4. These bags ........... heavy. 8. I ........... a taxi driver. My sister ........... a nurse.

1.3 Complete the sentences.
1. Steve is ill. .............. in bed.
2. I’m not hungry, but .............. thirsty.
3. Mr Thomas is a very old man. .............. 98.
4. These chairs aren’t beautiful, but .............. comfortable.
5. The weather is nice today. .............. warm and sunny.
6. ‘ .......... late.’ ‘No, I’m not. I’m early!’
7. Catherine isn’t at home. .............. at work.
8. ‘ .......... your coat.’ ‘Oh, thank you very much.’

1.4 Look at Lisa’s sentences in 1A. Now write sentences about yourself.
1. (name?) My .............................................. 5. (favourite colour or colours?)
2. (from?) I .............................................. My ..............................................
3. (age?) I .............................................. 6. (interested in ... ?)
4. (job?) I .............................................. 1 ..............................................

1.5 Write sentences for the pictures. Use:
afraid angry cold hot hungry thirsty

1. She’s thirsty. .............................................. 3. He .............................................. 5. ..............................................
2. They .............................................. 4. .............................................. 6. ..............................................

1.6 Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use is/ain’t or are/aren’t.
1. (it / hot today) .............................................. 5. (it isn’t hot today, or It’s hot today)
2. (it / windy today) It .............................................. .............................................. .............................................. ..............................................
3. (my hands / cold) My .............................................. .............................................. .............................................. ..............................................
4. (Brazil / a very big country) .............................................. .............................................. .............................................. ..............................................
5. (diamonds / cheap) .............................................. .............................................. .............................................. ..............................................
6. (Toronto / in the US) .............................................. .............................................. .............................................. ..............................................

Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use I’m / I’m not.
7. (tired) .............................................. 1 .............................................. .............................................. ..............................................
8. (hungry) .............................................. .............................................. .............................................. ..............................................
9. (a good swimmer) .............................................. .............................................. .............................................. ..............................................
10. (interested in football) .............................................. .............................................. .............................................. ..............................................

→ Additional exercise 1 (page 252)
am/is/are (questions)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am</td>
<td>am I?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he is</td>
<td>is he?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she is</td>
<td>she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it is</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we are</td>
<td>are we?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are</td>
<td>are you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are</td>
<td>are they?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 'Am I late?' 'No, you’re on time.'
- 'Is your mother at home?' 'No, she’s out.'
- 'Are your parents at home?' 'No, they’re out.'
- 'Is it cold in your room?' 'Yes, a little.'
- 'Your shoes are nice. Are they new?'

We say:
- 'Is she at home?' / 'Is your mother at home?' (not Is at home your mother?)
- 'Are they new?' / 'Are your shoes new?' (not Are new your shoes?)

Where ...? / What ...? / Who ...? / How ...? / Why ...?

- 'Where is your mother? Is she at home?'
- 'Where are you from?' 'Canada.'
- 'What colour is your car?' 'It’s red.'
- 'How old is Joe?' 'He’s 24.'
- 'How are your parents? Are they well?'
- 'These postcards are nice. How much are they?'
- 'This hotel isn’t very good. Why is it so expensive?'

what’s = what is who’s = who is how’s = how is where’s = where is
- 'What’s the time?'
- 'Who’s that man?'
- 'Where’s Lucy?'
- 'How’s your father?'

Short answers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am.</th>
<th>I’m not.</th>
<th>I’m isn’t.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes, he is.</td>
<td>No, he isn’t.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, she is.</td>
<td>No, she isn’t.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, it is.</td>
<td>No, it isn’t.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we are.</td>
<td>we’re not.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are.</td>
<td>you’re not.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are.</td>
<td>they’re not.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am.'
- 'Are you hungry?' 'No, I’m not, but I’m thirsty.'
- 'Is your friend English?' 'Yes, he is.'
- 'Are these your keys?' 'Yes, they are.'
- 'That’s my seat.' 'No, it isn’t.'
2.1 Find the right answers for the questions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. Is your car blue?</td>
<td>B. No, I’m not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Is Linda from London?</td>
<td>C. Yes, you are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Where’s Ann from?</td>
<td>E. Black.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. What colour is your bag?</td>
<td>F. No, it’s black.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. How is George?</td>
<td>H. No, she’s American.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2 Make questions with these words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(is / at home / your mother)</th>
<th>Is your mother at home?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(your parents / are / well)</td>
<td>Are your parents well?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(interesting / is / your job)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(the shops / are / open today)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(from / where / you / are)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(interested in sport / you / are)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(is / near here / the post office)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(at school / are / your children)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(you / are / late / why)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.3 Complete the questions. Use What ... / Who ... / Where ... / How ...

1. How are your parents? They’re very well.
2. How is the bus stop? At the end of the street.
3. How are your children? Five, six and ten.
4. How are these oranges? £1.50 a kilo.
5. How is your favourite sport? Skiing.
6. How is the man in this photograph? That’s my father.
7. How are your new shoes? Black.

2.4 Write the questions.

1. What’s your name? PAUL
2. What’s your name? Paul.
3. What’s your name? No, I’m Australian.
5. What’s your name? No, I’m a lawyer.
6. What’s your name? Yes, I am.
7. What’s your name? No, she’s a designer.
8. What’s your name? She’s Italian.
9. What’s your name? Anna.
10. What’s your name? She’s 27.

2.5 Write short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn’t. etc.).

1. Are you married? No, I’m not.
2. Are you thirsty? Yes.
3. Is it cold today? Yes.
5. Is it dark now? No.
6. Are you a teacher? Yes.

→ Additional exercises 1–2 (pages 252–53)
I am doing (present continuous)

She's eating.
She isn't reading.

It's raining.
The sun isn't shining.

They're running.
They aren't walking.

The present continuous is:
am/is/are + doing/eating/running/writing etc.

| I       | am (not) | he she it     | -ing
|---------|----------|---------------|------
|         |          |              |      |

- I'm working. I'm not watching TV.
- Maria is reading a newspaper.
- She isn't eating. (or She's not eating.)
- The phone is ringing.
- We're having dinner.
- You're not listening to me. (or You aren't listening ...)
- The children are doing their homework.

am/is/are + -ing = something is happening now:

I'm working
she's wearing a hat
they're playing football
I'm not watching television

past       now       future

- Please be quiet. I'm working. (= I'm working now)
- Look, there's Sarah. She's wearing a brown coat. (= she is wearing it now)
- The weather is nice. It's not raining.
- 'Where are the children?' 'They're playing in the park.'
- (on the phone) We're having dinner now. Can I phone you later?
- You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):
come → coming  write → writing  dance → dancing
run → running  sit → sitting  swim → swimming
lie → lying

am/is/are → Unit 1  are you doing? (questions) → Unit 4  I am doing and I do → Unit 8
What are you doing tomorrow? → Unit 25
3.1 What are these people doing? Use these verbs to complete the sentences:

- eat  have  lie  play  sit  wait

1. She's eating an apple.
2. He is waiting for a bus.
3. They are playing football.
4. He is sitting on the floor.
5. She is eating breakfast.
6. They are sitting on the table.

3.2 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs:

- build  cook  go  have  stand  stay  swim  work

1. Please be quiet. I'm working.
2. 'Where's John?' 'He's in the kitchen. He is cooking.'
3. 'You are standing on my foot.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'
4. Look! Somebody is swimming in the river.
5. We are here on holiday. We are staying at the Central Hotel.
6. 'Where's Sue?' 'She is having a shower.'
7. They are working on a new hotel in the city centre at the moment.
8. I am going now. Goodbye.

3.3 Look at the picture. Write sentences about Jane. Use She's -ing or She isn't -ing.

1. (have dinner) Jane isn't having dinner.
2. (watch television) She is watching television.
3. (sit on the floor) She is sitting on the floor.
4. (read a book) She is reading a book.
5. (play the piano) She is playing the piano.
6. (laugh) She is laughing.
7. (wear a hat) She is wearing a hat.
8. (write a letter) She is writing a letter.

Jane

3.4 What's happening now? Write true sentences.

1. (I / wash / my hair) I'm not washing my hair.
2. (it / snow) It's snowing, or it isn't snowing.
3. (I / sit / on a chair) I'm sitting on a chair.
4. (I / eat) I'm eating.
5. (it / rain) It's raining, or it isn't raining.
6. (I / learn / English) I'm learning English.
7. (I / listen / to music) I'm listening to music.
8. (the sun / shine) The sun is shining.
9. (I / wear / shoes) I'm wearing shoes.
10. (I / read / a newspaper) I'm reading a newspaper.
are you doing?  
(present continuous questions)

**positive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am</th>
<th>he is</th>
<th>she is</th>
<th>it is</th>
<th>we are</th>
<th>you are</th>
<th>they are</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| doing | working | going | staying | etc. | etc. | etc.

**question**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am I</th>
<th>he is</th>
<th>she is</th>
<th>it is</th>
<th>we are</th>
<th>you are</th>
<th>they are</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| doing? | working? | going? | staying? | etc. | etc. | etc.

- 'Are you feeling OK?' 'Yes, I'm fine, thanks.'
- 'Is it raining?' 'Yes, take an umbrella.'
- Why are you wearing a coat? It's not cold.
- 'What's Paul doing?' 'He's reading the newspaper.'
- 'What are the children doing?' 'They're watching television.'
- Look, there's Emily! Where's she going?
- Who are you waiting for? Are you waiting for Sue?

Study the word order:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>is/are</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>-ing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is he working today?</td>
<td>Is Paul working today? (not Is working Paul today?)</td>
<td>Is they going?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Short answers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes,</th>
<th>I am.</th>
<th>I'm</th>
<th>or</th>
<th>No,</th>
<th>I'm</th>
<th>or</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am.</td>
<td>he's</td>
<td>he's</td>
<td>isn't.</td>
<td>she's</td>
<td>she's</td>
<td>isn't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he is.</td>
<td>it's</td>
<td>it's</td>
<td></td>
<td>we're</td>
<td>they're</td>
<td>aren't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she is.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it is.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we are.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 'Are you going now?' 'Yes, I am.'
- 'Is Paul working today?' 'Yes, he is.'
- 'Is it raining?' 'No, it isn't.'
- 'Are your friends staying at a hotel?' 'No, they aren't. They're staying with me.'

I am doing → Unit 3  What are you doing tomorrow? → Unit 25  questions → Units 44-47
Exercises

4.1 Look at the pictures and write the questions.

1. (you / watch / it?) 
   Are you watching it?
   No, you can turn it off.

2. (you / go / now?)
   Yes, see you tomorrow.

3. (it / rain?)
   No, not at the moment.

4. (you / enjoy / the film?)
   Yes, it's very funny.

5. (that clock / work?)
   No, it's broken.

6. (you / wait / for a bus?)
   No, for a taxi.

4.2 Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use:

cry eat go laugh look at read

1. What ______ are you _______?

2. Where ________ she ______?

3. What ____________?

4. Why ________________?

5. What ________________?

6. Why ________________?

4.3 Make questions from these words. Put the words in the right order.

1. (is / working / Paul / today) 
   Is Paul working today?

2. (what / the children / are / doing) 
   What are the children doing?

3. (you / are / listening / to me)
   Why are you listening to me?

4. (where / your friends / are / going)
   Where are your friends going?

5. (are / watching / your parents / television)
   Are you watching your parents on television?

6. (what / Jessica / is / cooking)
   What is Jessica cooking?

7. (why / you / are / looking / at me)
   Why are you looking at me?

8. (is / coming / the bus)
   Is the bus coming?

4.4 Write short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn't. etc.).

1. Are you watching TV? 
   No, I'm not.

2. Are you wearing a watch?

3. Are you eating something?

4. Is it raining?

5. Are you sitting on the floor?

6. Are you feeling well?

→ Additional exercise 3 (page 253)
They read a lot.
They read / he likes / I work etc. = the present simple:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>read</th>
<th>like</th>
<th>work</th>
<th>live</th>
<th>watch</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>reads</td>
<td>likes</td>
<td>works</td>
<td>lives</td>
<td>watches</td>
<td>does</td>
<td>has</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember:
he works / she lives / it rains etc.
- I work in a shop. My brother works in a bank. (not My brother work)
- It rains a lot in winter.
I have → he/she/it has:
- John has a shower every day.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):
- es after -s / -sh / -ch: pass → passes finish → finishes watch → watches
- y → -ies: study → studies try → tries
also: do → does go → goes

We use the present simple for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time:
- I like big cities.
- Your English is good. You speak very well.
- Tim works very hard. He starts at 7.30 and finishes at 8 o’clock in the evening.
- The earth goes round the sun.
- We do a lot of different things in our free time.
- It costs a lot of money to build a hospital.

always/never/often/usually/sometimes + present simple
- Sue always gets to work early. (not Sue gets always)
- I never eat breakfast. (not I eat never)
- We often go away at weekends.
- Mark usually plays football on Sundays.
- I sometimes walk to work, but not very often.

I don’t ... (negative) → Unit 6  Do you ...? (questions) → Unit 7  I am doing and I do → Unit 8  always/usually/often etc. (word order) → Unit 94
5.1 Write these verbs with -s or -es.
1 (read) she reads
2 (think) he thinks
3 (fly) it flies
4 (dance) he dances
5 (have) she has
6 (finish) it finishes

5.2 Complete the sentences about the people in the pictures. Use:

- eat
- go
- live
- play
- play
- sleep

1 He plays the piano.
2 They live in a very big house.
3 They eat a lot of fruit.
4 They go to the cinema a lot.
5 They have seven hours a night.

5.3 Complete the sentences. Use:

- boil
- close
- cost
- cost
- like
- like
- meet
- open
- speak
- teach
- wash

1 Maria speaks four languages.
2 The shops in the city centre usually close at 9 o’clock in the morning.
3 The City Museum is open at 5 o’clock in the evening.
4 Tina is a teacher. She teaches mathematics to young children.
5 My job is very interesting. I meet a lot of people.
6 Peter’s car is always dirty. He never washes it.
7 Food is expensive. It costs a lot of money.
8 Shoes are expensive. They cost a lot of money.
9 Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.
10 Julia and I are good friends. I meet her and she meets me.

5.4 Write sentences from these words. Use the right form of the verb (arrive or arrives etc.).

1 (always / early / Sue / arrive) Sue always arrives early.
2 (to the cinema / never / I / go) I never go to the cinema.
3 (work / Martina / hard / always) Martina always works hard.
4 (like / chocolate / children / usually) Children usually like chocolate.
5 (Julia / parties / enjoy / always) Julia always enjoys parties.
6 (often / people’s names / I / forget) I often forget people’s names.
7 (television / Tim / watch / never) Tim never watches television.
8 (usually / dinner / we / have / at 7.30) We usually have dinner at 7.30.
9 (Jenny / always / nice clothes / wear) Jenny always wears nice clothes.

5.5 Write sentences about yourself. Use always/never/often/usually/sometimes.

1 (watch TV in the evening) I usually watch TV in the evening.
2 (read in bed) I sometimes read in bed.
3 (get up before 7 o’clock) I never get up before 7 o’clock.
4 (go to work/school by bus) I always go to work/school by bus.
5 (drink coffee in the morning) I usually drink coffee in the morning.
The present simple negative is don't/doesn't + verb:

She doesn't drink coffee.

He doesn't like his job.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we you they work like do have</td>
<td>I/we you they don't (do not) work like do have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she it works likes does has</td>
<td>he/she it doesn't (does not)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I drink coffee, but I don't drink tea.
- Sue drinks tea, but she doesn't drink coffee.
- You don't work very hard.
- We don't watch television very often.
- The weather is usually nice. It doesn't rain very often.
- Gary and Nicole don't know many people.

Remember:

I/we/you/they don't ...  I don't like football.

he/she/it doesn't ... He doesn't like football.

- I don't like Fred and Fred doesn't like me. (not Fred don't like)
- My car doesn't use much petrol. (not My car don't use)
- Sometimes he is late, but it doesn't happen very often.

We use don't/doesn't + infinitive (don't like / doesn't speak / doesn't do etc.):

- I don't like washing the car. I don't do it very often.
- Sarah speaks Spanish, but she doesn't speak Italian. (not doesn't speaks)
- Bill doesn't do his job very well. (not Bill doesn't his job)
- Paula doesn't usually have breakfast. (not doesn't ... has)

I do/work/like etc. (present simple) → Unit 5  Do you ... ? (present simple questions) → Unit 7
Exercises

6.1 Write the negative.
1 I play the piano very well.
2 Jane plays the piano very well.
3 They know my phone number.
4 We work very hard.
5 He has a bath every day.
6 You do the same thing every day.

6.2 Study the information and write sentences with like.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>classical music?</th>
<th>Ben</th>
<th>Sophie</th>
<th>Kate</th>
<th>You</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boxing?</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horror films?</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Ben and Sophie like classical music.
   Kate
   I

2 Ben and Sophie
   Kate
   I

3

6.3 Write about yourself. Use:
   I never ... or I often ... or I don't ... very often.

1 (watch TV)
   I don't watch TV very often. or I never watch TV. or
   I often watch TV.

2 (go to the theatre)

3 (ride a bicycle)

4 (eat in restaurants)

5 (travel by train)

6.4 Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use don't/doesn't + these verbs:
   cost go know read see use wear

1 I buy a newspaper every day, but sometimes I don't read it.
2 Paul has a car, but he doesn't use it very often.
3 Paul and his friends like films, but they don't go to the cinema very often.
4 Amanda is married, but she doesn't wear a ring.
5 I don't know much about politics. I'm not interested in it.
6 The Regent Hotel isn't expensive. It doesn't cost much to stay there.
7 Brian lives very near us, but we don't see him very often.

6.5 Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.

1 Margaret speaks four languages — English, French, German and Spanish. (speak)
2 I don't like my job. It's very boring. (like)
3 'Where's Martin?' 'I'm sorry. I don't know.' (know)
4 Sue is a very quiet person. She doesn't talk very much. (talk)
5 Andy doesn't drink a lot of tea. It's his favourite drink. (drink)
6 It's not true! I don't believe it! (believe)
7 That's a very beautiful picture. I don't like it very much. (like)
8 Mark is a vegetarian. He doesn't eat meat. (eat)
### Unit 7

#### Do you ... ? (present simple questions)

We use **do/does** in present simple questions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I work</td>
<td>Do you work?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we like</td>
<td>Do we like?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do have</td>
<td>Do you have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he works</td>
<td>Do he work?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she likes</td>
<td>Do she like?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it has</td>
<td>Do it have?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Study the word order:

**do/does** + **subject** + **infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Where</th>
<th>Do you work on Sundays?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How often</td>
<td>Do you work near here?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What</td>
<td>Does Chris live on Sundays?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much</td>
<td>Does your parents live near here?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions with **always/usually/often**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What</th>
<th>Do you always work?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do you usually work?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do you often work?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**What do you do?** = What's your job?

- 'What do you do?'  'I work in a bank.'

Remember:

- **do** I/we/you/they ..., he/she/it ...
- **Does** he/she/it ...

- **Do** they like music?
- **Does** he like music?

### Short answers

- **Yes,** I/we/you/they **do.**
- **No,** I/we/you/they **don't.**
- ‘Do you play tennis?’ ‘No, I don’t.’
- ‘Do your parents speak English?’ ‘Yes, they do.’
- ‘Does Gary work hard?’ ‘Yes, he does.’
- ‘Does your sister live in London?’ ‘No, she doesn’t.’

I do/work/like etc. → **Unit 5**  I don’t ... (negative) → **Unit 6**  questions → Units 44–47
Exercises

Unit 7

7.1 Write questions with Do ... ? and Does ... ?

1. I like chocolate. How about you?
   Do you like chocolate?

2. I play tennis. How about you?
   Do you always play tennis?

3. You live near here. How about Lucy?
   How about Lucy?

4. Tom plays tennis. How about his friends?
   How about his friends?

5. You speak English. How about your brother?
   How about your brother?

6. I do yoga every morning. How about you?
   How about you?

7. Sue often goes away. How about Paul?
   How about Paul?

8. I want to be famous. How about you?
   How about you?

9. You work hard. How about Anna?
   How about Anna?

7.2 Make questions from these words + do/does. Put the words in the right order.

1. (where / live / your parents)  Where do your parents live?

2. (you / early / always / get up)  Do you always get up early?

3. (how often / TV / you / watch)  Do you usually watch TV?

4. (you / want / what / for dinner)  What do you want for dinner?

5. (like / you / football)  Do you like football?

6. (your brother / like / football)  Does your brother like football?

7. (what / you / do / in your free time)  What do you do in your free time?

8. (your sister / work / where)  Where does your sister work?

9. (to the cinema / often / you / go)  Do you usually go to the cinema?

10. (what / mean / this word)  What does this word mean?

11. (often / snow / it / here)  Does it often snow here?

12. (go / usually / to bed / what time / you)  What time do you usually go to bed?

13. (how much / to phone New York / it / cost)  How much does it cost to phone New York?

14. (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what)  What do you usually have for breakfast?

7.3 Complete the questions. Use these verbs: do, do, enjoy, go, like, start, teach, work

1. What ______ do you ______?
2. What ______ in the morning?
3. What ______ on Saturdays?
4. How ______ to work?
5. What ______ his job?
6. What ______
7. What ______
8. What ______

I work in a bookshop. It’s OK.
At 9 o’clock.
Sometimes.
Usually by bus.
He’s a teacher.
Science.
Yes, he loves it.

7.4 Write short answers (Yes, he does. / No, I don’t. etc.).

1. Do you watch TV a lot?
   No, I don’t. or Yes, I do.

2. Do you live in a big city?

3. Do you often ride a bicycle?

4. Does it rain a lot where you live?

5. Do you play the piano?

Additional exercises 4-7 (pages 253-54)
I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)

Jack is watching television.
He is not playing the guitar.

But Jack has a guitar.
He often plays it and he plays very well.

Jack plays the guitar,
but he is not playing the guitar now.

Is he playing the guitar? No, he isn’t. (present continuous)
Does he play the guitar? Yes, he does. (present simple)

Present continuous (I am doing) = now, at the time of speaking:

I’m doing

now

past future

□ Please be quiet. I’m working. (not I work)
□ Tom is having a shower at the moment. (not Tom has)
□ Take an umbrella with you. It’s raining.
□ You can turn off the television. I’m not watching it.
□ Why are you under the table? What are you doing?

Present simple (I do) = in general, all the time or sometimes:

I do

now

past future

□ I work every day from 9 o’clock to 5.30.
□ Tom has a shower every morning.
□ It rains a lot in winter.
□ I don’t watch television very often.
□ What do you usually do at the weekend?

We do not use these verbs in the present continuous (I am -ing):

like prefer love want know understand remember depend
hate need mean believe forget

Use only the present simple with these verbs (I want / do you like? etc.):

□ I’m tired. I want to go home. (not I’m wanting)
□ “Do you know that girl?” ‘Yes, but I don’t remember her name.’
□ I don’t understand. What do you mean?

present continuous → Units 3–4 present simple → Units 5–7 present for the future → Unit 26
Exercises

Unit 8

8.1 Answer the questions about the pictures.

1. I'm a photographer.
   - Does he take photographs? **Yes, he does.**
   - Is he taking a photograph? **No, he isn't.**
   - What is he doing? **He's having a bath.**

2. I'm a bus driver.
   - Is she driving a bus? __________________________
   - Does she drive a bus? __________________________
   - What is she doing? __________________________

3. I'm a window cleaner.
   - Does he clean windows? __________________________
   - Is he cleaning a window? __________________________
   - What is he doing? __________________________

4. We are teachers.
   - Are they teaching? __________________________
   - Do they teach? __________________________
   - What do they do? __________________________

8.2 Complete the sentences with am/is/are or do/don’t/does/doesn’t.

1. Excuse me, **do**... you speak English?
2. ‘Where’s Kate?’ ‘I **don’t** know.’
3. What’s funny? Why **don’t** you laughing?
4. ‘What **does** your sister do?’ ‘She’s a dentist.’
5. It **isn’t** raining. I **don’t** want to go out in the rain.
6. ‘Where **do** you come from?’ ‘Canada.’
7. How much **are** it cost to send a letter to Canada?
8. Steve is a good tennis player, but he **doesn’t** play very often.

8.3 Put the verb in the present continuous (I am doing) or the present simple (I do).

1. Excuse me, **do you speak** (you/speak) English?
2. ‘Where’s Tom?’ ‘He’s having (he/have) a shower.’
3. **I don’t watch** (I/not/watch) television very often.
4. Listen! Somebody **is singing** (sing).
5. Sandra is tired. **Does** she/want to go home now.
6. How often **do you read** (you/read) a newspaper?
7. ‘Excuse me, but **are you sitting** (you/sit) in my place.’ ‘Oh, I’m sorry.’
8. I’m sorry, **I don’t understand** (I/not/understand). Can you speak more slowly?
9. It’s late. **Are you going** (I/go) home now.
10. **What time** (your father/finish) work every day?
11. You can turn off the radio. **I don’t listen** (I/not/listen) to it.
12. ‘Where’s Paul?’ ‘In the kitchen. **Does he cook** (he/cook) something.’
13. Martin **doesn’t usually drive** (not/usually/drive) to work. He **usually walks** (usually/walk).
14. Sue **doesn’t like** coffee. **She prefers** (she/prefer) tea.
I have ... and I’ve got ...

You can say I have or I’ve got, he has or he’s got:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I we you they</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>or</th>
<th>I we you they</th>
<th>have got</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he she it</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>he she it</td>
<td>has got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(‘I’ve got’ (we’ve got) (you’ve got) (they’ve got)
(‘he’s got’ (she’s got) (it’s got)

□ I have blue eyes. or I’ve got blue eyes.
□ Tim has two sisters. or Tim has got two sisters.
□ Our car has four doors. or Our car has got four doors.
□ Sarah isn’t feeling well. She has a headache. or She’s got a headache.
□ They like animals. They have a horse, three dogs and six cats. or They’ve got a horse ...

I haven’t got / have you got? etc.

can be negative or question

short answers

□ I’ve got a motorbike, but I haven’t got a car.
□ Tracey and Jeff haven’t got any children.
□ It’s a nice house, but it hasn’t got a garden.
□ ‘Have you got a camera?’ ‘No, I haven’t.’
□ ‘What have you got in your bag?’ ‘Nothing. It’s empty.’
□ ‘Has Helen got a car?’ ‘Yes, she has.’
□ What kind of car has she got?

I don’t have / do you have? etc.

In negatives and questions you can also use do/does ...

□ They don’t have any children. (= They haven’t got any children.)
□ It’s a nice house, but it doesn’t have a garden. (= it hasn’t got a garden)
□ Does Helen have a car? (= Has Helen got a car?)
□ What do you have in your bag? (= What have you got in your bag?)
Exercises

9.1 Write the short form with got (we’ve got / he hasn’t got etc.).

1  we have got  3  they have got  5  it has got
2  he has got  4  she has not got  6  I have not got

9.2 Read the questions and answers. Then write sentences about Mark.

Have you got a car?
Have you got a computer?
Have you got a dog?
Have you got a mobile phone?
Have you got a watch?
Have you got any brothers or sisters?

No.  1  He hasn’t got a car.
Yes.  2  He ..........................................
No.  3  ..........................................
No.  4  ..........................................
Yes.  5  ..........................................
Yes, two brothers and a sister.  6  ..........................................

What about you? Write sentences with I’ve got or I haven’t got.

7  (a computer) ..........................................
8  (a dog) ..........................................
9  (a bike) ..........................................
10  (brothers/sisters) ..........................................

9.3 Write these sentences with got (I’ve got / have you got etc.). The meaning is the same.

1  They have two children.
2  She doesn’t have a key.
3  He has a new job.
4  They don’t have much money.
5  Do you have an umbrella?
6  We have a lot of work to do.
7  I don’t have your phone number.
8  Does your father have a car?
9  How much money do we have?

9.4 Write have got (‘ve got), has got (‘s got), haven’t got or hasn’t got.

1  Sarah hasn’t got a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle.
2  They like animals. They’ve got three dogs and two cats.
3  Charles isn’t happy. He has got a lot of problems.
4  They don’t read much. They’ve got many books.
5  ‘What’s wrong?’ ‘I’ve got something in my eye.’
6  ‘Where’s my pen?’ ‘I don’t know. I haven’t got it.’
7  Julia wants to go to the concert, but she hasn’t got a ticket.

9.5 Complete the sentences. Use have/has got or haven’t/hasn’t got with:

a lot of friends  four wheels  a headache  six legs
a garden  much time  a key
1  I’m not feeling well. I’ve got a headache.
2  It’s a nice house, but it hasn’t got a garden.
3  Most cars ..........................................
4  Everybody likes Tom. He ..........................................
5  I can’t open the door. I ..........................................
6  An insect ..........................................
7  We must hurry. We ..........................................

→ Additional exercises 5–7 (page 254)
was/were

A

last night  now

Now Robert is at work.
At midnight last night he wasn’t at work.
He was in bed.
He was asleep.

am/is (present) → was (past):
  I am tired. (now)
  Where is Kate? (now)
  The weather is good today.

are (present) → were (past):
  You are late. (now)
  They aren’t here. (now)
  I was tired last night.
  Where was Kate yesterday?
  The weather was good last week.

You were late yesterday.
They weren’t here last Sunday.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>negative</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I he she it</td>
<td>I he she it</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was</td>
<td>was not (wasn’t)</td>
<td>I? he? she? it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we you they</td>
<td>we you they</td>
<td>were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>were</td>
<td>were not (weren’t)</td>
<td>we? you? they?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Last year Rachel was 22, so she is 23 now.
- When I was a child, I was afraid of dogs.
- We were hungry after the journey, but we weren’t tired.
- The hotel was comfortable, but it wasn’t expensive.
- Was the weather nice when you were on holiday?
- Your shoes are nice. Were they expensive?
- Why were you late this morning?

C

Short answers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes,</th>
<th>I/he/she/it was.</th>
<th>No,</th>
<th>I/he/she/it wasn’t.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we/you/they were.</td>
<td></td>
<td>we/you/they weren’t.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- ‘Were you late?’ ‘No, I wasn’t.’
- ‘Was Ted at work yesterday?’ ‘Yes, he was.’
- ‘Were Sue and Steve at the party?’ ‘No, they weren’t.’
10.1 Where were these people at 3 o’clock yesterday afternoon?

1 Gary was in bed.
2 Jack and Kate are at home.
3 Sue is at school.
4 Mr and Mrs Hall are in bed.
5 Ben is on the beach.
6 And you? I was at home.

10.2 Write am/is/are (present) or was/were (past).

1 Last year she was 22, so she is 23 now.
2 Today the weather was nice, but yesterday it was very cold.
3 I was hungry. Can I have something to eat?
4 I feel fine this morning, but I was very tired last night.
5 Where were you at 11 o’clock last Friday morning?
6 Don’t buy those shoes. They were very expensive.
7 I like your new jacket. It’s expensive?
8 This time last year I was in Paris.
9 ‘Where were the children?’ ‘I don’t know. They were here a few minutes ago.’

10.3 Write was/were or wasn’t/weren’t.

1 We weren’t happy with the hotel. Our room was very small and it wasn’t clean.
2 Mark was at work last week because he was ill. He’s better now.
3 Yesterday was a public holiday, so the banks were closed. They’re open today.
4 ‘Where was Kate and Bill at the party?’ ‘Kate was there, but Bill wasn’t.’
5 ‘Where are my keys?’ ‘I don’t know. They were on the table, but they’re not there now.’
6 You were at home last night. Where were you?

10.4 Write questions from these words + was/were. Put the words in the right order.

1 Why were you late this morning?
2 (difficult / your exam?)
3 (last week / where / Sue and Chris?)
4 (your new camera / how much?)
5 (angry / you / yesterday / why?)
6 (nice / the weather / last week?)

1 The traffic was bad.
2 No, it was easy.
3 They were on holiday.
4 Sixty pounds.
5 Because you were late.
6 Yes, it was beautiful.
They watch television every evening. *(present simple)*

They watched television yesterday evening. *(past simple)*

*watched* is the *past simple*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>watched</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The past simple is often *-ed* *(regular verbs)*. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>work</th>
<th>worked</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dance</td>
<td>danced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean</td>
<td>cleaned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay</td>
<td>stayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>started</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>need</td>
<td>needed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

☐ I clean my teeth every morning. This morning I cleaned my teeth.

☐ Terry worked in a bank from 1996 to 2003.

☐ Yesterday it rained all morning. It stopped at lunchtime.

☐ We enjoyed the party last night. We danced a lot and talked to a lot of people. The party finished at midnight.

*Spelling* *(→ Appendix 5)*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>try → tried</th>
<th>study → studied</th>
<th>copy → copied</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stop → stopped</td>
<td>plan → planned</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some verbs are *irregular* *(= not regular)*. The past simple is *not*-ed. Here are some important irregular verbs *(see also Appendix 2–3)*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>begin → began</th>
<th>fall → fell</th>
<th>leave → left</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break → broke</td>
<td>find → found</td>
<td>lose → lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring → brought</td>
<td>fly → flew</td>
<td>make → made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build → built</td>
<td>forget → forgot</td>
<td>meet → met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy → bought</td>
<td>get → got</td>
<td>pay → paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch → caught</td>
<td>give → gave</td>
<td>put → put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come → came</td>
<td>go → went</td>
<td>read → read <em>(red)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do → did</td>
<td>have → had</td>
<td>ring → rang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink → drank</td>
<td>hear → heard</td>
<td>say → said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat → ate</td>
<td>know → knew</td>
<td>see → saw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sell → sold</th>
<th>sit → sat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

☐ I usually get up early, but this morning I got up at 9 o’clock.

☐ We did a lot of work yesterday.

☐ Caroline went to the cinema three times last week.

☐ James came into the room, took off his coat and sat down.
11.1 Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box.

**Verb Box:** clean die enjoy finish happen open rain start stay want

1. I ___________ my teeth three times yesterday.
2. It was hot in the room, so I ___________ the window.
3. The film was very long. It ___________ at 7.15 and ___________ at 10 o’clock.
4. When I was a child, I ___________ to be a doctor.
5. The accident ___________ last Sunday afternoon.
6. It’s a nice day today, but yesterday it ___________ all day.
7. We ___________ our holiday last year. We ___________ at a very nice place.
8. Anna’s grandfather ___________ when he was 90 years old.

11.2 Write the past simple of these verbs.

1. get ___________ 4. pay ___________ 7. go ___________ 10. know ___________
2. see ___________ 5. visit ___________ 8. think ___________ 11. put ___________
3. play ___________ 6. buy ___________ 9. copy ___________ 12. speak ___________

11.3 Read about Lisa’s journey to Madrid. Put the verbs in the correct form.

Last Tuesday Lisa (1) ___________ from London to Madrid. She (2) ___________ up at 6 o’clock in the morning and (3) ___________ a cup of coffee. At 6.30 she (4) ___________ home and (5) ___________ to the airport. When she (6) ___________ there, she (7) ___________ the car, (8) ___________ to the airport building, and (9) ___________ in. Then she (10) ___________ breakfast at a café and (11) ___________ for her flight. The plane (12) ___________ on time and (13) ___________ in Madrid two hours later. Finally she (14) ___________ a taxi from the airport to her hotel in the centre of Madrid.

11.4 Write sentences about the past (yesterday / last week etc.).

1. James always goes to work by car. Yesterday ___________ he went to work by car.
2. Rachel often loses her keys. She ___________ last week.
3. Kate meets her friends every evening. She ___________ yesterday evening.
4. I usually buy two newspapers every day. Yesterday I ___________.
5. We often go to the cinema at weekends. Last Sunday we ___________.
6. I eat an orange every day. Yesterday I ___________.
7. Tom always has a shower in the morning. This morning he ___________.
8. Our friends often come to see us. They ___________ last Friday.

11.5 Write sentences about what you did yesterday.

1. I ___________ to the theatre.
2. ___________ 4. ___________
3. ___________ 5. ___________
4. ___________ 6. ___________

→ Additional exercise 10 (page 256)
We use **did** in past simple negatives and questions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>positive</th>
<th>negative</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>I played</td>
<td>I didn't play</td>
<td>play?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>we started</td>
<td>we didn't start</td>
<td>start?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td>you watched</td>
<td>you didn't watch</td>
<td>watch?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>they had</td>
<td>they didn't</td>
<td>have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>he saw</td>
<td>he didn't</td>
<td>see?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>she did</td>
<td>she didn't</td>
<td>do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>it went</td>
<td>it didn't</td>
<td>go?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**do/does** (present) → **did** (past):

- I don't watch television very often.
  I didn't watch television yesterday.
- Does she often go away?
  Did she go away last week?

We use **did/didn't** + ** infinitive** (watch/play/go etc.):

- I watched but I didn't watch (not I didn't watch)
- they went did they go? (not did they went?)
- he had he didn't have
- you did did you do?

- I played tennis yesterday, but I didn't win.
- 'Did you do the shopping?' 'No, I didn't have time.'
- We went to the cinema, but we didn't enjoy the film.

Study the word order in questions:

**did** + **subject** + ** infinitive**

| What   | Did you see your sister? you? |
|--------|-------------------------------|------------------|
| How    | Did you do the accident happen? last night? |
| Where  | Did you go for their holiday?|

Short answers

Yes, I/we/you/they he/she/it did.
No, I/we/you/they he/she/it didn't.

- 'Did you see Joe yesterday?' 'No, I didn't.'
- 'Did it rain on Sunday?' 'Yes, it did.'
- 'Did Helen come to the party?' 'No, she didn't.'
- 'Did your parents have a good holiday?' 'Yes, they did.'

worked/got/went etc. (past simple) → **Unit 1**
12.1 Complete these sentences with the verb in the negative.
1. I saw Barbara, but I didn't see Jane.
2. They worked on Monday, but they didn't work on Tuesday.
3. We went to the post office, but we didn't go to the bank.
4. She had a pen, but she didn't have any paper.
5. Jack did French at school, but he didn't do German.

12.2 Write questions with Did ... ?
1. I watched TV last night. How about you? Did you watch TV last night?
2. I enjoyed the party. How about you? Did you enjoy the party?
3. I had a good holiday. How about you? Did you have a good holiday?
4. I finished work early. How about you? Did you finish work early?
5. I slept well last night. How about you? Did you sleep well last night?

12.3 What did you do yesterday? Write positive or negative sentences.
1. (watch TV) I watched TV. or I didn't watch TV.
2. (get up before 7 o'clock) I got up before 7 o'clock.
3. (have a shower) I had a shower.
4. (buy a magazine) I bought a magazine.
5. (eat meat) I ate meat.
6. (go to bed before 10.30) I went to bed before 10.30.

12.4 Write B's questions. Use:
arrive cost go go to bed late happen have a nice time stay win

| 2 A: I was late for the meeting. B: What time? A: Half past nine. |
| 6 A: I'm tired this morning. B: Why? A: No, but I didn't sleep very well. |
| 7 A: We went to the beach yesterday. B: How? A: Yes, it was great. |

12.5 Put the verb in the correct form – positive, negative or question.
1. We went to the cinema, but the film wasn't very good. We didn't enjoy it. (enjoy)
2. Tim bought some new clothes yesterday – two shirts, a jacket and a pullover. (buy)
3. 'Was it a nice day yesterday?' 'No, it was a nice day.' (rain)
4. We were tired, so we stayed long at the party. (stay)
5. It was very warm in the room, so I opened a window. (open)
6. 'Did you phone Chris this morning?' 'No, I didn't have time.' (have)
7. 'I cut my hand this morning.' 'How did you cut that?' (do)
8. 'Why weren't you at the meeting yesterday?' 'I don't know about it.' (know)
was/were + -ing is the past continuous:

- I was doing something.
- You were doing something.
- It was doing something.
- We were doing something.
- They were doing something.

Positive:
- I was doing something.
- You were doing something.
- It was doing something.
- We were doing something.
- They were doing something.

Negative:
- I was not doing something.
- You were not doing something.
- It was not doing something.
- We were not doing something.
- They were not doing something.

Question:
- What were you doing?
- What were you doing at 11.30 yesterday?
- 'What did he say?' 'I don't know. I wasn't listening.'
- It was raining, so we didn't go out.
- In 2001 we were living in Canada.
- Today she's wearing a skirt, but yesterday she was wearing trousers.
- I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun was shining and the birds were singing.

Spelling (live → living / run → running / lie → lying etc.) → Appendix 5

am/is/are + -ing (present) → was/were + -ing (past):

Present:
- I'm working.
- It isn't raining.
- What are you doing?

Past:
- I was working at 10.30 last night.
- It wasn't raining when we went out.
- What were you doing at three o'clock?
Exercises

13.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? And what were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.

1. Rachel was at home. She was watching TV.
2. Jack and Kate ___________________________ . They ___________________________ .
3. Tim ___________________________ .
4. ___________________________ .
5. ___________________________ .
6. And you? I ___________________________ .

13.2 Sarah did a lot of things yesterday morning. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. At 8.45 she ___________________________ .
2. At 10.45 she ___________________________ .
3. At 8 o'clock ___________________________ .
4. At 12.10 ___________________________ .
5. At 7.15 ___________________________ .
6. At 9.30 ___________________________ .

13.3 Complete the questions. Use was/were -ing. Use what/where/why if necessary.

1. (you/live) Where were you living ___________________________ in 1999?
2. (you/do) ___________________________ at 2 o'clock?
3. (it/rain) ___________________________ when you got up?
4. (Sue/drive) ___________________________ so fast?
5. (Tim/wea) ___________________________ a suit yesterday?

In London.
I was asleep.
No, it was sunny.
Because she was late.
No, a T-shirt and jeans.

13.4 Look at the picture. You saw Joe in the street yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.

Joe

1. (wear / a jacket) He wasn't wearing a jacket.
2. (carry / a bag) ___________________________ .
3. (go / to the dentist) ___________________________ .
4. (eat / an ice-cream) ___________________________ .
5. (carry / an umbrella) ___________________________ .
6. (go / home) ___________________________ .
7. (wear / a hat) ___________________________ .
8. (ride / a bicycle) ___________________________ .
I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)

Jack was reading a book.

The phone rang.

He stopped reading.

He answered the phone.

What happened? The phone rang. \(\text{past simple}\)

What was Jack doing when the phone rang? \(\text{past continuous}\)

He was reading a book.

What did he do when the phone rang?

He stopped reading and answered the phone. \(\text{past simple}\)

Jack began reading before the phone rang.

So when the phone rang, he was reading.

he started reading

the phone rang

he stopped reading

he answered the phone

he was reading

past simple

- A: What did you do yesterday morning?
  - B: We played tennis. (from 10 to 11.30)

start

10 o’clock

finish

11.30

we played

complete action

past continuous

- A: What were you doing at 10.30?
  - B: We were playing tennis.

start

10 o’clock

we were playing

unfinished action

- Jack read a book yesterday. (= from beginning to end)
- Did you watch the film on television last night?
- It didn’t rain while we were on holiday.
- Jack was reading a book when the phone rang.
- Were you watching television when I phoned you?
- It wasn’t raining when I got up.

- I started work at 9 o’clock and finished at 4.30. At 2.30 I was working.
- It was raining when we went out. (= it started raining before we went out)
- I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They were waiting at the bus stop.
- Kelly fell asleep while she was reading.
14.1 Look at the pictures. Put the verbs in the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1. Lucy __broke__ (break) her arm last week. It __happened__ (happen) when she __painted__ (paint) her room. She __fell__ (fall) off the ladder.

2. The train __arrived__ (arrive) at the station and Paula __got__ (get) off. Two friends of hers, Jon and Rachel, __waited__ (wait) to meet her.

3. Yesterday Sue __walked__ (walk) along the road when she __met__ (meet) James. He __went__ (go) to the station to catch a train and he __carried__ (carry) a bag. They __stopped__ (stop) to talk for a few minutes.

14.2 Put the verb into the past continuous or past simple.

1 A: What __were you doing__ (you/do) when the phone __rang__ (ring)?
   B: I __was watching__ (watch) television.

2 A: Was Jane busy when you went to see her?
   B: Yes, she __was studying__ (study).

3 A: What time __did you arrive__ (the post / arrive) this morning?
   B: It __came__ (come) while I __had breakfast__ (have) breakfast.

4 A: Was Tracey at work today?
   B: No, she __didn't go__ (not/go) to work. She was ill.

5 A: How fast __were you driving__ (you/drive) when the police __stopped__ (stop) you?
   B: I'm not sure, but I __did not drive__ (not/drive) very fast.

6 A: __Did your team win__ (your team / win) the football match yesterday?
   B: The weather was very bad, so we __did not play__ (not/play).

7 A: How __did you break__ (you/break) the window?
   B: We __played__ (play) football. I __kicked__ (kick) the ball and it __hit__ (hit) the window.

8 A: __Did you see__ (you/see) Jenny last night?
   B: Yes, she __wore__ (wear) a very nice jacket.

9 A: What __did you do__ (you/do) at 2 o'clock this morning?
   B: I was asleep.

10 A: I __lost__ (lose) my key last night.
   B: How __did you get__ (you/get) into your room?
   A: I __climbed__ (climb) in through a window.

→ Additional exercises 14–15 (pages 257–58)
I have done (present perfect 1)

His shoes are dirty.  He is cleaning his shoes.  He has cleaned his shoes. (= his shoes are clean now)

They are at home.  They are going out.  They have gone out. (= they are not at home now)

has cleaned / have gone etc. is the present perfect (have + past participle):

| I we have (‘ve) cleaned finished started lost | I we have (‘ve) cleaned? finished? started? lost? |
| you you have not (haven’t) | you you have not (haven’t) |
| they they have not (hasn’t) | they they have not (hasn’t) |
| he has (‘s) done been gone | he has (‘s) done? been? gone? |
| she has (‘s) done been gone | she has (‘s) done? been? gone? |
| it has (‘s) done been gone | it has (‘s) done? been? gone? |

past participle

Regular verbs The past participle is -ed (the same as the past simple):

- clean → I have cleaned
- finish → we have finished
- start → she has started

Irregular verbs The past participle is not -ed.

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same:

- buy → I bought / I have bought
- have → he had / he has had

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different:

- break → I broke / I have broken
- fall → it fell / it has fallen
- see → you saw / you have seen
- go → they went / they have gone

We use the present perfect for an action in the past with a result now:

- I’ve lost my passport. (= I can’t find my passport now)
- ‘Where’s Rebecca?’ ‘She’s gone to bed.’ (= she is in bed now)
- We’ve bought a new car. (= we have a new car now)
- It’s Rachel’s birthday tomorrow and I haven’t bought her a present. (= I don’t have a present for her now)
- ‘Bob is away on holiday.’ ‘Oh, where has he gone?’ (= where is he now?)
- Can I take this newspaper? Have you finished with it? (= do you need it now?)

present perfect → Units 16–19  present perfect and past simple → Unit 20  irregular verbs → Unit 24, Appendix 2–3
15.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened? Choose from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>go to bed</th>
<th>clean his shoes</th>
<th>stop raining</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>close the door</td>
<td>fall down</td>
<td>have a shower</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**before**

1. He has cleaned his shoes.

2. She ________________________________

3. They ________________________________

4. It ________________________________

5. He ________________________________

6. The ________________________________

15.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>break</th>
<th>buy</th>
<th>decide</th>
<th>finish</th>
<th>forget</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>invite</th>
<th>read</th>
<th>see</th>
<th>not/see</th>
<th>take</th>
<th>tell</th>
<th>not/tell</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. ‘Can I have a look at your newspaper?’ ‘Yes, I’ve finished with it.’
2. I ________________________________ some new shoes. Do you want to see them?
3. ‘Where is Liz?’ ‘She’s not here. She ________________________________ out.’
4. I’m looking for Paula. ________________________________ you ________________________________ her?
5. Look! Somebody ________________________________ that window.
6. ‘Does Lisa know that you’re going away?’ ‘Yes, I ________________________________ her.’
7. I can’t find my umbrella. Somebody ________________________________ it.
8. ‘Where are my glasses?’ ‘I don’t know. I ________________________________ them.’
9. I’m looking for Sarah. Where ________________________________ she ________________________________?
10. I know that woman, but I ________________________________ her name.
11. Sue is having a party tonight. She ________________________________ a lot of people.
12. What are you going to do? ________________________________ you ________________________________?
13. A: Does Bill know about the meeting tomorrow?
    B: I don’t think so. I ________________________________ him.
14. ‘Do you want this magazine?’ ‘No, I ________________________________ it, thanks.’
I've just ...

just = a short time ago

A: Are Diane and Paul here?
B: Yes, they’ve just arrived.

A: Are you hungry?
B: No, I’ve just had dinner.

A: Is Tom here?
B: No, I’m afraid he’s just gone.
(= he has just gone)

I’ve already ...

already = before you expected / before I expected

A: What time are Diane and Paul coming?
B: They’ve already arrived.
(= before you expected)

It’s only 9 o’clock and Anna has already gone to bed. (= before I expected)

A: Jon, this is Emma.
B: Yes, I know. We’ve already met.

I haven’t … yet / Have you … yet?

yet = until now

We use yet in negative sentences and questions. Yet is usually at the end.

yet in negative sentences (I haven’t … yet)

A: Are Diane and Paul here?
B: No, they haven’t arrived yet.
(= but B expects Diane and Paul to arrive soon)

A: Does James know that you’re going away?
B: No, I haven’t told him yet.
(= but B is going to tell him soon)

Silvia has bought a new dress, but she hasn’t worn it yet.

yet in questions (Have you … yet?)

A: Have Diane and Paul arrived yet?
B: No, not yet. We’re still waiting for them.

A: Has Nicole started her new job yet?
B: No, she starts next week.

A: This is my new dress.
B: Oh, it’s nice. Have you worn it yet?

present perfect → Units 15, 17-20 word order → Unit 94 still, yet and already → Unit 95
16.1 Write a sentence with just for each picture.

1. They’ve just arrived.
2. He
3. This is our new car.
4. The race

16.2 Complete the sentences. Use already + present perfect.

1. What time is Paul arriving? He’s already arrived.
2. Do your friends want to see the film? No, they haven’t seen it.
3. Don’t forget to phone Tom. I haven’t phoned her.
4. When is Martin going away? He has left.
5. Do you want to read the newspaper? I haven’t read it.
6. When does Sarah start her new job? She has started.

16.3 Write a sentence with just (They’ve just ... / She’s just ... etc.) or a negative sentence with yet (They haven’t ... yet / She hasn’t ... yet etc.).

1. a few minutes ago
   She hasn’t gone out yet.
2. a few minutes ago
   The bus hasn’t arrived.
3. a few minutes ago
   The train hasn’t left.
4. a few minutes ago
   He hasn’t opened it.
5. a few minutes ago
   They haven’t finished their dinner.
6. a few minutes ago
   It hasn’t stopped raining.

16.4 Write questions with yet.

1. Your friend has got a new job. Perhaps she has started it. You ask her: Have you started your new job yet?
2. Your friend has some new neighbours. Perhaps he has met them. You ask him: Have you met your new neighbours yet?
3. Your friend must pay her phone bill. Perhaps she has paid it. You ask her: Have you paid your phone bill yet?
4. Tom was trying to sell his car. Perhaps he has sold it. You ask a friend about Tom: Has Tom sold his car yet?
We use the present perfect (have been / have had / have played etc.) when we talk about a time from the past until now – for example, a person's life:

**Have you ever been to Japan?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Time from the past until now</th>
<th>Now</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'Have you been to France?'</td>
<td>'No, I haven’t.'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ve been to Canada, but I haven’t been to the United States.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mary is an interesting person. She has had many different jobs and has lived in many places.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ve seen that woman before, but I can’t remember where.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many times has Brazil won the World Cup?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Have you read this book?’</td>
<td>‘Yes, I’ve read it twice.’ (twice = two times)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**present perfect + ever (in questions) and never:**

- ‘Has Ann ever been to Australia?’ ‘Yes, once.’ (once = one time)
- ‘Have you ever played golf?’ ‘Yes, I play a lot.’
- My sister has never travelled by plane.
- I’ve never ridden a horse.
- ‘Who is that man?’ ‘I don’t know. I’ve never seen him before.’

**gone and been**

Bill has gone to Spain. (= he is in Spain now)  
Bill has been to Spain. (= he went to Spain, but now he is back)

Compare:
- I can’t find Susan. Where has she gone? (= where is she now?)
- Oh, hello Susan! I was looking for you. Where have you been?
Exercises

17.1 You are asking Helen questions beginning Have you ever ... ?
Write the questions.

1 (London?) Have you ever been to London?
2 (play / golf?) Have you ever played golf?
3 (Australia?) Have you ever been to Australia?
4 (lose / your passport?) Have you ever lost your passport?
5 (fly / in a helicopter?) Have you ever flown in a helicopter?
6 (win / a race?) Have you ever won a race?
7 (New York?) Have you ever been to New York?
8 (drive / a bus?) Have you ever driven a bus?
9 (break / your leg?) Have you ever broken your leg?

Helen

No, never.
Yes, many times.
Yes, once.
No, never.
Yes, a few times.
No, never.
Yes, twice.
No, never.
Yes, once.

17.2 Write sentences about Helen. (Look at her answers in Exercise 17.1.)

1 (New York) She's been to New York twice.
2 (Australia) She has never been to Australia.
3 (win / a race) She has won a race.
4 (fly / in a helicopter) She has flown in a helicopter.

Now write about yourself. How often have you done these things?

5 (New York) I have been to New York twice.
6 (play / tennis) I have never played tennis.
7 (drive / a lorry) I have driven a lorry.
8 (be / late for work or school) I have been late for work or school.

17.3 Mary is 65 years old. She has had an interesting life. What has she done?

Mary

She has had many different jobs.
She has written ten books.
She has travelled all over the world.
She has met many different people.
She has married three times.
She has had a lot of interesting experiences.

17.4 Write gone or been.

1 Bill is on holiday at the moment. He's gone to Spain.
2 'Where's Jane?' 'She's not here. I think she's gone to the bank.'
3 Hello, Sue. Where have you gone? Have you gone to the bank?
4 'Have you ever gone to Mexico?' 'No, never.'
5 My parents aren't at home at the moment. They've gone out.
6 There's a new restaurant in town. Have you gone to it?
7 Rebecca knows Paris well. She's been there many times.
8 Helen was here earlier, but I think she's gone now.

Additional exercises 16, 18 (pages 258–59, 260)
Jane is on holiday in Ireland. She is there now. She arrived in Ireland on Monday. Today is Thursday. How long has she been in Ireland? She has been in Ireland \{ since Monday. \} \{ for three days. \}

Compare is and has been:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>She is in Ireland now.</th>
<th>She has been in Ireland { since Monday. } { for three days. }</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monday \now \Thursday</td>
<td>is = present \hspace{1cm} has been = present perfect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compare:

**present simple**

Dan and Kate are married. They have been married for five years. (not They are married for five years.)

Are you married? How long have you been married? (not How long are you married?)

Do you know Lisa? How long have you known her? (not How long do you know her?)

I know Lisa. I’ve known her for a long time. (not I know her for ...)

Vicky lives in London. How long has she lived in London? She has lived there all her life.

I have a car. How long have you had your car? I’ve had it since April.

**present continuous**

I’m learning German. How long have you been learning German? (not How long are you learning German?) I’ve been learning German for two years.

David is watching TV. How long has he been watching TV? He’s been (= He has been) watching TV since 5 o’clock.

It’s raining. It’s been (= It has been) raining all day.

for and since \rightarrow Units 19, 104
18.1 Complete these sentences.
1. Jane is in Ireland. She __________ in Ireland since Monday.
2. I know Lisa. I __________ her for a long time.
3. Sarah and Andy are married. They __________ married since 1999.
4. Brian is ill. He __________ ill for the last few days.
5. We live in Scott Road. We __________ there for a long time.
6. Catherine works in a bank. She __________ in a bank for five years.
7. Alan has a headache. He __________ a headache since he got up this morning.
8. I’m learning English. I __________ English for six months.

18.2 Make questions with How long ... ?

1. Jane is on holiday. __________ on holiday?
2. Scott and Judy are in Brazil. __________ you in Brazil?
3. I know Amy. __________ you know her?
4. Diana is learning Italian. __________ you learning Italian?
5. My brother lives in Canada. __________ you live in Canada?
6. I’m a teacher. __________ you a teacher?
7. It is raining. __________ it rain?

18.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with:

for ten minutes / all day / all her life
for ten years / since he was 20 / since Sunday

1. They have been married for ten years.
2. She __________
3. They __________
4. The sun __________
5. She __________
6. He __________

18.4 Which is right?
1. Mark lives / has lived in Canada since April. (has lived is right)
2. Jane and I are friends. I know / I’ve known her very well.
3. Jane and I are friends. I know / I’ve known her for a long time.
4. A: Sorry I’m late. How long are you waiting / have you been waiting?
   B: Not long. Only five minutes.
5. Martin works / has worked in a hotel now. He likes his job a lot.
6. Ruth is reading the newspaper. She is reading / She has been reading it for two hours.
7. ‘How long do you live / have you lived in this house?’ ‘About ten years.’
8. ‘Is that a new coat?’ ‘No, I have / I’ve had this coat for a long time.’
9. Tom is / has been in Spain at the moment. He is / He has been there for the last three days.
for and since

We use for and since to say how long:

- Jane is in Ireland. She has been there for three days since Monday.

We use for + a period of time (three days / two years etc.):

- Richard has been in Canada for six months. (not since six months)
- We've been waiting for two hours. (not since two hours)
- I've lived in London for a long time.

We use since + the start of the period (Monday / 9 o'clock etc.):

- Richard has been in Canada since January. (= from January to now)
- We've been waiting since 9 o'clock. (= from 9 o'clock to now)
- I've lived in London since I was ten years old.

ago

ago = before now:
- Susan started her new job three weeks ago. (= three weeks before now)
- 'When did Tom go out?' ‘Ten minutes ago.’ (= ten minutes before now)
- I had dinner an hour ago.
- Life was very different a hundred years ago.

We use ago with the past (started/did/had/was etc.).

Compare ago and for:
- When did Jane arrive in Ireland?
  She arrived in Ireland three days ago.

- How long has she been in Ireland?
  She has been in Ireland for three days.
19.1 Write for or since.
1. Jane has been in Ireland since Monday.
2. Jane has been in Ireland for three days.
3. My aunt has lived in Australia 15 years.
4. Jennifer is in her office. She has been there 7 o’clock.
5. India has been an independent country 1947.
6. The bus is late. We’ve been waiting 20 minutes.
7. Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty many years.
8. Michael has been ill a long time. He has been in hospital October.

19.2 Answer these questions. Use ago.
1. When was your last meal? Three hours ago.
2. When was the last time you were ill?
3. When did you last go to the cinema?
4. When was the last time you were in a car?
5. When was the last time you went on holiday?

19.3 Complete the sentences. Use for or ago with these words.
1. Jane arrived in Ireland three days ago. (three days)
2. Jane has been in Ireland for three days. (three days)
3. Lynn and Mark have been married 20 years.
4. Lynn and Mark got married 20 years.
5. Dan arrived an hour.
6. I bought these shoes a few days.
7. Silvia has been learning English six months.
8. Have you known Lisa a long time?

19.4 Complete the sentences with for or since.
1. (Jane is in Ireland – she arrived there three days ago)
   Jane has been in Ireland for three days.
2. (Jack is here – he arrived on Tuesday)
   Jack has
3. (It’s raining – it started an hour ago)
   It’s been
4. (I know Sue – I first met her in 2002)
   I’ve
5. (Claire and Matthew are married – they got married six months ago)
   Claire and Matthew have
6. (Liz is studying medicine at university – she started three years ago)
   Liz has
7. (David plays the piano – he started when he was seven years old)
   David has

19.5 Write sentences about yourself. Begin your sentences with:
I’ve lived ... I’ve been ... I’ve been learning ... I’ve known ... I’ve had ...
1. I’ve lived in this town for three years.
2.
3.
4.
5.

Additional exercises 16-18 (pages 258-60)
I have done (present perfect) and I did (past)

With a finished time (yesterday / last week etc.), we use the past (arrived/saw/was etc.):

past + finished time

We arrived

  yesterday,
  last week.
  at 3 o’clock.
  in 2002.
  six months ago.

Do not use the present perfect (have arrived / have done / have been etc.) with a finished time:

☐ I saw Paula yesterday. (not I have seen)
☐ Where were you on Sunday afternoon? (not Where have you been)
☐ We didn’t have a holiday last year. (not We haven’t had)
☐ ‘What did you do last night?’ ‘I stayed at home.’
☐ William Shakespeare lived from 1564 to 1616. He was a writer. He wrote many plays and poems.

Use the past to ask When …? or What time …?:

☐ When did you buy your computer? (not When have you bought?)
☐ What time did Andy go out? (not What time has Andy gone out)

Compare:

present perfect

☐ I have lost my key.
  (= I can’t find it now)
☐ Ben has gone home.
  (= he isn’t here now)
☐ Have you seen Kate?
  (= where is she now?)

past

☐ I lost my key last week.

☐ Ben went home ten minutes ago.

☐ Did you see Kate on Saturday?

finished time

☐ Have you ever been to Spain?
  (= in your life, until now)
☐ My friend is a writer. He has written many books.
☐ The letter hasn’t arrived yet.
☐ We’ve lived in Singapore for six years.
  (= we live there now)

past

☐ Did you go to Spain last year?

☐ Shakespeare wrote many plays and poems.
☐ The letter didn’t arrive yesterday.
☐ We lived in Glasgow for six years, but now we live in Singapore.

past simple → Units 11-12  present perfect → Units 15-18
20.1 Complete the answers to the questions.

1. Have you seen Kate? Yes, I saw her five minutes ago.
2. Have you started your new job? Yes, I started last week.
3. Have your friends arrived? Yes, they arrived at 5 o’clock.
4. Has Sarah gone away? Yes, she went yesterday.
5. Have you worn your new suit? Yes, I wore it the day before yesterday.

20.2 Are these sentences OK? Correct the verbs that are wrong. (The verbs are underlined.)

1. I’ve lost my key. I can’t find it. OK
2. Have you seen Kate yesterday? Did you see
3. I’ve finished my work at 2 o’clock. I have finished
4. I’m ready now. I’ve finished my work.
5. What time have you finished your work? What time have you finished your work?
6. Sue isn’t here. She’s gone out.
7. Steve’s grandmother has died two years ago.
8. Where have you been last night? Where have you been last night?

20.3 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

1. My friend is a writer. He has written (write) many books.
2. We didn’t have (not/have) a holiday last year.
3. I played (play) tennis yesterday afternoon.
4. What time did you go to bed last night? What time did you go to bed last night?
5. Did you ever meet (you/ever/meet) a famous person? Did you ever meet a famous person?
6. The weather hasn’t been (not/be) very good yesterday.
7. Kathy travels a lot. She has visited (visit) many countries.
8. I switched (switch) off the light before going out this morning.
9. I live in New York now, but I have lived (live) in Mexico for many years.
10. ‘What’s Canada like? Is it beautiful?’ ‘I don’t know. I have never been (not/be) there.’

20.4 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

1. A: Have you ever been (you/every/be) to Florida?
   B: Yes, we went (go) there on holiday two years ago.
   A: Did you have (you/have) a good time?
   B: Yes, it was very nice.

2. A: Where’s Alan? (you/see) him?
   B: Yes, he has seen (go) out a few minutes ago.
   A: And Rachel?
   B: I don’t know. I haven’t seen (not/see) her.

3. Rose works in a factory. She has worked (work) there for six months.
   Before that she was a waitress in a restaurant. She has been (be) a waitress in a restaurant.
   She didn’t enjoy (not/enjoy) it very much.

4. A: Do you know Martin’s sister?
   B: I have never seen (see) her a few times, but I have spoken (you/ever/speak) to her?
   A: Yes, I have met (meet) her at a party last week. She’s very nice.

Compare active and passive:

Somebody cleans the office every day. \(\text{(active)}\)

\[\text{The office is cleaned every day.} \quad \text{\textit{(passive)}}\]

Somebody cleaned the office yesterday. \(\text{(active)}\)

\[\text{The office was cleaned yesterday.} \quad \text{\textit{(passive)}}\]

The passive is:

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
\text{present simple} & \text{am/is/are} \quad \text{(not)} \\
\text{past simple} & \text{was/were} \\
\end{array}
\]

\text{past participle}

- cleaned
- done
- invented
- built
- injured
- taken

etc.

The past participle of regular verbs is -ed (cleaned/damaged etc.).

For a list of irregular past participles (done/built/taken etc.), see Appendix 2–3.

- Butter is made from milk.
- Oranges are imported into Britain.
- How often are these rooms cleaned?
- I am never invited to parties.
- This house was built 100 years ago.
- These houses were built 100 years ago.
- When was the telephone invented?
- We weren't invited to the party last week.
- 'Was anybody injured in the accident?' 'Yes, two people were taken to hospital.'

was/were born

- I was born in Berlin in 1989. \(\text{\textit{(not}} \text{I am born)}\)
- 'Where were you born?' 'In Cairo.'

passive + by ...

- The telephone was invented by Alexander Bell in 1876. (= Alexander Bell invented it)
- I was bitten by a dog a few days ago.
- Do you like these paintings? They were painted by a friend of mine.
21.1 Write sentences from these words. Some of the sentences are questions.

Sentences 1-7 are present.
1 (the office / clean / every day)
2 (these rooms / clean / every day?)
3 (glass / make / from sand)
4 (stamps / sell / in a post office)
5 (this room / not / use / very often)
6 (we / allow / to park here?)
7 (how / this word / pronounce?)

The office is cleaned every day.
Are these rooms cleaned every day?
Glass

Sentences 8-15 are past.
8 (the office / clean / yesterday)
9 (the house / paint / last month)
10 (my phone / steal / a few days ago)
11 (three people / injure / in the accident)
12 (when / this bridge / build?)
13 (I / not / wake up / by the noise)
14 (how / these windows / break?)
15 (you / invite / to Jon's party last week?)

The office was cleaned yesterday.
The house

21.2 These sentences are not correct. Correct them.

1 This house built 100 years ago.
2 Football plays in most countries of the world.
3 Why did the letter send to the wrong address?
4 A garage is a place where cars repair.
5 Where are you born?
6 How many languages are speaking in Switzerland?
7 Somebody broke into our house, but nothing stolen.
8 When was invented the bicycle?

This house was built.

21.3 Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:
clean damage find give invite make make show steal take

1 The room _______________ every day.
2 I saw an accident yesterday. Two people _______________ to hospital.
3 Paper _______________ from wood.
4 There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms _______________.
5 ‘Where did you get this picture?’ ‘It _______________ to me by a friend of mine.’
6 Many American programmes _______________ on British television.
7 ‘Did Jim and Sue go to the wedding?’ ‘No. They _______________, but they didn’t go.’
8 ‘How old is this film?’ ‘It _______________ in 1965.’
9 My car _______________ last week, but the next day it _______________ by the police.

21.4 Where were they born?
1 (Ian / Edinburgh) Ian was born in Edinburgh.
2 (Sally / Manchester) Sally
3 (her parents / Ireland) Her
4 (you / ???) I
5 (your mother / ???)
is being done has been done
(passive 2)

is/are being ... (present continuous passive)

- Somebody is painting the door. (active)
- The door is being painted. (passive)

My car is at the garage. It is being repaired. (= somebody is repairing it)
Some new houses are being built opposite the park. (= somebody is building them)

Compare the present continuous and present simple:
- The office is being cleaned at the moment. (continuous)
  The office is cleaned every day. (simple)
- In Britain football matches are often played at the weekend, but no matches are being played next weekend.

For the present continuous and present simple, see Units 8 and 25.

has/have been ... (present perfect passive)

My key has been stolen. (= somebody has stolen it)
My keys have been stolen. (= somebody has stolen them)
I’m not going to the party. I haven’t been invited. (= nobody has invited me)
Has this shirt been washed? (= has somebody washed it?)

Compare the present perfect and past simple:
- The room isn’t dirty any more. It has been cleaned. (present perfect)
  The room was cleaned yesterday. (past simple)
- I can’t find my keys. I think they’ve been stolen. (present perfect)
  My keys were stolen last week. (past simple)

For the present perfect and past simple, see Unit 20.
22.1 What's happening?

1. The car ______ is being repaired.  
2. A bridge ______  
3. The windows ______  
4. The grass ______

22.2 Look at the pictures. What is happening or what has happened? Use the present continuous (is/are being ...) or the present perfect (has/have been ...).

1. (the office / clean) ______ The office is being cleaned.  
2. (the shirts / iron) ______ The shirts have been ironed.  
3. (the window / break) ______ The window ______  
4. (the roof / repair) ______ The roof ______  
5. (the car / damage) ______  
6. (the houses / knock / down) ______  
7. (the trees / cut / down) ______  
8. (they / invite / to a party) ______

22.3 Complete the sentences. (Study Unit 21 before you do this exercise.)

1. I can't use my office at the moment. It ______ is being painted ______ (paint).  
2. We didn't go to the party. We ______ weren't invited ______ (not/invite).  
3. The washing machine was broken, but it's OK now. It ______ ______ (repair).  
4. The washing machine ______ ______ (repair) yesterday afternoon.  
5. A factory is a place where things ______ ______ (make).  
6. How old are these houses? When ______ ______ (they/build)?  
7. A: ______ ______ (the computer / use) at the moment?  
   B: Yes, Steve is using it.  
8. I've never seen these flowers before. What ______ ______ (they/call)?  
9. My sunglasses ______ ______ (steal) at the beach yesterday.  
10. The bridge is closed at the moment. It ______ ______ (damage) last week and it ______ ______ (not/repaired) yet. 

→ Additional exercises 24–27 (pages 263–64)
be/have/do in present and past tenses

A

be (= am/is/are/was/were) + -ing (cleaning/working etc.)

am/is/are + -ing (present continuous)
→ Units 3–4 and 25

was/were + -ing (past continuous)
→ Unit 13

- Please be quiet. I’m working.
- It isn’t raining at the moment.
- What are you doing this evening?
- I was working when she arrived.
- It wasn’t raining, so we didn’t need an umbrella.
- What were you doing at 3 o’clock?

B

be + past participle (cleaned/made/eaten etc.)

am/is/are + past participle (passive present simple)
→ Unit 21

was/were + past participle (passive past simple)
→ Unit 21

- I’m never invited to parties.
- Butter is made from milk.
- These offices aren’t cleaned every day.
- The office was cleaned yesterday.
- These houses were built 100 years ago.
- How was the window broken?
- Where were you born?

C

have/has + past participle (cleaned/lost/eaten/been etc.)

have/has + past participle (present perfect)
→ Units 15–18

- I’ve cleaned my room.
- Tom has lost his passport.
- Kate hasn’t been to Canada.
- Where have Paul and Nicole been?

D

do/does/did + infinitive (clean/like/eat/go etc.)

do/does + infinitive (present simple negative and questions)
→ Units 6–7

did + infinitive (past simple negative and questions)
→ Unit 12

- I like coffee, but I don’t like tea.
- Chris doesn’t go out very often.
- What do you usually do at weekends?
- Does Silvia live alone?
- I didn’t watch TV yesterday.
- It didn’t rain last week.
- What time did Paul and Nicole go out?
23.1 Write is/are or do/does.

1. **Do** you work in the evenings?  
2. **Where** **are** they going?  
3. **Why** you looking at me?  
4. **Bill** live near you?  
5. **you** like cooking?  
6. the sun shining?  
7. What time **the shops** close?  
8. Maria working today?  
9. this word mean?  
10. you feeling all right?

23.2 Write am not/isn't/aren't or don't/doesn't. All these sentences are negative.

1. Tom **doesn't** work at weekends.  
2. I'm very tired. I **want** to go out this evening.  
3. I’m very tired. I **going out** this evening.  
4. Gary **working** this week. He’s on holiday.  
5. My parents are usually at home. They **go out** very often.  
6. Nicole has travelled a lot, but she **speak any** foreign languages.  
7. You can turn off the television. I **watching it.**  
8. Liz has invited us to her party next week, but we **going.**

23.3 Write was/were/did/have/has.

1. **Where** **were** your shoes made?  
2. **you go out last night?**  
3. **What** **you doing at 10.30?**  
4. **Where** **your mother born?**  
5. **Barbara gone home?**  
6. **she go?**  
7. **these houses built?**  
8. **Steve arrived yet?**  
9. **you go home early?**  
10. **they been married?**

23.4 Write is/are/was/were/have/has.

1. Joe **has** lost his passport.  
2. This bridge **built ten years ago.**  
3. **you finished your work yet?**  
4. This town is always clean. The streets **cleaned every day.**  
5. **you born?**  
6. I **just made some coffee.** Would you like some?  
7. Glass **made from sand.**  
8. This is a very old photograph. It **taken a long time ago.**  
9. David **bought a new car.**

23.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>damage</th>
<th>rain</th>
<th>enjoy</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>pronounce</th>
<th>eat</th>
<th>listen</th>
<th>use</th>
<th>open</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>understand</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. I’m going to take an umbrella with me. It’s **raining**.  
2. Why are you so tired? Did you **go** to bed late last night?  
3. Where are the chocolates? Have you **them all?**  
4. How is your new job? Are you **it?**  
5. My car was badly **in the accident, but I was OK.**  
6. Chris has got a car, but she doesn’t **it very often.**  
7. Mary isn’t at home. She has **away for a few days.**  
8. I don’t **the problem. Can you explain it again?**  
9. Martin is in his room. He’s **music.**  
10. I don’t know how to say this word. How is it **?**  
11. How do you **this window? Can you show me?**
Regular and irregular verbs

Regular verbs

The past simple and past participle of regular verbs is -ed:

- clean → cleaned
- live → lived
- paint → painted
- study → studied

**Past simple (→ Unit 11)**

- I cleaned my room yesterday.
- Charlie studied engineering at university.

**Past participle**

- have/has + past participle (present perfect → Units 15–18):
  - I have cleaned my room.
  - Tina has lived in London for ten years.

- be (is/are/were/has been etc.) + past participle (passive → Units 21–22):
  - These rooms are cleaned every day.
  - My car has been repaired.

Irregular verbs

The past simple and past participle of irregular verbs do not end in -ed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>made</th>
<th>broke</th>
<th>cut</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past participle</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>broken</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>find</th>
<th>buy</th>
<th>cut</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past participle</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I made a cake yesterday. (*past simple*)
- I have made some coffee. (*past participle – present perfect*)
- Butter is made from milk. (*past participle – passive present*)

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>break</th>
<th>know</th>
<th>begin</th>
<th>go</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past participle</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>went</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broken</td>
<td>known</td>
<td>begun</td>
<td>gone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Somebody broke this window last night. (*past simple*)
- Somebody has broken this window. (*past participle – present perfect*)
- This window was broken last night. (*past participle – passive past*)

irregular verbs → Appendix 2–3
spelling (regular verbs) → Appendix 5
Exercises

Unit 24

24.1 Write the past simple / past participle of these verbs. (The past simple and past participle are the same for all the verbs in this exercise.)

1 make  
2 cut  
3 get  
4 bring  
5 pay  
6 enjoy  
7 buy  
8 sit  
9 leave  
10 happen  
11 hear  
12 put  
13 catch  
14 watch  
15 understand  

24.2 Write the past simple and past participle of these verbs.

1 break  
2 begin  
3 eat  
4 drink  
5 drive  
6 speak  
7 write  
8 come  
9 know  
10 take  
11 go  
12 give  
13 throw  
14 forget  

24.3 Put the verb in the right form.

1 I __________ my hands because they were dirty. (wash)
2 Somebody has __________ this window. (break)
3 I feel good. I __________ very well last night. (sleep)
4 We __________ a really good film yesterday. (see)
5 It __________ a lot while we were on holiday. (rain)
6 I’ve __________ my bag. (lose) Have you __________ it? (see)
7 Rosa’s bicycle was __________ last week. (steal)
8 I __________ to bed early because I was tired. (go)
9 Have you __________ your work yet? (finish)
10 The shopping centre was __________ about 20 years ago. (build)
11 Anna __________ to drive when she was 18. (learn)
12 I’ve never __________ a horse. (ride)
13 Julia is a good friend of mine. I’ve __________ her for a long time. (know)
14 Yesterday I __________ and __________ my leg. (fall / hurt)
15 My brother __________ in the London Marathon last year. Have you ever __________ in a marathon? (run / run)

24.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cost</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>fly</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>meet</th>
<th>sell</th>
<th>speak</th>
<th>swim</th>
<th>tell</th>
<th>think</th>
<th>wake up</th>
<th>win</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 I have __________ some coffee. Would you like some?
2 Have you __________ John about your new job?
3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn’t play very well, but we __________ the game.
4 I know Gary, but I’ve never __________ his wife.
5 We were __________ by loud music in the middle of the night.
6 Stephanie jumped into the river and __________ to the other side.
7 ‘Did you like the film?’ ‘Yes, I __________ it was very good.’
8 Many different languages are __________ in the Philippines.
9 Our holiday __________ a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel.
10 Have you __________ a very fast car?
11 All the tickets for the concert were __________ very quickly.
12 A bird __________ in through the open window while we were having our dinner.
What are you doing tomorrow?

They are playing tennis (now).

He is playing tennis tomorrow.

We use am/is/are + -ing (present continuous) for something happening now:
- ‘Where are Sue and Amanda?’ ‘They’re playing tennis in the park.’
- Please be quiet. I’m working.

We also use am/is/are + -ing for the future (tomorrow / next week etc.):
- Andrew is playing tennis tomorrow.
- I’m not working next week.

I am doing something tomorrow = I have arranged to do it, I have a plan to do it:
- Sophie is going to the dentist on Friday.
  (= she has an appointment with the dentist)
- We’re having a party next weekend.
- Are you meeting your friends tonight?
- What are you doing tomorrow evening?
- I’m not going out tonight. I’m staying at home.

You can also say ‘I’m going to do something’ (→ Unit 26).

Be careful! Do not use the present simple (I stay / do you go etc.) to say what somebody has arranged to do:
- I’m staying at home this evening. (not I stay)
- Are you going out tonight? (not Do you go)
- Lisa isn’t coming to the party next week. (not Lisa doesn’t come)

But we use the present simple for timetables, programmes, trains, buses etc.:
- The train arrives at 7.30.
- What time does the film finish?

Compare:

Present continuous (usually for people)
- I’m going to a concert tomorrow.
- What time are you leaving?

Present simple (for timetables, programmes etc.)
- The concert starts at 7.30.
- What time does your train leave?
25.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?

1. Andrew is playing tennis on Friday.
2. Richard goes to the cinema.
4. Karen goes to a dinner party.
5. Tom and Sue have lunch with Ken.

25.2 Write questions. All the sentences are future.

1. (you / go / out / tonight?) Are you going out tonight?
2. (you / work / next week?)
3. (what / you / do / tomorrow evening?)
4. (what time / your friends / come?)
5. (when / Liz / go / on holiday?)

25.3 Write sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

1. I’m staying at home tonight.
2. I’m going to the theatre on Monday.
3. ...
4. ...
5. ...
6. ...

25.4 Put the verb in the present continuous (he is leaving etc.) or present simple (the train leaves etc.).

1. Are you going (you/go) out tonight? ‘No, I’m too tired.’
2. We’re going (we/go) to a concert tonight. It starts (it/start) at 7.30.
3. Do you know about Sally? She’s getting (she/get) married next month!
4. A: My parents are going (go) on holiday next week.
   B: Oh, that’s nice. Where are they going (they/go)?
5. Silvia is doing an English course at the moment. The course finishes (finish) on Friday.
6. There’s a party tomorrow night, but I’m not going (I/not/go).
7. I’m going (I/go) out with some friends tonight. Why don’t you come too? We’re meeting (we/meet) outside the Royal Hotel at 8 o’clock.
8. A: How are you going (you/get) home after the party tomorrow? By taxi?
   B: No, I can go by bus. The last bus leaves (leave) at midnight.
9. A: Do you want to go to the cinema tonight?
   B: Yes, what film do you want to see (the film / begin)?
10. A: What do you plan to do tomorrow afternoon?
    B: I’m going (I/work).
I’m going to ...

I’m going to do something

She is going to watch TV this evening.

We use am/is/are going to ... for the future:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>am</th>
<th>is</th>
<th>are</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>(not)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we/you/they</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>going to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>buy ...?</td>
<td>eat ...?</td>
<td>wear ...?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I am going to do something = I have decided to do it, my intention is to do it:

I decided to do it ——> I’m going to do it

- I’m going to buy some books tomorrow.
- Sarah is going to sell her car.
- I’m not going to have breakfast this morning. I’m not hungry.
- What are you going to wear to the wedding next week?
- ‘Your hands are dirty.’ ‘Yes, I know. I’m going to wash them.’
- Are you going to invite Martin to your party?

We also use the present continuous (I am doing) for the future, usually for arrangements (→ Unit 25):
- I am playing tennis with Julia tomorrow.

Something is going to happen = we can see now that it is sure to happen:
- Look at the sky! It’s going to rain.
  (black clouds now → rain)
- Oh dear! It’s 9 o’clock and I’m not ready.
  I’m going to be late.
  (9 o’clock now and not ready → late)

present for the future → Unit 25 will → Units 27–28
26.1 What are these people saying?

1. I'm going to watch TV.
2. (Blank)
3. Buy a new car now!
4. (Blank)

26.2 Complete the sentences. Use going to + these verbs:

do  eat  give  lie down  stay  walk  wash  watch  wear

1. My hands are dirty. I'm going to wash them.
2. What are you going to wear to the party tonight?
3. It's a nice day. I don't want to take the bus. I
4. Steve is going to London next week. He
5. I'm hungry. I
6. It's Sharon's birthday next week. We
7. Sue says she's feeling very tired. She
8. There's a good film on Channel 6 tonight. You
9. What Rachel

26.3 Look at the pictures. What is going to happen?

1. It's going to rain
2. The shelf
3. The car
4. He

26.4 What are you going to do today or tomorrow? Write three sentences.

1. I'm
2. 
3. 

63
You can use I’ll ... (I will) when you offer something or decide to do something:
- ‘My bag is very heavy.’ ‘I’ll carry it for you.’
- ‘I’ll phone you tomorrow, OK?’ ‘OK, bye.’

We often say I think I’ll ... / I don’t think I’ll ... when we decide to do something:
- I’m tired. I think I’ll go to bed early tonight.
- It’s a nice day. I think I’ll sit outside.
- It’s raining. I don’t think I’ll go out.

Do not use the present simple (I go / I phone etc.) in sentences like these:
- I’ll phone you tomorrow, OK? (not I phone you)
- I think I’ll go to bed early. (not I go to bed)

Do not use I’ll ... for something you decided before (→ Units 25–26):
- I’m working tomorrow. (not I’ll work)
- There’s a good film on TV tonight. I’m going to watch it. (not I’ll watch)
- What are you doing at the weekend? (not What will you do)

Shall I ...? Shall we ...?

Shall I / Shall we ...? = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?
- It’s very warm in this room. Shall I open the window?
- ‘Shall I phone you this evening?’ ‘Yes, please.’
- I’m going to a party tonight. What shall I wear?
- It’s a nice day. Shall we go for a walk?
- Where shall we go for our holidays this year?
- ‘Let’s go out this evening.’ ‘OK, what time shall we meet?’

What are you doing tomorrow? → Unit 25 I’m going to ... → Unit 26 will/shall 1 → Unit 27
Let’s → Units 35, 53
Exercises

28.1 Complete the sentences. Use I’ll (I will) + these verbs:

carry  do  eat  send  show  sit  stay

1. My bag is very heavy. I’ll __________ it for you.
2. Enjoy your holiday. Thank you. __________ you a postcard.
3. I don’t want this banana. Well, I’m hungry. __________ it.
4. Do you want a chair? No, it’s OK. __________ on the floor.
5. Did you phone Jenny? Oh no, I forgot. __________ it now.
6. Are you coming with me? No, I don’t think so. __________ here.
7. How do you use this camera? Give it to me and __________ you.

28.2 Complete the sentences. Use I think I’ll ... or I don’t think I’ll ... + these verbs:
buy  buy  go-  have  play

1. It’s cold today. I __________ go out.
2. I’m hungry. I __________ something to eat.
3. I feel very tired. I __________ tennis.
4. I like this hat. I __________ it.
5. This camera is too expensive. I __________ it.

28.3 Which is right?

1. phone / I’ll phone you tomorrow, OK? (I’ll phone is right)
2. I haven’t done the shopping yet. I do / I’ll do it later.
3. I like sport. I watch / I’ll watch a lot of sport on TV.
4. I need some exercise. I think I go / I’ll go for a walk.
5. Gerry is going to buy / will buy a new car. He told me last week.
6. ‘This letter is for Rose.’ ‘OK. I give / I’ll give / I’m going to give it to her.’
7. A: Are you doing / Will you do anything this evening?
     B: Yes, I’m going / I’ll go out with some friends.
8. I can’t go out with you tomorrow night. I work / I’m working / I’ll work.

28.4 Write sentences with Shall I ...? Choose from the two boxes.

- make turn off
- turn on
- some sandwiches
- the television
- the light
- the window

1. It’s very warm in this room. Shall I __________ the window?
2. This programme isn’t very good. I’m hungry. Shall I __________ the light?
3. It’s dark in this room. Shall I __________ the television?

28.5 Write sentences with Shall we ...? Choose from the two boxes.

- what  where  buy  invite
- what-time  who  go  meet

1. Let’s go out tonight. OK, __________ time shall we meet?
2. Let’s have a holiday. OK, __________
3. Let’s spend some money. OK, __________
4. Let’s have a party. OK, __________
might

He might go to New York.  (= it is possible that he will go to New York)
It might rain.  (= it is possible that it will rain)

**might + infinitive (might go / might be / might rain etc.):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they might (not)</th>
<th>I/me/you/they might (not)</th>
<th>be</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>come</th>
<th>etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**I might = it is possible that I will:**
- I might go to the cinema this evening, but I'm not sure. (= it is possible that I will go)
- A: When is Rebecca going to phone you?
  B: I don't know. She might phone this afternoon.
- Take an umbrella with you. It might rain.
- Buy a lottery ticket. You might be lucky. (= perhaps you will be lucky)
- 'Are you going out tonight?' 'I might.' (= I might go out)

Study the difference:
- I'm playing tennis tomorrow. (sure)
  I might play tennis tomorrow. (possible)
- Rebecca is going to phone later. (sure)
  Rebecca might phone later. (possible)

**I might not = it is possible that I will not:**
- I might not go to work tomorrow. (= it is possible that I will not go)
- Sue might not come to the party. (= it is possible that she will not come)

**may**

You can use may in the same way. I may = I might:
- I may go to the cinema this evening. (= I might go)
- Sue may not come to the party. (= Sue might not come)

**May I ...? = Is it OK to ...? / Can I ...?:**
- May I ask a question? (= is it OK to ask / can I ask?)
- 'May I sit here?' 'Yes, of course.'
Exercises

29.1 Write sentences with might.
1 (it’s possible that I’ll go to the cinema) I  might go to the cinema.
2 (it’s possible that I’ll see you tomorrow) I  
3 (it’s possible that Sarah will forget to phone) 
4 (it’s possible that it will snow today) 
5 (it’s possible that I’ll be late tonight) 

Write sentences with might not.
6 (it’s possible that Mark will not be here next week) I  
7 (it’s possible that I won’t have time to go out) 

29.2 Somebody is asking you about your plans. You have some ideas, but you are not sure. Choose from the list and write sentences with I might.

fish  go away  Italy  Monday  a new car  taxi

1 Where are you going for your holidays? I’m not sure.  I  might go to Italy.
2 What are you doing at the weekend? I don’t know. I  
3 When will you see Kate again? I’m not sure. 
4 What are you going to have for dinner? I don’t know. 
5 How are you going to get home tonight? I’m not sure. 
6 I hear you won some money. What are you going to do with it? I haven’t decided yet.

29.3 You ask Bill questions about his plans for tomorrow. Sometimes he is sure, but usually he is not sure.

Are you playing tennis tomorrow? Yes, in the afternoon.
Are you going out tomorrow evening? Possibly.
Are you going to get up early? Perhaps.
Are you working tomorrow? No, I’m not.
Will you be at home tomorrow morning? Maybe.
Are you going to watch television? I might.
Are you going out in the afternoon? Yes, I am.
Are you going shopping? Perhaps.

Now write about Bill. Use might where necessary.
1 He’s playing tennis tomorrow afternoon. 
2 He might go out tomorrow evening. 
3 He 
4 
5 
6 
7 
8 

29.4 Write three things that you might do tomorrow.
1 
2 
3
can and could

**A**

He can play the piano.

Could you open the door, please?

**B**

**can + infinitive (can do / can play / can come etc.):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>can</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>can’t (cannot)</th>
<th>see</th>
<th>come etc.</th>
<th>can</th>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>do:</th>
<th>play?</th>
<th>see?</th>
<th>come? etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>can’t (cannot)</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>come etc.</td>
<td>can</td>
<td>I/we/you/they</td>
<td>do:</td>
<td>play?</td>
<td>see?</td>
<td>come? etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I can do something = I know how to do it, or it is possible for me to do it:

- Sarah can speak Italian, but she can’t speak Spanish.
- ‘Can you swim?’ ‘Yes, but I’m not a very good swimmer.’
- ‘Can you change twenty pounds?’ ‘I’m sorry, I can’t.’
- I’m having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel can’t come.

**C**

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use could/couldn’t:

- When I was young, I could run very fast.
- Before Maria came to Britain, she couldn’t understand much English. Now she can understand everything.
- I was tired last night, but I couldn’t sleep.
- I had a party last week, but Paul and Rachel couldn’t come.

**D**

**Can you ... ? Could you ... ? Can I ... ? Could I ... ?**

We use Can you ... ? or Could you ... ? when we ask people to do things:

- Can you open the door, please? or Could you open the door, please?
- Can you wait a moment, please? or Could you wait ... ?

We use Can I have ... ? or Could I have ... ? to ask for something:

- (in a shop) Can I have these postcards, please? or Could I have ... ?

**Can I ... ? or Could I ... ? = is it OK to do something?:**

- Tom, can I borrow your umbrella? or Tom, could I borrow your umbrella?
- (on the phone) Hello, can I speak to Gary, please? or ... could I speak ... ?

May I ... ? → Unit 29
Exercises

30.1 Ask Steve if he can do these things:

1. [Image of a person snowboarding]
2. [Image of a person playing chess]
3. [Image of people dancing and clapping]
4. [Image of a person running]
5. [Image of a person riding a horse]
6. [Image of a person driving a car 10 kilometres]

Can you do these things? Write sentences about yourself. Use I can or I can't.

7. [Blank line]
8. [Blank line]
9. [Blank line]
10. [Blank line]
11. [Blank line]
12. [Blank line]

30.2 Complete these sentences. Use can or can't + one of these verbs:

come  find  hear  see  speak

1. I'm sorry, but we can't come to your party next Saturday.
2. I like this hotel room. You can see the mountains from the window.
3. You are speaking very quietly. I can't hear you.
4. Have you seen my bag? I can't find it.
5. Catherine got the job because she can speak five languages.

30.3 Complete these sentences. Use can't or couldn't + one of these verbs:

decide  eat  find  go  go  sleep

1. I was tired, but I couldn't sleep.
2. I wasn't hungry yesterday. I didn't eat my dinner.
3. Kate doesn't know what to do. She can't decide.
4. I wanted to speak to Martin yesterday, but I couldn't reach him.
5. James couldn't go to the concert next Saturday. He has to work.
6. Paula couldn't go to the meeting last week. She was ill.

30.4 What do you say in these situations? Use can or could.
must  mustn’t  don’t need to

It’s a fantastic film. You must see it.

must + infinitive (must do / must work etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they he/she/it</th>
<th>must do</th>
<th>must work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We/you/they</td>
<td></td>
<td>eat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I must (do something) = I need to do it:

- I’m very hungry. I must eat something.
- It’s a fantastic film. You must see it.
- The windows are very dirty. We must clean them.

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use had to ... (not must):

- I was very hungry. I had to eat something. (not I must eat)
- We had to walk home last night. There were no buses. (not We must walk)

mustn’t (= must not)

I mustn’t (do something) = it is necessary not to do it, it is the wrong thing to do:

- I must hurry. I mustn’t be late.
- I mustn’t forget to phone Jane.
  (= I must remember to phone her)
- Be happy! You mustn’t be sad. (= don’t be sad)
- You mustn’t touch the pictures.
  (= don’t touch the pictures)

don’t need to

I don’t need (to do something) = it is not necessary:

- I don’t need to go yet. I can stay a little longer.
- You don’t need to shout. I can hear you OK.

You can also say don’t have to … :

- I don’t have to go yet. I can stay a little longer.

Compare don’t need to and mustn’t:

- You don’t need to go. You can stay here if you want.
- You mustn’t go. You must stay here.
Exercises

31.1 Complete the sentences. Use must + these verbs:

be  eat  go  learn  meet  wash  win

1 I’m very hungry. I _______________ something.
2 Marilyn is a very interesting person. You _______________ her.
3 My hands are dirty. I _______________ them.
4 You _______________ to drive. It will be very useful.
5 I _______________ to the post office. I need some stamps.
6 The game tomorrow is very important for us. We _______________.
7 You can’t always have things immediately. You _______________ patient.

31.2 Write I must or I had to.

1 I _______________ walk home last night. There were no buses.
2 It’s late. _______________ go now.
3 I don’t usually work on Saturdays, but last Saturday _______________ work.
4 _______________ get up early tomorrow. I’ve got a lot to do.
5 I went to London by train last week. The train was full and _______________ stand all the way.
6 I was nearly late for my appointment this morning. _______________ run to get there on time.
7 I forgot to phone David yesterday. _______________ phone him later today.

31.3 Complete the sentences. Use mustn’t or don’t need to + one of these verbs:

forget  go  hurry  lose  phone  wait

1 I _______________ home yet. I can stay a little longer.
2 We have a lot of time. We _______________.
3 Keep these papers in a safe place. You _______________ them.
4 I’m not ready yet, but you _______________ for me. You can go now and I’ll come later.
5 We _______________ to turn off the lights before we leave.
6 I must contact David, but I _______________ him – I can send him an email.

31.4 Find the sentences with the same meaning.

1 We can leave the meeting early.
2 We must leave the meeting early.
3 We mustn’t leave the meeting early.
4 We had to leave the meeting early.
5 We don’t need to leave the meeting early.

A We must stay until the end.
B We couldn’t stay until the end.
C We can’t stay until the end.
D We can stay until the end.
E We don’t need to stay until the end.

31.5 Write must / mustn’t / had to / don’t need to.

1 You _______________ go. You can stay here if you want.
2 It’s a fantastic film. You _______________ see it.
3 The restaurant won’t be busy tonight. We _______________ reserve a table.
4 I was very busy last week. I _______________ work every evening.
5 I want to know what happened. You _______________ tell me.
6 You _______________ tell Sue what happened. I don’t want her to know.
7 I _______________ hurry or I’ll be late.
8 ‘Why were you so late?’ ‘I _______________ wait half an hour for a bus.’
9 We _______________ decide now. We can decide later.
10 It’s Lisa’s birthday next week. I _______________ forget to buy her a present.
You **should** do something = it is a good thing to do, it is the right thing to do:
- Tom doesn’t study enough. He **should** study harder.
- It’s a good film. You **should** go and see it.
- When you play tennis, you **should** always watch the ball.

You **shouldn’t** do something = it is not a good thing to do.
Shouldn’t = should not:
- Tom **shouldn’t** go to bed so late.
- You watch TV all the time. You **shouldn’t** watch TV so much.

We often say **I think** … **should** …

**I think** … **should** … :
- **I think** Lisa **should** buy some new clothes.
  (= I think it is a good idea.)
- It’s late. **I think** I **should** go home now.
- A: Shall I buy this coat?
  B: Yes, I **think** you **should**.

**I don’t think** … **should** … :
- **I don’t think** you **should** work so hard.
  (= I don’t think it is a good idea.)
- **I don’t think** we **should** go yet. It’s too early.

**Do you think** … **should** … ?:
- **Do you think** I **should** buy this hat?
- **What time** **do you think** we **should** go home?

**Must** is stronger than **should**:
- It’s a **good** film. You **should** go and see it.
- It’s a **fantastic** film. You **must** go and see it.

Another way to say **should** is **ought to**:
- It’s a good film. You **ought** **to** go and see it. (= you should go)
- **I think** Lisa **ought** **to** **buy** some new clothes. (= Lisa should buy)
Exercises

32.1 Complete the sentences. Use you should + these verbs:

- eat
- go
- take
- visit
- watch
- wear

1. When you play tennis, you should watch the ball.
2. It's late and you're very tired. go to bed.
3. plenty of fruit and vegetables.
4. If you have time, the Science Museum. It's very interesting.
5. When you're driving, a seat belt.
6. It's too far to walk from here to the station. a taxi.

32.2 Write about the people in the pictures. Use He/She shouldn't ... so ....

1. She shouldn't watch TV so much.
2. He hard.
3. You work too hard.

32.3 You are not sure what to do, so you ask a friend. Write questions with do you think I should ... ?

1. You are in a shop. You are trying on a jacket. (buy?)
   You ask your friend: Do you think I should buy this jacket?
2. You can't drive. (learn?)
   You ask your friend: Do you think
3. You don't like your job. (get another job?)
   You ask your friend:
4. You are going to have a party. (invite Gary?)
   You ask your friend:

32.4 Write sentences with I think ... should ... and I don't think ... should ....

1. We have to get up early tomorrow. (go home now) I think we should go home now.
2. That coat is too big for you. (buy it) I don't think you should buy it.
3. You don't need your car. (sell it)
4. Karen needs a rest. (have a holiday)
5. Sally and Dan are too young. (get married)
6. You're not well this morning. (go to work)
7. James isn't well today. (go to the doctor)
8. The hotel is too expensive for us. (stay there)

32.5 What do you think? Write sentences with should.

1. I think everybody should learn another language.
2. I think everybody
3. I think
4. I don't think
5. I think I should
I have to do something = it is necessary for me to do it, I am obliged to do it

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we/you/they</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>to work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>to wear etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I’ll be late for work tomorrow. I have to go to the dentist.
- Jane starts work at 7 o’clock, so she has to get up at 6.
- You have to pass a test before you can get a driving licence.

The past (yesterday / last week etc.) is had to ...

- I was late for work yesterday. I had to go to the dentist.
- We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.

In questions and negatives we use do/does (present) and did (past):

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| I/we/you/they | do | have to ...
| he/she/it | does | have to ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| I/we/you/they | don’t | have to ...
| he/she/it | doesn’t | have to ...

- What time do you have to go to the dentist tomorrow?
- Does Jane have to work on Sundays?
- Why did they have to leave the party early?

I don’t have to (do something) = it is not necessary to do it:

- I’m not working tomorrow, so I don’t have to get up early.
- Ian doesn’t have to work very hard. He’s got an easy job.
- We didn’t have to wait very long for the bus – it came in a few minutes.

**Must and have to**

You can use must or have to when you say what you think is necessary, when you give your opinion:

- It’s a fantastic film. You must see it. or You have to see it.

When you are not giving your personal opinion, use have to (not must). Compare:

- Jane won’t be at work this afternoon. She has to go to the doctor. (this is not my personal opinion - it is a fact)
- Jane isn’t well. She doesn’t want to go to the doctor, but I told her she must go. (this is my personal opinion)

**must / mustn’t / don’t need to → Unit 31**
33.1 Complete the sentences. Use have to or has to + these verbs:

- do
- hit
- read
- speak
- travel
- wear

1. My eyes are not very good. I have to wear glasses.
2. At the end of the course all the students have to take a test.
3. Sarah is studying literature. She has to read a lot of books.
4. Albert doesn’t understand much English. You have to speak very slowly to him.
5. Kate is not often at home. She has to travel a lot in her job.
6. In tennis you have to hit the ball over the net.

33.2 Complete the sentences. Use have to or had to + these verbs:

- answer
- buy
- change
- go
- walk

1. We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.
2. It’s late. I have to go now. I’ll see you tomorrow.
3. I went to the supermarket after work yesterday. I had to buy some food.
4. This train doesn’t go all the way to London. You had to change at Bristol.
5. We did an exam yesterday. We had to do six questions out of ten.

33.3 Complete the questions. Some are present and some are past.

1. I have to get up early tomorrow. What time do you have to get up?
2. George had to wait a long time. How long did you have to wait?
3. Liz has to go somewhere. Where did you have to go?
4. We had to pay a lot of money. How much did we have to pay?
5. I have to do some work. What exactly have you have to do?

33.4 Write sentences with don’t/doesn’t/didn’t have to ...

1. Why are you going out? You don’t have to go out.
2. Why is Sue waiting? She doesn’t have to wait.
3. Why did you get up early? You didn’t have to get up early.
4. Why is Paul working so hard? He doesn’t have to work so hard.
5. Why do you want to leave now? We don’t have to leave.

33.5 Which is correct? Sometimes must and have to are both correct. Sometimes only one is correct.

1. It’s a fantastic film. You must see / have to see it. (both are correct)
2. Julia won’t be at work this afternoon. She must go / has to go to the doctor. (has to go is correct)
3. You can’t park your car here for nothing. You must pay / have to pay.
4. I didn’t have any money with me last night, so I must borrow / had to borrow some.
5. I eat too much chocolate. I really must stop / have to stop.
6. Paul is in a hurry. He must meet / has to meet somebody in five minutes.
7. What’s wrong? You must tell / have to tell me. I want to help you.

33.6 Write some things that you (or your friends or family) have to do or had to do.

1. (every day) I have to travel ten miles every day.
2. (every day)  
3. (yesterday)  
4. (tomorrow)  

---

77
Would you like …? = Do you want …?

We use Would you like …? to offer things:
- A: Would you like some coffee?
  B: No, thank you.
- A: Would you like a chocolate?
  B: Yes, please.
- A: What would you like, tea or coffee?
  B: Tea, please.

We use Would you like to …? to invite somebody:
- A: Would you like to go for a walk?
  B: Yes, I’d love to. (= I would love to have dinner with you)
- A: Would you like to have dinner with us on Sunday?
  B: Yes, I’d love to.

I’d like … is a polite way to say ‘I want’. I’d like = I would like:
- I’m thirsty. I’d like a drink.
- (in a tourist office) I’d like some information about hotels, please.
- I’m feeling tired. I’d like to stay at home this evening.

Would you like …? and Do you like …?

Would you like …? / I’d like …

Would you like some tea? = Do you want some tea?
- A: Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?
  (= do you want to go tonight?)
  B: Yes, I’d love to.
- I’d like an orange, please.
  (= can I have an orange?)
- What would you like to do next weekend?

Do you like …? / I like …

Do you like tea? = Do you think tea is nice?
- A: Do you like going to the cinema?
  (in general)
  B: Yes, I go to the cinema a lot.
- I like oranges. (in general)
- What do you like to do at weekends?
Exercises

Unit 34

34.1 What are the people in the pictures saying? Use Would you like ... ?

1. Would you like a chocolate?
2. ___________________________
3. ___________________________
4. ___________________________
5. ___________________________
6. ___________________________

34.2 What do you say to Sue in these situations? Use Would you like to ... ?

1. You want to go to the cinema tonight. Perhaps Sue will go with you. (go)
   You say: Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?
2. You want to play tennis tomorrow. Perhaps Sue will play too. (play)
   You say: ___________________________
3. You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. Perhaps Sue will come. (come)
   You say: ___________________________
4. It’s raining and Sue is going out. She hasn’t got an umbrella, but you have one. (borrow)
   You say: ___________________________

34.3 Which is right?

1. ‘Do you like / Would you like a chocolate?’ ‘Yes, please.’ (Would you like is right)
2. ‘Do you like / Would you like bananas?’ ‘Yes, I love them.’
3. ‘Do you like / Would you like an ice-cream?’ ‘No, thank you.’
4. ‘What do you like / would you like to drink?’ ‘A glass of water, please.’
5. ‘Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?’ ‘Not now. Perhaps later.’
6. I like / I’d like tomatoes, but I don’t eat them very often.
7. What time do you like / would you like to have dinner this evening?
8. ‘Do you like / Would you like something to eat?’ ‘No, thanks. I’m not hungry.’
9. ‘Do you like / Would you like your new job?’ ‘Yes, I’m enjoying it.’
10. I’m tired. I like / I’d like to go to sleep now.
11. ‘I like / I’d like a sandwich, please.’ ‘Sure. What kind of sandwich?’
12. ‘What kind of music do you like / would you like?’ ‘All kinds.’
We use **come/look/go/wait/do/be** etc. when we tell somebody to do something:
- ‘**Come** here and **look** at this!’ ‘What is it?’
- I don’t want to talk to you. **Go** away!
- I’m not ready yet. Please **wait** for me.
- Please **be** quiet. I’m working.

*Also*
- **Bye! Have** a good holiday! / **Have** a nice time! / **Have** a good flight! / **Have** fun! (= I hope you have a good holiday etc.)
- ‘**Have** a chocolate.’ ‘Oh, thanks.’ (= would you like a chocolate?)

We use **don’t** ... when we tell somebody not to do something:
- Be careful! **Don’t fall**.
- Please **don’t go**. Stay here with me.
- Be here on time. **Don’t be** late.

You can say **Let’s** ... when you want people to do things with you. **Let’s** = Let us.
- It’s a nice day. **Let’s go** out.
  (= you and I can go out)
- **Come on! Let’s dance**.
  (= you and I can dance)
- Are you ready? **Let’s go**.
- **Let’s have** fish for dinner tonight.
- A: Shall we go out tonight?
  B: No, I’m tired. **Let’s stay** at home.

The negative is **Let’s not** ... :
- It’s cold. **Let’s not go** out. Let’s stay at home.
- **Let’s not** have fish for dinner tonight. Let’s have chicken.

Or you can say **Don’t let’s** ... :
- It’s cold. **Don’t let’s go** out. Let’s stay at home.
Exercises

Unit 35

35.1 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying? Some sentences are positive (buy/come etc.) and some are negative (don’t buy / don’t come etc.). Use these verbs:

be  buy  come  drink  drop  forget  have  sit  sleep  smile

1. ___________ in!
2. ___________ the water!
3. It’s too expensive. ___________ it.
4. OK, are you ready? ___________!
5. ___________ on the cat!
6. Bye! ___________ a nice time!
7. ___________ to phone me.
8. I’m going to bed now.
9. ___________ careful with that vase. ___________ it!

Don’t worry. I won’t.
OK. ___________ well.

35.2 Complete the sentences. Use let’s with:

go for a swim  go to a restaurant  take a taxi  wait a little  watch TV

1. Would you like to play tennis? No, ___________ go for a swim.
2. Do you want to walk home? No, ___________.
3. Shall I put a CD on? No, ___________.
4. Shall we have dinner at home? No, ___________.
5. Would you like to go now? No, ___________.

35.3 Answer with No, don’t ... or No, let’s not ...

1. Shall I wait for you? No, don’t wait for me.
2. Shall we go home now? No, ___________.
3. Shall we go out? No, ___________.
4. Do you want me to close the window? No, ___________.
5. Shall I phone you tonight? No, ___________.
6. Do you think we should wait for Andy? No, ___________.
7. Do you want me to turn on the light? No, ___________.
8. Shall we go by bus? No, ___________.
Dave used to work in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.

Dave used to work in a factory = he worked in a factory before, but he doesn’t work there now:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>he used to work</th>
<th>he works</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can say I used to work ... / she used to have ... / they used to be ... etc. :

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/d you/we/they</th>
<th>used to</th>
<th>be work have play etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- When I was a child, I used to like chocolate.
- I used to read a lot of books, but I don’t read much these days.
- Liz has got short hair now, but it used to be very long.
- They used to live in the same street as us, so we used to see them a lot. But we don’t see them very often these days.
- Helen used to have a piano, but she sold it a few years ago.

The negative is I didn’t use to ... :
- When I was a child, I didn’t use to like tomatoes.

The question is did you use to ... ?:
- Where did you use to live before you came here?

We use used to ... only for the past. You cannot say ‘I use to ...’ for the present:
- I used to play tennis. These days I play golf. (not I use to play golf)
- We usually get up early. (not We use to get up early)
36.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with used to ... .

1. This is me a few years ago. She used to have long hair.
2. When I was younger ... He used to play football.
3. I'm a hairdresser now. a taxi driver.
4. We live in London now. in the country.
5. This is me 20 years ago. I never wear glasses now.
6. This building was a house in the country 20 years ago.

36.2 Karen works very hard and has very little free time. A few years ago, things were different.

Karen a few years ago

- Do you do any sport? Yes, I swim every day and I play volleyball.
- Do you go out much? Yes, most evenings.
- Do you play a musical instrument? Yes, the guitar.
- Do you like reading? Yes, I read a lot.
- Do you travel much? Yes, I go away two or three times a year.

Karen now

- I work very hard in my job, I don't have any free time.

Write sentences about Karen with used to ... .

1. She used to swim every day. 4
2. She used to play tennis. 5
3. She used to play basketball. 6

36.3 Complete these sentences. Use used to or the present simple (I play / he lives etc.).

1. I used to play tennis. I stopped playing a few years ago.
2. ‘Do you do any sport?’ ‘Yes, I play basketball.’
3. ‘Have you got a car?’ ‘No, I have one, but I sold it.’
4. George is a waiter. Now he's the manager of a hotel.
5. ‘Do you go to work by car?’ ‘Sometimes, but most days I go by train.’
6. When I was a child, I never eat meat, but I eat it now.
7. Mary loves watching TV. She watches TV every evening.
8. We used to be near the airport, but we moved to the city centre a few years ago.
9. Normally I start work at 7 o'clock, so I get up very early.
10. What games did you play when you were a child?
**there is**  **there are**

**singular**

- **there is ...**  (there's)
- **is there ...?**
- **there is not ...**  (there isn't)
  
- **there is a man on the roof.**
- **there is a train at 10.30.**
- **there is a train at 10.30.**  
- **there is seven days in a week.**

**plural**

- **there are ...**
- **are there ...?**
- **there are not ...**  (there aren't)
  
- **there are a big tree in the garden.**
- **there are nothing on TV tonight.**
- **A: Have you got any money?**
  
- **B: Yes, there's some in my bag.**
- **A: Excuse me, is there a hotel near here?**
  
- **B: Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.**
- **We can't go skiing. There isn't any snow.**

**there is and it is**

**there is**

- **There's a book on the table.**
  
- **(not It's a book on the table.)**

**it is**

- **I like this book. It's interesting.**
  
- **(It = this book)**

Compare:

- **'What's that noise?'  'It's a train.'**  
  
- **(It = that noise)**

- **There's a train at 10.30. It's a fast train.**
  
- **(It = the 10.30 train)**

- **There's a lot of salt in this soup.**
  
- **I don't like this soup. It's too salty.**
  
- **(It = this soup)**

**there was / were / has been etc. → Unit 38**  
**it and there → Unit 39**  
**some and any → Unit 76**
Exercises

Unit 37

37.1 Kenham is a small town. Look at the information in the box and write sentences about Kenham with There is/are or There isn’t/aren’t.

| 1  | a castle? No |
| 2  | any restaurants? Yes (a lot) |
| 3  | a hospital? Yes |
| 4  | a swimming pool? No |
| 5  | any cinemas? Yes (two) |
| 6  | a university? No |
| 7  | any big hotels? No |

1. There isn’t a castle.
2. There are a lot of restaurants.
3.  
4.  
5.  
6.  
7.  

37.2 Write sentences about your town (or a town that you know). Use There is/are or There isn’t/aren’t.

1. There are a few restaurants.
2. There’s a big park.
3.  
4.  
5.  
6.  

37.3 Write there is/ there isn’t/ is there or there are/ there aren’t/ are there.

2. Look! a photograph of your brother in the newspaper!
3. ‘Excuse me, a bank near here?’ ‘Yes, at the end of the street.’
4. five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters and me.
5. ‘How many students in the class?’ ‘Twenty.’
6. The road is usually very quiet. much traffic.
7. a bus from the city centre to the airport? ‘Yes, every 20 minutes.’
8. any problems? ‘No, everything is OK.’
9. nowhere to sit down. any chairs.

37.4 Write sentences with There are .... Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>seven</th>
<th>twenty-six</th>
<th>letters</th>
<th>days</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eight</td>
<td>thirty</td>
<td>players</td>
<td>days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fifteen</td>
<td>fifty</td>
<td>planets</td>
<td>states</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September</td>
<td>the solar system</td>
<td>the USA</td>
<td>a week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a rugby team</td>
<td>the English alphabet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. There are seven days in a week.
2.  
3.  
4.  
5.  
6.  

37.5 Write there’s/ is there or it’s/ is it.

1. There’s a train at 10.30. Is it a fast train?
2. I’m not going to buy this shirt. too expensive.
3. ‘What’s wrong?’ something in my eye.
4. a red car outside your house. yours?
5. anything good on TV tonight? ‘Yes, a film at 8.15.’
6. ‘What’s that building?’ a school.
7. a restaurant in this hotel? ‘No, I’m afraid not.’
there was/were  there will be

there was / there were (past)

There is a train every hour.
The time now is 11.15.
There was a train at 11 o’clock.

Compare:

there is/are (present)

☐ There is a good film on TV tonight.
☐ We are staying at a very big hotel.
  There are 550 rooms.
☐ Are there any phone messages for me this morning?
☐ I’m hungry, but there isn’t anything to eat.

there was/were (past)

☐ There was a good film on TV last night.
☐ We stayed at a very big hotel.
  There were 550 rooms.
☐ Were there any phone messages for me yesterday?
☐ I was hungry when I got home, but there wasn’t anything to eat.

there has been / there have been (present perfect)

☐ Look! There’s been an accident.
  (there’s been = there has been)
☐ This road is very dangerous. There have been many accidents.

Compare there was (past):

☐ There was an accident last night.
  (not There has been an accident last night.)

For past simple and present perfect, see Unit 20.

there will be

☐ Do you think there will be a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
☐ The manager of the company is leaving, so there will be a new manager soon.
☐ I’m going away tomorrow. I’ll do my packing today because there won’t be time tomorrow.
  (there won’t be = there will not be)
38.1 Look at the two pictures. Now the room is empty, but what was in the room last week? Choose from the box and write sentences with There was ... or There were ... .

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>an armchair</th>
<th>a carpet</th>
<th>some flowers</th>
<th>a sofa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>some books</td>
<td>a clock</td>
<td>three pictures</td>
<td>a small table</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. There was a clock on the wall near the window.
2. on the floor.
3. on the wall near the door.
4. in the middle of the room.
5. on the table.
6. on the shelves.
7. in the corner near the door.
8. opposite the armchair.

38.2 Write there was / there wasn't / was there or there were / there weren't / were there.

1. I was hungry, but _______ anything to eat.
2. _______ any phone messages for me yesterday?
3. nothing in it.
4. ‘We stayed at a very nice hotel.’ ‘Really? _______ a swimming pool?’
5. ‘Did you buy any eggs?’ ‘No, _______ any in the shop.’
6. _______ any money in it.
7. ‘_______ many people at the meeting?’ ‘No, very few.’
8. _______ enough time.
9. _______ a lot of traffic.
10. _______ many tourists here. Now there are a lot.

38.3 Write there + is / are / was / were / has been / have been / will be.

1. There was a good film on TV last night.
2. 24 hours in a day.
3. a party at the club last Friday, but I didn’t go.
4. ‘Where can I buy a newspaper?’ ‘_______ a shop at the end of the street.’
5. ‘Why are those policemen outside the bank?’ ‘_______ a robbery.’
6. When we arrived at the theatre, _______ a long queue outside.
7. When you arrive tomorrow, somebody at the station to meet you.
8. Ten years ago _______ 500 children at the school. Now _______ more than a thousand.
9. Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It’s very different now. _______ a lot of changes.
10. I think everything will be OK. I don’t think _______ any problems.
We use it for time/day/distance/weather:

### time
- What time is it?
- It's half past ten.
- It's late.
- It's time to go home.

### day
- What day is it?
- It's Thursday.
- It's 16 March.
- It was my birthday yesterday.

### distance
- It's three kilometres from our house to the city centre.
- How far is it from New York to Los Angeles?
- It's a long way from here to the station.
- We can walk home. It isn't far.

We use far in questions (is it far?) and negatives (it isn't far). In positive sentences, we use a long way (it's a long way).

### weather
- It's raining. It isn't raining. Is it snowing?
- It rains a lot here. It didn't rain yesterday.
- Does it snow very often?
- It's warm/hot/cold/fine/cloudy/windy/sunny/foggy/dark etc.
- It's a nice day today.

Compare it and there:
- It rains a lot in winter.
  - There is a lot of rain in winter.
- It was very windy.
  - There was a strong wind yesterday.

**It's nice to ... etc.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>It's</th>
<th>easy / difficult / impossible / dangerous / safe</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>expensive / interesting / nice / wonderful / terrible etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- It's nice to see you again.
- It's impossible to understand her.
- It wasn't easy to find your house.

Don't forget it:
- It's raining again. (not It's raining again)
- Is it true that you're going away? (not Is true that ...)

there is → Unit 37
39.1 Write about the weather in the pictures. Use It's ...

1 It's raining.
2
3
4
5
6

39.2 Write it is (it's) or is it.
1 What time is it?
2 We must go now. It's very late.
3 Is it true that Bill can fly a helicopter?
4 'What day is it today? Tuesday? ' No, it's Wednesday.'
5 How far is it ten kilometres from the airport to the city centre.
6 Is it possible to phone you at your office?
7 'Do you want to walk to the hotel?' 'I don't know. How far is it?'
8 It's Lisa's birthday today. She's 27.
9 I don't believe it! It's impossible.

39.3 Write questions with How far ...

1 (here / the station) How far is it from here to the station?
2 (the hotel / the beach)
3 (New York / Washington)
4 (your house / the airport)

39.4 Write it or there.
1 The weather isn't so nice today. It's cloudy.
2 There was a strong wind yesterday.
3 It's hot in this room. Open a window.
4 It was a nice day yesterday. It was warm and sunny.
5 It was a storm last night. Did you hear it?
6 I was afraid because it was very dark.
7 It's often cold here, but it isn't much rain.
8 It's a long way from here to the nearest shop.

39.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>it's</th>
<th>easy</th>
<th>dangerous</th>
<th>to</th>
<th>work in this office</th>
<th>get-up early</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>nice</td>
<td></td>
<td>visit different places</td>
<td>go out alone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>impossible</td>
<td>interesting</td>
<td></td>
<td>see you again</td>
<td>make friends</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 If you go to bed late, it's difficult to get up early in the morning.
2 Hello, Jane. How are you?
3 There is too much noise.
4 Everybody is very nice at work.
5 I like travelling.
6 Some cities are not safe.
I am, I don't etc.

She isn't tired, but **he** is.
(he is = he is tired)

He likes tea, but **she** doesn't.
(she doesn't = she doesn't like tea)

In these examples, it is not necessary to repeat some words (‘he is tired’, ‘she doesn’t like tea’).

You can use these verbs in the same way:

**am/is/are**
- I haven’t got a car, but my sister has. (= my sister has got a car)
- A: Please help me.
  B: I’m sorry. I can’t. (= I can’t help you)
- A: Are you tired?
  B: I was, but I’m not now. (= I was tired, but I’m not tired now)

**was/were**
- A: Do you think Jane will phone this evening?
  B: She might. (= she might phone)

**have/has**
- A: Are you going now?
  B: Yes, I’m afraid I must. (= I must go)

**do/does/did**
- She isn’t tired, but he is. (not … but he’s)

You cannot use *’m/’s/’ve* etc. (short forms) in this way. You must use **am/is/have** etc.:
- My sister has got a car, but I haven’t.
- ‘Are you and Jane working tomorrow?’ ‘I am, but Jane isn’t.’

But you can use **isn’t / haven’t / won’t** etc. (negative short forms):
- ‘Are you tired?’ ‘Yes, I am. / No, I’m not.’
- ‘Will Alan be here tomorrow?’ ‘Yes, he will. / No, he won’t.’
- ‘Is there a bus to the airport?’ ‘Yes, there is. / No, there isn’t.’

You can use **I am / I’m not** etc. after **Yes** and **No**:
- ‘Are you tired?’ ‘Yes, I am. / No, I’m not.’
- ‘Will Alan be here tomorrow?’ ‘Yes, he will. / No, he won’t.’
- ‘Is there a bus to the airport?’ ‘Yes, there is. / No, there isn’t.’

We use **do/does** for the **present simple** (→ Units 6-7):
- I don’t like hot weather, but Sue does. (= Sue likes hot weather)
- Sue works hard, but I don’t. (= I don’t work hard)
- ‘Do you enjoy your work?’ ‘Yes, I do.’

We use **did** for the **past simple** (→ Unit 12):
- A: Did you and Chris enjoy the film?
  B: I did, but Chris didn’t. (= I enjoyed it, but Chris didn’t enjoy it)
- ‘I had a good time.’ ‘I did too.’ (= I enjoyed it too)
- ‘Did it rain yesterday?’ ‘No, it didn’t.’

**have** you? / **don’t** you? etc. → **Unit 41** 
**so am I / neither do I** etc. → **Unit 42**
40.1 Complete these sentences. Use only one verb (is/have/can etc.) each time.
1 Kate wasn’t hungry, but we ________ ________ .
2 I’m not married, but my brother ________ ________ .
3 Bill can’t help you, but I ________ ________ .
4 I haven’t seen the film, but Tom ________ ________ .
5 Karen won’t be here, but Chris ________ ________ .
6 You weren’t late, but I ________ ________ .

40.2 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn’t/haven’t/can’t etc.).
1 My sister can play the piano, but I ________ ________ .
2 Sam is working today, but I ________ ________ .
3 I was working, but my friends ________ ________ .
4 Mark has been to China, but I ________ ________ .
5 I’m ready to go, but Tom ________ ________ .
6 I’ve got a key, but Sally ________ ________ .

40.3 Complete these sentences with do/does/did or don’t/doesn’t/didn’t.
1 I don’t like hot weather, but Sue ________ ________ .
2 Sue likes hot weather, but I ________ ________ .
3 My mother wears glasses, but my father ________ ________ .
4 You don’t know Paul very well, but I ________ ________ .
5 I didn’t enjoy the party, but my friends ________ ________ .
6 I don’t watch TV much, but Peter ________ ________ .
7 Kate lives in London, but her parents ________ ________ .
8 You had breakfast this morning, but I ________ ________ .

40.4 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself and other people.
1 I didn’t ________ ________ last night, but my friends did.
2 I like ________ ________ , but ________ ________ .
3 I don’t ________ ________ , but ________ ________ .
4 I’m ________ ________ , but ________ ________ .
5 I haven’t ________ ________ .

40.5 Put in a verb, positive or negative.
1 ‘Are you tired?’ ‘I ________ ________ earlier, but I’m not now.’
2 Steve is happy today, but he ________ ________ yesterday.
3 The post office isn’t open yet, but the shops ________ ________ .
4 I haven’t got a telescope, but I know somebody who ________ ________ .
5 I would like to help you, but I’m afraid I ________ ________ .
6 I don’t usually go to work by car, but I ________ ________ yesterday.
7 A: Have you ever been to the United States?  
B: No, but Sandra ________ ________ . She went there on holiday last year.
8 ‘Do you and Chris watch TV a lot?’ ‘I ________ ________ , but Chris doesn’t.’
9 I’ve been invited to Sam’s wedding, but Kate ________ ________ .
10 ‘Do you think Sarah will pass her driving test?’ ‘Yes, I’m sure she ________ ________ .’
11 ‘Are you going out tonight?’ ‘I ________ ________ . I don’t know for sure.’

40.6 Answer these questions about yourself. Use Yes, I have. / No, I’m not. etc.
1 Are you American?  
2 Have you got a car?  
3 Do you feel OK?  
4 Is it snowing?  
5 Are you hungry?  
6 Do you like classical music?  
7 Will you be in Paris tomorrow?  
8 Have you ever broken your arm?  
9 Did you buy anything yesterday?  
10 Were you asleep at 3 a.m.?
Have you? Are you? Don't you? etc.

You can say have you? / is it? / can’t he? etc. to show that you are interested or surprised:

- 'You’re late.' 'Oh, am I? I'm sorry.'
- 'I was ill last week.' 'Were you? I didn't know that.'
- 'It’s raining again.' 'Is it? It was sunny ten minutes ago.'
- 'There's a letter for you.' 'Is there? Where is it?'
- 'Bill can't drive.' 'Can't he? I didn't know that.'
- 'I'm not hungry.' 'Aren't you? I am.'
- 'Sue isn't at work today.' 'Isn't she? Is she ill?'

Use do/does for the present simple, and did for the past simple:

- 'I speak four languages.' 'Do you? Which ones?'
- 'Tim doesn't eat meat.' 'Doesn't he? Does he eat fish?'
- 'Nicole got married last week.' 'Did she? Really?'

Question tags

You can use have you? / is it? / can’t she? etc. at the end of a sentence.

These 'mini-questions' are question tags.

positive sentence → negative question tag

- It’s a beautiful day, isn’t it?
- Sally lives in London, doesn’t she?
- You closed the window, didn’t you?
- Those shoes are nice, aren’t they?
- Tom will be here soon, won’t he?

Yes, it’s perfect.
Yes, that’s right.
Yes, I think so.
Yes, very nice.
Yes, probably.

negative sentence → positive question tag

- That isn’t your car, is it?
- You haven’t met my mother, have you?
- Sally doesn’t go out much, does she?
- You won’t be late, will you?

No, it’s my mother’s.
No, I haven’t.
No, she doesn’t.
No, I’m never late.
Exercises

Unit 41

41.1 Answer with Do you? / Doesn’t she? / Did they? etc.

1. I speak four languages. ___________ Do you ___________? Which ones?
2. I work in a bank. ___________ Do you ___________? I work in a bank too.
3. I didn’t go to work yesterday. ___________ Do you ___________? Were you ill?
4. Jane doesn’t like me. ___________ Do you ___________? Why not?
5. You look tired. ___________ Do you ___________? I feel fine.
6. Kate phoned me last night. ___________ Do you ___________? What did she say?

41.2 Answer with Have you? / Haven’t you? / Did she? / Didn’t she? etc.

1. I’ve bought a new car. ___________ Have you ___________? What make is it?
2. Tim doesn’t eat meat. ___________ Doesn’t he ___________? Does he eat fish?
3. I’ve lost my key. ___________ Have you ___________? When did you last have it?
4. Sue can’t drive. ___________ Has she ___________? She should learn.
5. I was born in Italy. ___________ Has she ___________? I didn’t know that.
6. I didn’t sleep well last night. ___________ Has she ___________? Was the bed uncomfortable?
7. There’s a film on TV tonight. ___________ Was she ___________? Are you going to watch it?
8. I’m not happy. ___________ Does she ___________? Why not?
9. I saw Paula last week. ___________ Has she ___________? How is she?
10. Maria works in a factory. ___________ Does she ___________? What kind of factory?
11. I won’t be here next week. ___________ Will she ___________? Where will you be?
12. The clock isn’t working. ___________ Is she ___________? It was working yesterday.

41.3 Complete these sentences with a question tag (isn’t it? / haven’t you? etc.).

1. It’s a beautiful day, ___________?
2. These flowers are nice, ___________?
3. Jane was at the party, ___________?
4. You’ve been to Paris, ___________?
5. You speak German, ___________?
6. Martin looks tired, ___________?
7. You’ll help me, ___________?

Yes, it’s perfect.
Yes, what are they?
Yes, but I didn’t speak to her.
Yes, many times.
Yes, but not very well.
Yes, he works very hard.
Yes, of course I will.

41.4 Complete these sentences with a question tag, positive (is it? / do you? etc.) or negative (isn’t it? / don’t you? etc.).

1. You haven’t got a car, ___________?
2. You aren’t tired, ___________?
3. Lisa is a very nice person, ___________?
4. You can play the piano, ___________?
5. You don’t know Mike’s sister, ___________?
6. Sarah went to university, ___________?
7. The film wasn’t very good, ___________?
8. Anna lives near you, ___________?
9. You won’t tell anybody what I said, ___________?

No, I can’t drive.
No, I feel fine.
Yes, everybody likes her.
Yes, but I’m not very good.
No, I’ve never met her.
Yes, she studied psychology.
No, it was terrible.
That’s right. In the same street.
No, of course not.
We use **too** and **either** at the end of a sentence.

We use **too** after a *positive* verb:
- A: I'm happy.
  - B: I'm happy **too**.
- A: I enjoyed the film.
  - B: I **enjoyed it too**.
- Jane is a doctor. Her husband is a doctor **too**.

We use **either** after a *negative* verb:
- A: I'm not happy.
  - B: I'm not happy **either**.
  - (not I'm not ... too)
- A: I can't cook.
  - B: I can't **either**. (not I can't too)
- Bill doesn't watch TV. He **doesn't read newspapers either**.

**so am I / neither do I etc.**

**so am I = I am too**
**so have I = I have too (etc.)**:
- A: I'm working.
  - B: **So am I**. (= I'm working too)
- A: I was late for work today.
  - B: **So was Sam**. (= Sam was late too)
- A: I work in a bank.
  - B: **So do I**.
- A: We went to the cinema last night.
  - B: Did you? **So did we**.
- A: I'd like to go to Australia.
  - B: **So would I**.

**neither am I = I'm not either**
**neither can I = I can't either (etc.)**:
- A: I haven't got a key.
  - B: **Neither have I**. (= I haven't either)
- A: Kate can't cook.
  - B: **Neither can Tom**.
  - (= Tom can't either)
- A: I won't (= will not) be here tomorrow.
  - B: **Neither will I**.
- A: I never go to the cinema.
  - B: **Neither do I**.

You can also use **Nor** (= Neither):
- A: I'm not married.
  - B: **Nor am I**. or **Neither am I**.

Remember: So **am** I (not So I am), Neither **have** I (not Neither I have).

I am / I don't etc. → **Unit 40**
42.1 Write too or either.

1. I'm happy.
2. I'm not hungry.
3. I'm going out.
4. It rained on Saturday.
5. Jenny can't drive a car.
6. I don't like shopping.
7. Emma's mother is a teacher.
8. I'm happy.
9. I'm not hungry.
10. I'm going out.
11. It rained on Sunday.
12. She can't ride a bicycle.
13. I don't like shopping.
14. Her father is a teacher.

42.2 Answer with So ... I (So am I / So do I / So can I etc.).

1. I went to bed late last night.
2. I'm thirsty.
3. I've just had dinner.
4. I need a holiday.
5. I'll be late tomorrow.
6. I was very tired this morning.
7. So did I.
8. So do I.
9. So can I.
10. So am I.
11. I don't know what to do.

Answer with Neither ... I.

12. I can't go to the party.
13. I didn't phone Alex last night.
15. I'm not going out tomorrow.
16. I don't work hard.
17. So neither I.
18. So neither do I.
19. So neither can I.
20. So neither am I.
21. I don't know what to do.

42.3 You are talking to Maria. Write sentences about yourself. Where possible, use So ... I or Neither ... I. Look at these examples carefully:

I'm tired today.

You can answer: So am I. or I'm not.

I don't work hard.

You can answer: Neither do I. or I do.

Maria

1. I'm learning English.
2. I can ride a bicycle.
3. I'm not American.
4. I like cooking.
5. I don't like cold weather.
6. I slept well last night.
7. I've never been to Scotland.
8. I don't use my phone much.
9. I'm going out tomorrow evening.
10. I haven't got a headache.
11. I didn't watch TV last night.
12. I go to the cinema a lot.
Isn't, haven't, don't etc. (negatives)

We use not (n't) in negative sentences:

Positive → Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am</th>
<th>am not ('m not)</th>
<th>I'm not</th>
<th>It isn't (or it's not) raining.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>is not (isn't or 's not)</td>
<td>They aren't (or they're not) here.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>are not (aren't or 're not)</td>
<td>Julian wasn't hungry.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was</td>
<td>was not (wasn't)</td>
<td>The shops weren't open.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>were</td>
<td>were not (weren't)</td>
<td>I haven't finished my work.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>have not (haven't)</td>
<td>Sue hasn't got a car.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has</td>
<td>has not (hasn't)</td>
<td>We won't be here tomorrow.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>will not (won't)</td>
<td>George can't drive.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>can not (can't)</td>
<td>I couldn't sleep last night.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>could not (couldn't)</td>
<td>I mustn't forget to phone Jane.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>must not (mustn't)</td>
<td>You shouldn't work so hard.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should</td>
<td>should not (shouldn't)</td>
<td>I wouldn't like to be an actor.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>would not (wouldn't)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Don't/doesn't/didn't

Present Simple Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>do not (don't)</th>
<th>work/live/go etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>does not (doesn't)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Past Simple Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/they/he/she etc.</th>
<th>did not (didn't)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Positive → Negative

I want to go out. → I don't want to go out.
They work hard. → They don't work hard.
Liz plays the guitar. → Liz doesn't play the guitar.
My father likes his job. → My father doesn't like his job.
I got up early this morning. → I didn't get up early this morning.
They worked hard yesterday. → They didn't work hard yesterday.
We played tennis. → We didn't play tennis.
Diane had dinner with us. → Diane didn't have dinner with us.

Don't ...  

Look! → Don't look!
Wait for me. → Don't wait for me.

Sometimes do is the main verb (don't do / doesn't do / didn't do):

Do something! → Don't do anything!
Sue does a lot at weekends. → Sue doesn't do much at weekends.
I did what you said. → I didn't do what you said.
Exercises

43.1 Make these sentences negative.
1 He’s gone away. He hasn’t gone away.
2 They’re married. They’re not married.
3 I’ve had dinner. I haven’t had dinner.
4 It’s cold today. It’s not cold today.
5 We’ll be late. We won’t be late.
6 You should go. You shouldn’t go.

43.2 Make these sentences negative. Use don’t/doesn’t/didn’t.
1 She saw me. She didn’t see me.
2 I like cheese. I don’t like cheese.
3 They understood. They didn’t understand.
4 He lives here. He doesn’t live here.
5 Go away! Don’t go away.
6 I did the shopping. I didn’t do the shopping.

43.3 Make these sentences negative.
1 She can swim. She can’t swim.
2 They’ve arrived. They haven’t arrived.
3 I went to the bank. I didn’t go to the bank.
4 He speaks German. He doesn’t speak German.
5 We were angry. We weren’t angry.
6 He’ll be pleased. He won’t be pleased.
7 Phone me tonight. Don’t phone me tonight.
8 It rained yesterday. It didn’t rain yesterday.
9 I could hear them. I couldn’t hear them.
10 I believe you. I don’t believe you.

43.4 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn’t/haven’t/don’t etc.).
1 They aren’t rich. They haven’t got much money.
2 ‘Would you like something to eat?’ ‘No, thank you. I’m not hungry.’
3 I don’t find my glasses. Have you seen them?
4 Steve doesn’t use email much. He prefers to talk on the phone.
5 We can walk to the station from here. It’s too far.
6 ‘Where’s Jane?’ ‘I don’t know. I haven’t seen her today.’
7 Be careful! It doesn’t fall!
8 We went to the cinema last night. I didn’t like the film very much.
9 I’ve been to Japan many times, but I haven’t been to Korea.
10 Julia isn’t going to be here tomorrow. She’s going away.
11 ‘Who broke that window?’ ‘Not me. I didn’t do it.’
12 We didn’t see what happened. We weren’t looking at the time.
13 Lisa bought a new coat a few days ago, but she hasn’t worn it yet.
14 You don’t drive so fast. It’s dangerous.

43.5 You ask Gary some questions. He answers ‘Yes’ or ‘No’. Write sentences about Gary, positive or negative.

You

Are you married? No. 1
Do you live in London? Yes. 2
Were you born in London? No. 3
Do you like London? No. 4
Would you like to live in the country? Yes. 5
Can you drive? Yes. 6
Have you got a car? No. 7
Do you read newspapers? No. 8
Are you interested in politics? No. 9
Do you watch TV most evenings? Yes. 10
Did you watch TV last night? No. 11
Did you go out last night? Yes. 12

Gary

He isn’t married.
He lives in London.
is it ... ? have you ... ? do they ... ? etc. (questions 1)

A

**positive** you are You are eating.

**question** are you Are you eating? What are you eating?

In questions, the first verb (is/are/have etc.) is before the subject:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject + verb</th>
<th>question + verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am late.</td>
<td>Am I late?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That seat is free.</td>
<td>Is that seat free?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She was angry.</td>
<td>Why was she angry?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David has gone.</td>
<td>Where has David gone?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You have got a car.</td>
<td>Have you got a car?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They will be here soon.</td>
<td>When will they be here?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paula can swim.</td>
<td>Can Paula swim?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember: the subject is after the first verb.

- Where has David gone? (not Where has gone David?)
- Are those people waiting for something? (not Are waiting ... ?)
- When was the telephone invented? (not When was invented ... ?)

B

do ... ? / does ... ? / did ... ?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present simple questions</th>
<th>past simple questions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do I/we/you/they</td>
<td>did I/they/he/she etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>does he/she/it</td>
<td>work/live/go etc. ... ?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**positive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They work hard. → Do they work hard?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You watch television. → How often do you watch television?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chris works hard. → Does Chris work hard?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She gets up early. → What time does she get up?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They worked hard. → Did they work hard?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You had dinner. → What did you have for dinner?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She got up early. → What time did she get up?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes do is the main verb (do you do / did he do etc.):

- What do you usually do at weekends?
- ‘What does your brother do?’ ‘He works in a bank.’
- ‘I broke my finger last week.’ ‘How did you do that?’ (not How did you that?)

C

Why isn’t ... ? / Why don’t ... ? etc. (Why + negative):

- Where’s John? Why isn’t he here? (not Why he isn’t here?)
- Why can’t Paula come to the meeting tomorrow? (not Why Paula can’t ... ?)
- Why didn’t you phone me last night?
44.1 Write questions.

1 I can swim. (and you?) Can you swim?
2 I work hard. (and Jack?) Does Jack work hard?
3 I was late this morning. (and you?)
4 I've got a key. (and Kate?)
5 I'll be here tomorrow. (and you?)
6 I'm going out this evening. (and Paul?)
7 I like my job. (and you?)
8 I live near here. (and Nicole?)
9 I enjoyed the film. (and you?)
10 I had a good holiday. (and you?)

44.2 You are talking to a friend about driving. Write the full questions.

You

1 (have / a car?) Have you got a car?
2 (use / a lot?) .......................................................... it
3 (use / yesterday?) ..........................................................
4 (enjoy driving?) ..........................................................
5 (a good driver?) ..........................................................
6 (ever / have / an accident?) ..........................................

Yes, I have.
Yes, nearly every day.
Yes, to go to work.
Not very much.
I think I am.
No, never.

44.3 Make questions with these words. Put the words in the right order.

1 (has / gone / where / David?) Where has David gone?
2 (working / Rachel / is / today?) Is Rachel working today?
3 (the children / what / are / doing?) What
4 (made / is / how / cheese?) ..........................................................
5 (to the party / coming / is / your sister?) ..................................
6 (you / the truth / tell / don’t / why?) ..........................................
7 (your guests / have / yet / arrived?) ..........................................
8 (leave / what time / your train / does?) ..................................
9 (to work / Emily / why / go / didn’t?) ......................................
10 (your car / in the accident / was / damaged?) ................................ Style: a good police reporter.
Who saw you?  Who did you see?
(questions 2)

Silvia saw Paul.
Who saw Paul?
Silvia. (Silvia saw him.)
Who did Silvia see?
Paul. (She saw Paul.)

In these questions, who/what is the subject:
- Who lives in this house? (= somebody lives in it – who?)
  (not Who does live?)
- What happened? (= something happened – what?)
  (not What did happen?)
- What’s happening? (What’s = What is)
- Who’s got my key? (Who’s = Who has)

In these questions, who/what is the object:
- Who did you meet yesterday? (= you met somebody – who?)
- What did Paul say? (= Paul said something – what?)
- Who are you phoning?
- What was Silvia wearing?

Compare:
  What does George like? – Oranges.

Use who for people (somebody). Use what for things, ideas etc. (something):
- Who is your favourite singer?
- What is your favourite song?

Questions → Units 44, 46  What/which/how → Unit 47
45.1 Make questions with who or what. In these questions, who/what is the subject.

1. Somebody broke the window.
2. Something fell off the shelf.
3. Somebody wants to see you.
4. Somebody took my umbrella.
5. Something made me ill.
6. Somebody is coming.

Who broke the window?

What ____________ me?

45.2 Make questions with who or what (subject or object).

1. I bought something.
2. Somebody lives in this house.
3. I phoned somebody.
4. Something happened last night.
5. Somebody knows the answer.
6. Somebody did the washing-up.
7. Jane did something.
8. Something woke me up.
9. Somebody saw the accident.
10. I saw somebody.
11. Somebody has got my pen.
12. This word means something.

What did you buy?

Who lives in this house?

45.3 You want the missing information (XXXX). Write questions with who or what.

1. I lost XXXX yesterday, but fortunately XXXX found it and gave it back to me.

What did you lose?

Who found it?

2. XXXX phoned me last night. She wanted XXXX.

Who phoned you last night?

What did she want?

3. I needed some advice, so I asked XXXX. He said XXXX.

Who asked you for advice?

What did he say?

4. I hear that XXXX got married last week. XXXX told me.

Who got married last week?

Who told you?

5. I met XXXX on my way home this evening. She told me XXXX.

Who did you meet on your way home?

What did she tell you?

6. Steve and I played tennis yesterday. XXXX won. After the game we XXXX.

Who won the tennis match?

What did you do after the game?

7. It was my birthday last week and I had some presents. XXXX gave me a book and Catherine gave me XXXX.

Who gave you presents?

What did they give you?
Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)

Julia is talking to somebody.

**Who** is she talking **to**?

In questions beginning **Who** ... ? / **What** ... ? / **Where** ... ? / **Which** ... ?, prepositions (to/from/with etc.) usually go at the end:

- **'Where** are you **from**?’ ‘I’m from Thailand.’
- **'Jack** was afraid.’ **'What** was he afraid **of**?’
- **'Who** do these books belong **to**?’ ‘They’re mine.’
- ‘**Tom’s** father is in hospital.’ **'Which hospital** is he in?’
- ‘Kate is going on holiday.’ **'Who with’? / ‘Who is she going with?’
- ‘Can we talk?’ ‘Sure. **What** do you want to talk **about**?’

**What’s it like? / What are they like?** etc.

What’s it like? = **What is** it like?

**What’s it like? = tell me something about it — is it good or bad, big or small, old or new (etc.)?**

When we say ‘**What is it like?**’, **like** is a **preposition**. It is not the verb **like** (‘**Do you like** your new house?’ etc.).

- **A**: There’s a new restaurant in our street.
  **B**: **What’s** it **like**? Is it good?
  **A**: I don’t know. I haven’t eaten there yet.

- **A**: **What**’s your new teacher **like**?
  **B**: She’s very good. We learn a lot.

- **A**: I met Nicole’s parents yesterday.
  **B**: Did you? **What are** they **like**?
  **A**: They’re very nice.

- **A**: Did you have a good holiday? **What** was the weather **like**?
  **B**: It was lovely. It was sunny every day.
46.1 You want the missing information (XXXX). Write questions with who or what.

1. The letter is from XXXX. Who is the letter from?
2. I’m looking for a XXXX. What ____________________________ you ____________________________
3. I went to the cinema with XXXX. ____________________________
4. The film was about XXXX. ____________________________
5. I gave the money to XXXX. ____________________________
6. The book was written by XXXX. ____________________________

46.2 Write questions about the people in the pictures. Use these verbs + a preposition: go listen look talk talk wait

1. Who is she talking to? 4. What ____________________________
2. What ____________________________ 5. What ____________________________
3. Which restaurant ____________________________ 6. Which bus ____________________________

46.3 Write questions beginning Which ... ?

1. Tom’s father is in hospital. Which hospital is he in?
2. We stayed at a hotel. ____________________________ you ____________________________
3. Jack plays for a football team. ____________________________
4. I went to school in this town. ____________________________

46.4 You want some information about another country. You ask somebody who has been there. Ask questions with What is/are ... like?

1. (the roads) What are the roads like?
2. (the food) ____________________________
3. (the people) ____________________________
4. (the weather) ____________________________

46.5 Ask questions with What was/were ... like?

1. Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the weather. What was the weather like?
2. Your friend has just come back from the cinema. Ask about the film. ____________________________
3. Your friend has just finished an English course. Ask about the lessons. ____________________________
4. Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the hotel. ____________________________
What ... ? Which ... ? How ... ?
(questions 4)

**A**

What + noun (What colour ... ? / What kind ... ? etc.)
- What colour is your car?
- What size is this shirt?
- What time is it?
- What kind of job do you want?

What without a noun:
- What's your favourite colour?
- What do you want to do tonight?

**B**

Which + noun (things or people):
- Which train did you catch – the 9.50 or the 10.30?
- Which doctor did you see – Doctor Ellis, Doctor Gray or Doctor Hill?

We use which without a noun for things, not people:
- Which is bigger – Canada or Australia?

We use who for people (without a noun):
- Who is taller – Joe or Gary? (not Which is taller?)

**C**

What or which?

We use which when we are thinking about a small number of possibilities (perhaps 2, 3 or 4):
- We can go this way or that way.
- Which way shall we go?
- There are four umbrellas here.

What is more general:
- What's the capital of Argentina? (of all the cities in Argentina)
- What sort of music do you like? (of all kinds of music)

Compare:
- What colour are his eyes? (not Which colour?)
- Which colour do you prefer, pink or yellow?
- What is the longest river in the world?
  - Which is the longest river – the Mississippi, the Amazon or the Nile?

**D**

How ... ?

- 'How was the party last night?'  ‘It was great.’
- 'How do you usually go to work?'  ‘By bus.’

You can use how + adjective/adverb (how tall / how old / how often etc.):

| 'How' | tall are you? | 'I'm 1 metre 70.' |
|       | big is the house? | 'Not very big.' |
|       | old is your mother? | 'She's 45.' |
|       | far is it from here to the airport? | 'Five kilometres.' |
|       | often do you use your car? | 'Every day.' |
|       | long have they been married? | 'Ten years.' |
|       | much was the meal? | 'Thirty pounds.' |
47.1 Write questions with what.

1. I’ve got a new TV set. (make?) What make is it?
2. I want a job. (kind?) What kind of job do you want?
3. I’ve got a new sweater. (colour?) What
4. I got up early this morning. (time?) get up?
5. I like music. (type?)
6. I want to buy a car. (kind?)

47.2 Complete the questions. Use Which ... ?

1. Which way shall we go?
2. ______ is yours?
3. ______ you want to see?
4. ______ goes to the centre?

47.3 Write what/which/who.

1. ______ is that man’s name?
2. ______ way shall we go? Left or right?
3. You can have tea or coffee. ______ do you prefer?
4. ‘_______ day is it today?’ ‘Friday.’
5. This is a nice office. ______ desk is yours?

6. ______ is your favourite sport?
7. ______ is more expensive, meat or fish?
8. ______ is older, Liz or Steve?
9. ______ kind of camera have you got?
10. A: I’ve got three cameras.
11. ______ nationality are you?

B: ______ camera do you use most?

47.4 Complete the questions with How + adjective or adverb (high/long etc.).

1. ______ is Mount Everest?
2. ______ is it to the station?
3. ______ is Helen?
4. ______ do the buses run?
5. ______ is the water in the pool?
6. ______ have you lived here?

Nearly 9000 metres.
It’s about two kilometres from here.
She’s 26.
Every ten minutes.
Two metres.
Nearly three years.

47.5 Write questions with How ... ?

1. Are you 1 metre 70? 1.75? 1.80?
2. Is this box one kilogram? Two? Three?
3. Are you 20 years old? 22? 25?
4. Did you spend £20? £30? £50?
5. Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never?

6. Is it 1000 miles from Paris to Moscow? 1500? 2000?
How long does it take ... ?

How long does it take from ... to ... ?

How long does it take by plane from New York to Washington?

It takes an hour.

- How long does it take by train from London to Manchester?
- It takes two hours by train from London to Manchester.
- How long does it take by car from your house to the station?
- It takes ten minutes by car from my house to the station.

How long does it take to do something?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How long</th>
<th>does</th>
<th>did</th>
<th>will</th>
<th>it take to ... ?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- It takes a week a long time three hours to ...
- It doesn’t take long

- How long does it take to cross the Atlantic by ship?
- 'I came by train. 'Did you? How long did it take (to get here)?'
- How long will it take to get from here to the hotel?
- It takes a long time to learn a language.
- It doesn’t take long to cook an omelette.
- It won’t take long to fix the computer.

How long does it take you to do something?

I started reading the book on Monday.
I finished it on Wednesday evening.

It took me three days to read it.

- How long will it take me to learn to drive?
- It takes Tom 20 minutes to get to work in the morning.
- It took us an hour to do the shopping.
- Did it take you a long time to find a job?
- It will take me an hour to cook dinner.
48.1 Look at the pictures and write questions with How long ... ?

1. How long does it take by plane from London to Amsterdam?

48.2 How long does it take to do these things? Write full sentences.

1. fly from your city/country to London
   It takes two hours to fly from Madrid to London.

2. fly from your city/country to New York

3. study to be a doctor in your country

4. walk from your home to the nearest shop

5. get from your home to the nearest airport

48.3 Write questions with How long did it take ... ?

1. (Jane found a job.) How long did it take her to find a job?

2. (I walked to the station.) How long did it take you?

3. (Tom painted the bathroom.) How long did it take him?

4. (I learnt to ski.) How long did it take me?

5. (They repaired the computer.) How long did it take them?

48.4 Read the situations and write sentences with It took ... .

1. I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it three days later. It took me three days to read the book.

2. We walked home last night. We left at 10 o’clock and we arrived home at 10.20.

3. I learnt to drive last year. I had my first driving lesson in January. I passed my driving test six months later.


5. Lisa began looking for a job a long time ago. She got a job last week.

6. Write a sentence about yourself.
Unit 49

Do you know where ... ?
I don't know what ... etc.

We say: \[ \text{Where is Paula?} \]

\[ \text{but Do you know where Paula is?} \]

\( \text{(not Do you know where is Paula?)} \)

In the same way we say:

\[ \text{I know} \]

\[ \text{I don't know} \]

\[ \text{where Paula is.} \]

Compare:

Who are those people? \( \text{but} \)
How old is Nicole?
What time is it?
Where can I go?
How much is this camera?
When are you going away?
Where have they gone?
What was Kate wearing?

Questions with \text{do/does/did} \( \text{present simple and past simple} \)

\[ \text{Where does he live?} \]

\[ \text{but Do you know where he lives?} \text{ (not Do you know where does he live?)} \]

Compare:

How do aeroplanes fly? \( \text{but} \)
What does Jane want?
Why did she go home?
Where did I put the key?

Questions beginning \text{Is ...? / Do ...? / Can ...? etc. (yes/no questions)}

Compare:

Is Jack at home? \( \text{but} \)
Have they got a car?
Can Brian swim?
Do they live near here?
Did anybody see you?

You can use \text{if or whether} \ in these sentences:

\[ \square \text{Do you know if they've got a car?} \quad \text{or} \quad \text{Do you know whether they've got a car?} \]

\[ \square \text{I don't know if anybody saw me.} \quad \text{or} \quad \text{I don't know whether anybody saw me.} \]
49.1 Answer these questions with I don’t know where/when/why ... etc.

1. Have your friends gone home? (where) I don’t know where they’ve gone.
2. Is Kate in her office? (where) I don’t know.
3. Is the castle very old? (how old) I don’t know.
4. Will Paul be here soon? (when) I don’t know.
5. Was he angry because I was late? (why) I don’t know.
6. Has Sally lived here a long time? (how long) I don’t know.

49.2 Complete the sentences.

1. Do you know how aeroplanes fly?
2. (Where do) Susan work?
3. (What did) Peter say?
4. (Why did he) go home early?
5. (What time does the) meeting begin?
6. (How did the) accident happen?

49.3 Which is right?

1. Do you know what time is it / it is? (Do you know what time it is? is right)
2. Why are you / you are going away?
3. I don’t know where are they / they are going.
4. Can you tell me where is the museum / the museum is?
5. Where do you want / you want to go for your holidays?
6. Do you know what do elephants eat / elephants eat?
7. I don’t know how far is it / it is from the hotel to the station.

49.4 Write questions with Do you know if ... ?

1. (Have they got a car?) Do you know if they’ve got a car?
2. (Are they married?) Do you know if they’re married?
3. (Does Sue know Bill?) Do you know if Sue knows Bill?
4. (Will Gary be here tomorrow?) Do you know if Gary will be here tomorrow?
5. (Did he pass his exam?) Do you know if he passed his exam?

49.5 Write questions beginning Do you know ... ?

1. (What does Laura want?) Do you know what Laura wants?
2. (Where is Paula?) Do you know where Paula is?
3. (Is she working today?) Do you know if she’s working today?
4. (What time does she start work?) Do you know what time she starts work?
5. (Are the shops open tomorrow?) Do you know if the shops are open tomorrow?
6. (Where do Sarah and Tim live?) Do you know where Sarah and Tim live?
7. (Did they go to Jane’s party?) Do you know if they went to Jane’s party?

49.6 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. Do you know why the bus was late?
2. Do you know what time?
3. Excuse me, can you tell me where?
4. I don’t know what?
5. Do you know if?
6. Do you know how much?
Last week you went to a party. A lot of your friends were there. Here are some things they said to you:

**DIANE**
- I'm enjoying my new job. (am) → was
- My father isn't well. (is) → wasn’t

**SARAH**
- We're going to buy a house. (are) → were

**TOM**
- I have to leave early. (have) → had
- My sister has gone to Australia. (has) → had

**KATE**
- I can't find a job. (can) → could

**STEVE**
- I'll phone you. (will) → would

**RACHEL**
- I don't like my job. (do) → did
- My son doesn't like school. (does) → didn’t

**MIKE**
- You look tired.
- I feel fine.

Today you meet Paul. You tell him about the party. You tell Paul what your friends said:

- Diane said that she was enjoying her new job.
- She said that her father wasn’t well.
- Sarah and Tim said that they were going to buy a house.
- Peter said that he had to leave early.
- He said that his sister had gone to Australia.
- Kate said that she couldn’t find a job.
- Steve said that he would phone me.
- Rachel said that she didn’t like her job.
- She said that her son didn’t like school.
- Mike said that I looked tired.
- I said that I felt fine.

### say and tell

**say (→ said)**
- He said that he was tired. (not He said me)
- What did she say to you? (not say you)

**tell (→ told)**
- He told me that he was tired. (not He told that)
- What did she tell you? (not tell to you)

We say he said to me, I said to Ann etc. but not 'he said me', 'I said Ann'.

You can say:
- He said that he was tired. or He said he was tired. (without that)
- Kate told me that she couldn’t find a job. or Kate told me she couldn’t find a job.

I told you to ... → Unit 53
50.1 Read what these people say and write sentences with He/She/They said (that) ... .

1. He said he had lost his watch.
2. I'm very busy.
3. I can't go to the party.
4. I have to go out.
5. I'm learning Russian.
6. I don't feel very well.
7. We'll be home late.
8. I've just come back from holiday.
9. I'm going to buy a new computer.
10. We haven't got a key.

50.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences.

1. I'm enjoying my new job. DIANE
2. I'm not hungry. EMMA
3. I need it. MIKE
4. I don't want to go. SUSAN
5. You can have it. MARTIN
6. I want to watch TV. DAVID
7. Where's Robert? He's gone home. NICOLE
8. I'll send you a postcard. MARY

1. I met Diane last week. She said she was enjoying her new job.
2. Emma didn't want anything to eat. She said she was hungry.
3. I wanted to borrow Mike's ladder, but he said he needed it.
4. Hannah was invited to the party, but she said she didn't want to go.
5. Susan told me she didn't want the picture. She said she didn't need it.
6. Martin has just gone away on holiday. He said he was looking for Robert. Nicole said she was going to watch TV.
7. 'Why did David stay at home?' 'He said he was tired.'
8. 'Has Mary gone out?' 'I think so. She said she was going to watch TV.'

50.3 Write say/said or tell/told.

1. He said he was tired.
2. What did she tell you?
3. Anna told me she didn't like Peter.
4. Jack told me that you were ill.
5. Please don't tell Dan what happened.
6. Did Lucy tell you she would be late?
7. The woman said she was a reporter.
8. The woman told us she was a reporter.
9. They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't tell them anything.
10. They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't tell them anything.
work/working  go/going  do/doing

A

work/go/be etc. (infinitive)

We use the infinitive with will/can/must etc.:

- will: Anna will be here soon.  → Units 27–28
- shall: Shall I open the window?  → Unit 29
- might: I might phone you later.
- may: May I sit here?
- can: I can't meet you tomorrow.
- could: Could you pass the salt, please?
- must: It's late. I must go now.
- should: You shouldn't work so hard.  → Unit 32
- would: Would you like some coffee?  → Unit 34

We use the infinitive with do/does/did:

- do/does (present simple): Do you work?  → Units 6–7
- don't work: They don't work very hard.
- doesn't know: Helen doesn't know many people.
- does: How much does it cost?

- did (past simple): What time did the train leave?  → Unit 12
- didn't sleep: We didn't sleep well.

B
to work / to go / to be etc. (to + infinitive)

- (I'm) going to ...: I'm going to play tennis tomorrow.  → Unit 26
- what are you going to do?
- I have to ...: I have to go now.  → Unit 33
- everybody has to eat.
- I want to ...: Do you want to go out?  → Unit 52
- they don't want to come with us.
- I would like to ...: I'd like to talk to you.  → Unit 34
- would you like to go out?
- I used to ...: Dave used to work in a factory.  → Unit 36

C

working/going/playing etc.

- am/is/are + -ing
- was/were + -ing

- present continuous: Please be quiet. I'm working.  → Units 3–4, 8, 25
- Tom isn't working today.
- What time are you going out?
- past continuous: It was raining, so we didn't go out.  → Units 13–14
- What were you doing when the phone rang?

verbs + to ... and -ing (I want to do / I enjoy doing) → Unit 52  go + -ing → Unit 55
51.1 Complete the sentences. Write: ... phone Paul or ... to phone Paul.

1. I'll ................................................. .
2. I'm going ...........................................
3. Can you .......................................... Paul?
4. Shall I ............................................... ?
5. I'd like ............................................... 
6. Do you have ...........................................
7. You should .........................................
8. I want ............................................... 
9. I might ............................................... 
10. You must ...........................................

51.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Sometimes you need the infinitive (work/go etc.) and sometimes you need -ing (working/going etc.).

| do/doing | get/getting | sleep/sleeping | watch/watching |
| eat/eating | go/going | stay/staying | wear/wearing |
| fly/flying | listen/listening | wait/waiting | work/working |

1. Please be quiet. I'm ..........................................
2. I feel tired today. I didn't ................................ well last night.
3. What time do you usually ................................ up in the morning?
4. ‘Where are you ................................ ?’ ‘To the bank.’
5. Did you ........................................ television last night?
6. Look at that plane! It's .................................... very low.
7. You can turn off the radio. I'm not ................................ to it.
8. They didn't ........................................ anything because they weren't hungry.
9. My friends were ........................................ for me when I arrived.
10. ‘Does Susan always ................................ glasses?’ ‘No, only for reading.’
11. ‘What are you ....................................... tonight?’ ‘I'm ........................................ at home.’

51.3 Put the verb in the correct form. Choose from:

the infinitive (work/go etc.) or
to ... (to work / to go etc.) or
-ing (working/going etc.)

1. Shall I ................................................. the window? (open)
2. It's late. I have ........................................ now. (go)
3. Amanda isn't ........................................ this week. She's on holiday. (work)
4. I'm tired. I don't want ........................................ out. (go)
5. It might .............................................., so take an umbrella with you. (rain)
6. What time do you have ................................ tomorrow morning? (leave)
7. I'm sorry I can't ........................................ you. (help)
8. My brother is a student. He's ........................................ physics. (study)
9. Would you like .......................................... on a trip round the world? (go)
10. When you saw Maria, what was she ........................................? (wear)
11. When you go to London, where are you going ........................................? (stay)
12. I'm hungry. I must ...................................... something to eat. (have)
13. ‘Where's Gary?’ ‘He's ..................................... a bath.’ (have)
14. I used .............................................. a car, but I sold it last year. (have)
15. He spoke very quietly. I couldn't ........................................ him. (hear)
16. You don't look well. I don't think you should ........................................ to work today. (go)
17. I don't know what he said. I wasn't ........................................ to him. (listen)
18. I'm sorry I'm late. I had ...................................... a phone call. (make)
19. I want .............................................. what happened. (know) You must ........................................ me. (tell)
20. May I .............................................. your phone? (use)
to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

A verbs + to ... (I want to do)

- want
- plan
- decide
- try
- hope
- expect
- offer
- forget
- need
- promise
- refuse
- learn

+ to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)

- What do you want to do this evening?
- It's not very late. We don't need to go home yet.
- Tina has decided to sell her car.
- You forgot to switch off the light when you went out.
- My brother is learning to drive.
- I tried to read my book, but I was too tired.

B verbs + -ing (I enjoy doing)

- enjoy
- stop
- suggest
- mind
- finish

+ -ing (doing / working / being etc.)

- I enjoy dancing. (not enjoy to dance)
- I don't mind getting up early.
- Has it stopped raining?
- Sonia suggested going to the cinema.

C verbs + -ing or to ...

- like
- love
- start
- continue
- prefer
- hate
- begin

+ -ing (doing etc.) or to ... (to do etc.)

- Do you like getting up early? or Do you like to get up early?
- I prefer travelling by car. or I prefer to travel by car.
- Anna loves dancing. or Anna loves to dance.
- I hate being late. or I hate to be late.
- It started raining. or It started to rain.

D would like to ... etc.

- would like
- would love
- would prefer
- would hate

+ to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)

- Julia would like to meet you.
- I'd love to go to Australia. (I'd = I would)
- 'Would you like to sit down?' 'No, I'd prefer to stand, thank you.'
- I like this city very much. I wouldn't like to move.
- I'd hate to lose my address book.

would like → Unit 34 I want you to ... → Unit 53 go + -ing → Unit 55 preposition + -ing → Unit 112
52.1 Put the verb in the right form, to ... or -ing.

1 I enjoy __________. (dance)
2 What do you want __________ tonight? (do)
3 Bye! I hope __________ you again soon. (see)
4 I learnt __________ when I was five years old. (swim)
5 Have you finished __________ the kitchen? (clean)
6 Where’s Anna? I need __________ her something. (ask)
7 Do you enjoy __________ other countries? (visit)
8 The weather was nice, so I suggested __________ for a walk by the river. (go)
9 Where’s Bill? He promised __________ here on time. (be)
10 I’m not in a hurry. I don’t mind __________. (wait)
11 What have you decided __________? (do)
12 Gary was very angry and refused __________ to me. (speak)
13 I’m tired. I want __________ to bed. (go)
14 I was very upset and started __________. (cry)
15 I’m trying __________. (work) Please stop __________. (talk)

52.2 Complete the sentences using to ... or -ing. Use these verbs: go go help lose rain read see send wait watch

1 ‘Have you ever been to Australia?’ ‘No, but I’d love __________ to go.’
2 Jane had a lot to do, so I offered __________ her.
3 I’m surprised that you’re here. I didn’t expect __________ you.
4 Nicole has a lot of books. She enjoys __________.
5 This ring was my grandmother’s. I’d hate __________ it.
6 Don’t forget __________ us a postcard when you’re on holiday.
7 I’m not going out until it stops __________.
8 What shall we do this afternoon? Would you like __________ to the beach?
9 When I’m tired in the evenings, I like __________ television.
10 ‘Shall we go now?’ ‘No, I’d prefer __________ a few minutes.’

52.3 Complete the answers to the questions.

1 Do you usually get up early?
   Yes, I like __________ to get up early.
2 Do you ever go to museums?
   Yes, I enjoy __________ to a museum now?
3 Would you like to go to a museum now?
   No, I’m hungry. I’d prefer __________ to a restaurant.
4 Do you often write letters?
   No, I don’t like __________ one day.
5 Have you ever been to New York?
   Yes, I enjoy __________ , but a taxi would be quicker.
6 Do you often travel by train?
7 Shall we walk home or take a taxi?

52.4 Complete these sentences. Write about yourself. Use to ... or -ing.

1 I enjoy __________
2 I don’t like __________
3 If it’s a nice day tomorrow, I’d like __________
4 When I’m on holiday, I like __________
5 I don’t mind __________, but __________
6 I wouldn’t like __________
I want you to ...

The woman wants to go.
The man doesn't want the woman to go.
He wants her to stay.

We say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I want</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>to do something</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>somebody</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sarah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

□ I want you to be happy. (not I want that you are happy)
□ They didn't want anybody to know their secret.
□ Do you want me to lend you some money?

We use would like in the same way:
□ Would you like me to lend you some money?

We also use this structure (verb + somebody + to ...) with:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>somebody + to ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ask</td>
<td>Sue asked a friend to lend her some money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>I told you to be careful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advise</td>
<td>What do you advise me to do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expect</td>
<td>I didn't expect them to be here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persuade</td>
<td>We persuaded Gary to come with us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>I am teaching my brother to swim.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I told you to ... / I told you not to ...

Wait for me.

→ Jane told me to wait for her.

Don't wait for me.

→ Paul told Sue not to wait for him.

make and let

After make and let, we do not use to:
□ He's very funny. He makes me laugh. (not makes me to laugh)
□ At school our teacher made us work very hard.
□ Sue let me use her computer because mine wasn't working. (not let me to use)

You can say Let's ... (= Let us) when you want people to do things with you:
□ Come on! Let's dance.
□ 'Do you want to go out tonight?' 'No, I'm tired. Let's stay at home.'

Let's ... → Unit 35 He told me that ... → Unit 50
53.1 Write sentences beginning I want you ... / I don’t want you ... / Do you want me ... ?
1 (you must come with me) I want you to come with me.
2 (listen carefully) I want you to listen carefully.
3 (please don’t be angry) I don’t want you to be angry.
4 (shall I wait for you?) Do you want me to wait for you?
5 (don’t phone me tonight) I don’t want you to phone me tonight.
6 (you must meet Sarah) I want you to meet Sarah.

53.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1 Come on! Let’s go to the cinema! It’s a good film.
2 Where’s the station? Turn left after the bridge.
3 I’m not well. You should go to the doctor.
4 Can you help me?
5 I’m busy now. Come back in ten minutes.
6 Can I use your phone? Of course.
7 Don’t phone before 8 o’clock.
8 Do you play the piano?

1 Dan persuaded me to go to the cinema.
2 I wanted to get to the station. A woman told me to.
3 Brian wasn’t well. I advised him to go to the doctor.
4 Linda had a lot of luggage. She asked Paul to help her.
5 I was too busy to talk to Tom. I told him to talk later.
6 I wanted to make a phone call. Paul let me use his.
7 Sue is going to phone later. I told her to phone later.
8 Ann’s mother taught me to play the piano.

53.3 Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes to is necessary (to go / to wait etc.); sometimes to is not necessary (go/wait etc.).

arrive borrow get go go make repeat tell think wait

1 Please stay here. I don’t want you to go yet.
2 I didn’t hear what she said, so I asked her to repeat it.
3 ‘Shall we begin?’ ‘No, let’s wait a few minutes.’
4 Are they already here? I expected them to arrive much later.
5 Kevin’s parents didn’t want him to think about marrying.
6 I want to stay here. You can’t make me go with you.
7 ‘Is that your bicycle?’ ‘No, it’s John’s. He let me use it.’
8 Rachel can’t come to the party. She told me to come you.
9 Would you like a drink? Would you like me to get some coffee?
10 ‘Kate doesn’t like me.’ ‘What makes you think that?’
I went to the shop to ...

Paula wanted a newspaper, so she went to the shop.
Why did she go to the shop?
To get a newspaper.
She went to the shop to get a newspaper.

to ... (to get / to see etc.) tells us why a person does something:
- ‘Why are you going out?’ ‘To get some bread.’
- Catherine went to the station to meet her friend.
- Sue turned on the television to watch the news.
- I’d like to go to Spain to learn Spanish.

money/time to (do something):
- We need some money to buy food.
- I haven’t got time to watch television.

to ... and for ...

to + verb
(to get / to see etc.)
- I went to the shop to get a newspaper. (not for get)
- They’re going to Brazil to see their friends.
- We need some money to buy food.

for + noun
(for a newspaper / for food etc.)
- I went to the shop for a newspaper.
- They’re going to Brazil for a holiday.
- We need some money for food.

wait for ...

Please wait for me.
Are you waiting for the bus?

wait to (do something):
- Hurry up! I’m waiting to go.
- Are you waiting to see the doctor?

wait for (somebody/something) to ...
- I can’t go out yet. I’m waiting for John to phone.
- Are you waiting for the doctor to come?
54.1 Write sentences beginning I went to ... . Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the café</th>
<th>the post office</th>
<th>+ buy some food</th>
<th>get some stamps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the chemist</td>
<td>the supermarket</td>
<td>get some medicine</td>
<td>meet a friend</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 I went to the post office to get some stamps.
2
3
4

54.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>to get some fresh air</th>
<th>to read the newspaper</th>
<th>to wake him up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to open this door</td>
<td>to see who it was</td>
<td>to watch the news</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 I turned on the television  
2 Alice sat down in an armchair  
3 Do I need a key?  
4 I went for a walk by the river  
5 I knocked on the door of David's room  
6 The doorbell rang, so I looked out of the window

54.3 Use your own ideas to finish these sentences. Use to ...

1 I went to the shop  
2 I'm very busy. I haven't got time  
3 I phoned Ann  
4 I'm going out  
5 I borrowed some money

54.4 Write to or for.

1 I went out to get some bread.  
2 We went to a restaurant to have dinner.  
3 Robert wants to go to university to study economics.  
4 I'm going to London for an interview next week.  
5 I'm going to London to visit some friends of mine.  
6 Have you got time for a cup of coffee?  
7 I got up late this morning. I didn't have time to wash.  
8 Everybody needs money to live.  
9 We didn't have any money to pay the taxi, so we walked home.  
10 The office is very small. There's space only for a desk and chair.  
11 a: Excuse me, are you waiting to use the phone?  
   b: No, I'm waiting for John to phone.

54.5 Complete these sentences. Choose from:

John - phone  it / to arrive  you / tell me  the film / begin

1 I can't go out yet. I'm waiting for John to phone.
2 I sat down in the cinema and waited for the film to begin.
3 We called an ambulance and waited for it to arrive.
4 'Do you know what to do?' 'No, I'm waiting for you to tell me.'
go to … (go to work / go to London / go to a concert etc.)

☐ What time do you usually go to work?
☐ I’m going to China next week.
☐ Sophie didn’t want to go to the concert.
☐ ‘Where’s Tom?’ ‘He’s gone to bed.’
☐ I went to the dentist yesterday.

go to sleep = start to sleep:
☐ I was very tired and went to sleep quickly.

go home (without to)
☐ I’m going home now. (not going to home)

go on …

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>go on</th>
<th>holiday</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a trip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a tour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>an excursion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a cruise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>strike</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

☐ We’re going on holiday next week.
☐ Children often go on school trips.
☐ When we were in Scotland, we went on a lot of excursions to different places.
☐ Workers at the airport have gone on strike. (= they are refusing to work)

go for …

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>go (somewhere) for</th>
<th>a walk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a swim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a meal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

☐ ‘Where’s Emma?’ ‘She’s gone for a walk.’
☐ Do you go for a run every morning?
☐ The water looks nice. I’m going for a swim.
☐ I met Chris in town, so we went for a coffee.
☐ Shall we go out for a meal? I know a good restaurant.

go + -ing

We use go + -ing for many sports (swimming / skiing etc.) and also shopping.

☐ Are you going shopping this afternoon?
☐ It’s a nice day. Let’s go swimming.
☐ (or Let’s go for a swim.)
☐ Richard has a small boat and he often goes sailing.
☐ I went jogging before breakfast this morning.
55.1 Write to/on/for where necessary.
1. I’m going _______ China next week.
2. Richard often goes _______ sailing. (no preposition)
3. Sue went _______ Mexico last year.
4. Would you like to go _______ the cinema this evening?
5. Jack goes _______ jogging every morning.
6. I’m going out _______ a walk. Do you want to come?
7. I’m tired because I went _______ bed very late last night.
8. Martin is going _______ holiday _______. Italy next week.
9. The weather was warm and the river was clean, so we went _______ a swim.
10. The taxi drivers went _______ strike when I was in New York.
11. I need some stamps, so I’m going _______ the post office.
12. It’s late. I have to go _______ home now.
13. Would you like to go _______ a tour of the city?
14. Shall we go out _______ dinner this evening?
15. My parents are going _______ a cruise this summer.

55.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences. Use go/goes/going/went + -ing.

1. Richard has a boat. He often _______ sailing.
2. Last Saturday Diane went ____________________________.
3. Gary ____________________________ every day.
4. Nicole is going on holiday next month. She is ____________________________.
5. Peter is going out later. He has to ____________________________.
6. Sarah ____________________________ after work yesterday.

55.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box. Use to/on/for if necessary.

- a-swim
- holiday
- Portugal
- shopping
- sleep
- a walk
- home
- riding
- skiing
- university

1. The water looks nice. Let’s go _______ for a swim.
2. After leaving school, Tina went ____________________________ where she studied psychology.
3. I’m going ____________________________ now. I have to buy a few things.
4. I was very tired last night. I sat down in an armchair and went ____________________________.
5. I wasn’t enjoying the party, so I went ____________________________ early.
6. We live near the mountains. In winter we go ____________________________ most weekends.
7. Richard has got a horse. He goes ____________________________ a lot.
8. The weather is nice. Shall we go ____________________________ along the river?
9. A: Are you going ____________________________ soon?
   B: Yes, next month. We’re going ____________________________. We’ve never been there before.
get

get a letter / get a job etc. (get + noun) = receive/buy/find:

- 'Did you get my postcard?' 'Yes, I got it yesterday.' (= receive)
- I like your sweater. Where did you get it? (= buy)
- Is it difficult to get a job at the moment? (= find)
- (on the phone) 'Hello, can I speak to Lisa, please?' 'Sure. I'll get her.'

also get a bus / a train / a taxi (= take a bus/train etc.):
- 'Did you walk here?' 'No, I got the bus.'

get hungry / get cold / get tired etc. (get + adjective) = become:

- If you don't eat, you get hungry.
- Drink your coffee. It's getting cold.
- I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she gets better soon.
- It was raining very hard. We didn't have an umbrella, so we got very wet.

also get married
get dressed (= put your clothes on)
get lost (= lose your way)

- Nicole and Frank are getting married soon.
- I got up and got dressed quickly.
- We didn't have a map, so we got lost.

get to a place = arrive:
- I usually get to work before 8.30. (= arrive at work)
- We left London at 10 o'clock and got to Manchester at 12.45.

get here/there (without to):
- How did you get here? By bus?

get home (without to):
- What time did you get home last night?

get in/out/on/off

- Kate got in the car and drove away. (You can also say: Kate got into the car and ...)
- A car stopped and a man got out. (but A man got out of the car.)
- We got on the bus outside the hotel and got off in Church Street.
56.1 Complete these sentences. Use get/gets and choose from the box.

- a doctor
- a lot of rain
- a taxi
- my postcard
- the job
- a good salary
- a new computer
- a ticket
- some milk
- your jacket

1. Did you get my postcard? I sent it a week ago.
2. Where did you go? It’s very nice.
3. Quick! This man is ill. We must __________________________________.
4. I don’t want to walk home. Let’s __________________________________.
5. Tom has an interview tomorrow. I hope he __________________________________.
6. When you go out, can you __________________________________?
7. ‘Are you going to the concert?’ ‘Yes, if I can __________________________________.’
8. Margaret has got a well-paid job. She __________________________________.
9. The weather is horrible here in winter. We __________________________________.
10. I’m going to __________________________________. The one I have is too slow.

56.2 Complete these sentences. Use getting + these words:

e - cold - dark - late - married - ready

1. Drink your coffee. It’s __________________________________.
2. Turn on the light. It’s __________________________________.
3. ‘I’m __________________________________ next week.’ ‘Really? Congratulations!’
4. ‘Where’s Karen?’ ‘She’s __________________________________ to go out.’
5. It’s __________________________________. It’s time to go home.

56.3 Complete the sentences. Use get/gets/got + these words:

- angry - better - hungry - lost - married - old - wet

1. If you don’t eat, you __________________________________.
2. Don’t go out in the rain. You’ll __________________________________.
3. My brother __________________________________ last year. His wife’s name is Sarah.
4. Martin is always very calm. He never __________________________________.
5. We tried to find the hotel, but we __________________________________.
6. Everybody wants to stay young, but we all __________________________________.
7. Yesterday the weather wasn’t so good at first, but it __________________________________
during the day.

56.4 Write sentences with I left ... and got to ...

1. home / 7.30 → work / 8.15
   I left home at 7.30 and got to work at 8.15.

2. London / 10.15 → Bristol / 11.45
   I left London at 10.15 and __________________________________.

3. the party / 11.15 → home / midnight
   __________________________________.

4. Write a sentence about yourself.
   I left __________________________________.

56.5 Write got in / got out of / got on / got off.

1. Kate __________________ the car and drove away.
2. I __________________ the bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.
3. Isabel __________________ the car, shut the door and went into a shop.
4. I made a stupid mistake. I __________________ the wrong train.
do and make

Do is a general word for actions:
- What are you **doing** this evening? (not What are you **making**?)
- ‘Shall I open the window?’ ‘No, it’s OK. I’ll **do** it.’
- Rachel’s job is very boring. She **does** the same thing every day.
- I **did** a lot of things yesterday.

**What do you do?** = What’s your job?:
- ‘What do you **do**?’ ‘I work in a bank.’

Make = produce/create. For example:

She’s **making** coffee. He has **made** a cake. They **make** umbrellas. It was **made** in China.

Compare **do** and **make**:
- I **did** a lot yesterday. I **cleaned** my room, I **wrote** some letters and I **made** a cake.
- A: What do you **do** in your free time? Sport? Reading? Hobbies?
  B: I **make** clothes. I **make** dresses and jackets. I also **make** toys for my children.

Expressions with **do**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do</th>
<th>an exam / a test</th>
<th>a course</th>
<th>homework</th>
<th>housework</th>
<th>somebody a favour</th>
<th>an exercise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
- I’m doing my driving test next week.
- John has just done a training course.
- Our children have to do a lot of homework.
- I hate doing housework, especially cleaning.
- Sue, could you do me a favour?
- I go for a run and do exercises every morning.

*also do the shopping / do the washing / do the washing-up / do the ironing / do the cooking* etc.:
- I **did** the washing, but I didn’t do the shopping.

Expressions with **make**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>make</th>
<th>a mistake</th>
<th>an appointment</th>
<th>a phone call</th>
<th>a list</th>
<th>a noise</th>
<th>a bed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
- I’m sorry, I made a mistake.
- I need to make an appointment to see the doctor.
- Excuse me, I have to make a phone call.
- Have you made a shopping list?
- It’s late. Don’t make a noise.
- Sometimes I forget to make my bed in the morning.

We say make a film but take a photograph:
- When was the film **made**? *but* When was the photograph **taken**?

do/does/did (negatives and questions) → Units 43–44 make somebody do something → Unit 53
57.1 Write make/making/made or do/doing/did/done.

1 ‘Shall I open the window?’ ‘No, it’s OK. I’ll _________ it.’
2 What did you __________ at the weekend? Did you go away?
3 Do you know how to __________ bread?
4 Paper is __________ from wood.
5 Richard didn’t help me. He sat in an armchair and __________ nothing.
6 ‘What do you __________?’ ‘I’m a doctor.’
7 I asked you to clean the bathroom. Have you __________ it?
8 ‘What do they __________ in that factory?’ ‘Shoes.’
9 I’m __________ some coffee. Would you like some?
10 Why are you angry with me? I didn’t __________ anything wrong.
11 ‘What are you __________ tomorrow afternoon?’ ‘I’m working.’

57.2 What are these people doing?

57.3 Write make or do in the correct form.

1 I hate ____________ housework, especially cleaning.
2 Why do you always ____________ the same mistake?
3 ‘Can you ____________ me a favour?’ ‘It depends what it is.’
4 ‘Have you ____________ your homework?’ ‘Not yet.’
5 I need to see the dentist, but I haven’t ____________ an appointment.
6 I’m ____________ a course in photography at the moment. It’s very good.
7 The last time I ____________ an exam was ten years ago.
8 How many phone calls did you ____________ yesterday?
9 When you’ve finished Exercise 1, you can ____________ Exercise 2.
10 There’s something wrong with the car. The engine is ____________ a strange noise.
11 It was a bad mistake. It was the worst mistake I’ve ever ____________.
12 Let’s ____________ a list of all the things we have to ____________ today.
have

have and have got

I've got (something) or I have (something) = it is mine:

☐ I've got a new car. or I have a new car.
☐ Sue has got long hair. or Sue has long hair.
☐ Have they got any children? or Do they have any children?
☐ Tim hasn't got a job. or Tim doesn't have a job.
☐ How much time have you got? or How much time do you have?

also

I've got

a headache / a toothache / a pain (in my leg etc.)

I have

a cold / a cough / a sore throat / a temperature / flu etc.

☐ I've got a headache. or I have a headache.
☐ Have you got a cold? or Do you have a cold?

The past is I had (without got) / I didn't have / Did you have? etc.:

☐ When I first met Sue, she had short hair.
☐ He didn't have any money because he didn't have a job.
☐ Did you have enough time to do everything you wanted?

have breakfast / have a shower etc.

In these expressions have = eat/drink/take etc. You can't use 'have got'.

have

breakfast / lunch / dinner
a meal / a sandwich / a pizza etc.
a cup of coffee / a glass of milk etc.
something to eat/drink

☐ ‘Where’s Liz?’ ‘She’s having lunch.’
☐ I don’t usually have breakfast.
☐ I had three cups of coffee this morning.
☐ ‘Have a biscuit!’ ‘Oh, thank you.’

We also use have (not have got) in these expressions:

have

a bath / a shower
a rest / a holiday / a party
a nice time / a good trip / fun etc.
a walk / a swim / a game (of tennis etc.)
a dream / an accident
a baby
a look (at something)

☐ I had a shower this morning.
 ☐ We’re having a party next week.
    You must come.
☐ Enjoy your holiday. Have a nice time!
☐ Did you have a good time in Tokyo?
☐ Sandra has just had a baby.
 ☐ Can I have a look at your newspaper?

Compare:

Have got or have

☐ I’ve got / I have a new shower. It’s very good.

Have (not have got)

☐ I have a shower every morning.
    (not I’ve got a shower every morning)

A: Where’s Paul?
    B: He’s having a shower.
    (= he’s washing now)
58.1 Write the correct form of have or have got.

1. I ... time to do the shopping yesterday. (I / not / have)
2. Has Lisa got (OR Does Lisa have) a car? ‘No, she can’t drive.’ (Lisa / have?)
3. He can’t open the door. ... a key. (he / not / have)
4. ... a cold last week. He’s better now. (Gary / have)
5. What’s wrong? ... a headache? (you / have?)
6. We wanted to go by taxi, but ... enough money. (we / not / have)
7. Liz is very busy. ... much free time. (she / not / have)
8. ... any problems when you were on holiday? (you / have?)

58.2 What are these people doing? Choose from the list:

- a bath
- breakfast
- a cup of tea
- dinner
- a good time
- a rest

1. They’re having breakfast.
2. She ...
3. He ...
4. They ...
5. ...
6. ...

58.3 What do you say in these situations? Use have.

1. Emily is going on holiday. What do you say to her before she goes?
   *Have a nice holiday!*

2. You meet Claire at the airport. She has just got off her plane. Ask her about the flight.
   *Did you have a good flight?*

3. Tim is going on a long trip. What do you say to him before he leaves?

4. It’s Monday morning. You are at work. Ask Paula about her weekend.

5. Paul has just come home after playing tennis with a friend. Ask him about the game.

6. Rachel is going out this evening. What do you say to her before she goes?

7. Mark has just returned from holiday. Ask him about his holiday.

58.4 Complete the sentences. Use have/had and choose from the list.

- an accident
- a glass of water
- a look
- a walk
- a party
- something to eat

1. We ... a few weeks ago. We invited 50 people.
2. ‘Shall we ...?’ ‘No, I’m not hungry.’
3. I was thirsty, so I ...
4. I like to get up early and ... before breakfast.
5. Tina is a very good driver. She has never ...
6. There’s something wrong with the engine of my car. Can you ... at it?
I/me he/him they/them etc.

A  People

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>I know Tom.</th>
<th>Tom knows me.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>we know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>He knows Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>She knows Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>They know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows them.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B  Things

- It's nice. I like it.
- They're nice. I like them.

- I don't want this book. You can have it.
- I don't want these books. You can have them.
- Diane never drinks milk. She doesn't like it.
- I never go to parties. I don't like them.

We use me/her/them etc. (object) after a preposition (for/to/with etc.):
- This letter isn't for me. It's for you.
- Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her?
- We're going to the cinema. Do you want to come with us?
- Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with them?
- 'Where's the newspaper?' 'You're sitting on it.'

C  give it/them to ... :
- I want that book. Please give it to me.
- Robert needs these books. Can you give them to him, please?

my/his/their etc. → Unit 60  Give me that book / Give it to me → Unit 96
59.1 Complete the sentences with him/her/them.
1. I don’t know those girls. Do you know them?
2. I don’t know that man. Do you know him?
3. I don’t know those people. Do you know them?
4. I don’t know David’s wife. Do you know her?
5. I don’t know Mr Stevens. Do you know them?
6. I don’t know Sarah’s parents. Do you know them?
7. I don’t know the woman in the black coat. Do you know her?

59.2 Complete the sentences. Use I/me/you/she/her etc.
1. I want to see her, but she doesn’t want to see me.
2. They want to see me, but I don’t want to see them.
3. She wants to see him, but he doesn’t want to see her.
4. We want to see them, but they don’t want to see us.
5. He wants to see us, but we don’t want to see him.
6. They want to see her, but she doesn’t want to see them.
7. I want to see them, but they don’t want to see me.
8. You want to see her, but she doesn’t want to see you.

59.3 Write sentences beginning I like ... , I don’t like ... or Do you like ...?
1. I don’t eat tomatoes.
2. George is a very nice man. I like him.
3. This jacket isn’t very nice. I don’t like it.
4. This is my new car. Do you like it?
5. Mrs Clark is not very friendly. I don’t like her.
6. These are my new shoes. Do you like them?

59.4 Complete the sentences. Use I/me/he/him etc.
1. Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her?
2. ‘Do you know that man?’ ‘Yes, I work with him.’
3. Where are the tickets? I can’t find them.
4. I can’t find my keys. Where are they?
5. We’re going out. You can come with me.
6. I’ve got a new computer. Do you want to see it?
7. Maria likes music. He plays the piano.
8. I don’t like dogs. I’m afraid of them.
9. I’m talking to you. Please listen to me.
10. Where is Anna? I want to talk to her.
11. You can have these CDs. I don’t want them.
12. My brother has a new job, but he doesn’t like it very much.

59.5 Complete the sentences.
1. I need that book. Can you give it to me?
2. He wants the key. Can you give him the key?
3. She wants the keys. Can you give her the keys?
4. I want that letter. Can you give it to me?
5. They want the money. Can you give it to them?
6. We want the photographs. Can you give them to us?
my/his/their etc.

I → my
we → our
you → your
he → his
she → her
they → their

I like my house.
We like our house.
You like your house.
He likes his house.
She likes her house.
They like their house.

it → its
Oxford (= it) is famous for its university.

We use my/your/his etc. + noun:

my hands  his new car  her parents
our clothes your best friend their room

his/her/their

DONNA

her car (= Donna's car)
her husband (= Donna’s husband)
her children (= Donna’s children)

ANDY

his bicycle
his sister
his parents

MR AND MRS LEE

their son
their daughter
their children

its and its

its Oxford is famous for its university.
it's (= it is) I like Oxford. It’s a nice place. (= It is a nice place.)

mine/yours etc. → Unit 61  I/me/my/mine → Unit 62
60.1 Complete the sentences in the same way.
1. I’m going to wash my hands.
2. She’s going to wash hands.
3. We’re going to wash hands.
4. He’s going to wash .
5. They’re going to wash .
6. Are you going to wash ?

60.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.
1. He lives with his parents.
2. They live with parents.
3. We live with parents.
5. I live with parents.
7. Do you live ?
8. Most children .

60.3 Look at the family tree, and complete the sentences with his/her/their.

1. I saw Sarah with her husband, Philip.
2. I saw Laura and Steve with children.
3. I saw Steve with wife, Laura.
4. I saw Gary with brother, Tim.
5. I saw Laura with brother, Tim.
6. I saw Sarah and Philip with son, Tim.
7. I saw Laura with parents.
8. I saw Emma and Robert with parents.

60.4 Write my/our/your/his/her/their/its.
1. Do you like your job?
2. I know Mr Watson, but I don’t know wife.
3. Alice and Tom live in London. son lives in Australia.
4. We’re going to have a party. We’re going to invite all friends.
5. Anna is going out with friends this evening.
6. I like tennis. It’s favourite sport.
7. ‘Is that car?’ ‘No, I haven’t got a car.’
8. I want to phone Maria. Do you know phone number?
9. Do you think most people are happy in jobs?
10. I’m going to wash hair before I go out.
11. This is a beautiful tree. leaves are a beautiful colour.
12. John has a brother and a sister. brother is 25, and sister is 21.

60.5 Complete the sentences. Use my/his/their etc. with these words:

coat homework house husband job key name
1. Jim doesn’t enjoy his job. It’s not very interesting.
2. I can’t get in. I haven’t got .
3. Sally is married. works in a bank.
4. Please take off and sit down.
5. ‘What are the children doing?’ ‘They’re doing .’
6. ‘Do you know that man?’ ‘Yes, but I don’t know .’
7. We live in Barton Street. is at the end on the left.
We use my/your etc. + noun (my hands / your book etc.):

- My hands are cold.
- Is this your book?
- Helen gave me her umbrella.
- It's their problem, not our problem.

We use mine/yours etc. without a noun:

- Is this book mine or yours? (= my book or your book)
- I didn't have an umbrella, so Helen gave me hers. (= her umbrella)
- It's their problem, not ours. (= not our problem)
- We went in our car, and they went in theirs. (= their car)

You can use his with or without a noun:

- 'Is this his camera or hers?' 'It's his.'

A friend of mine / a friend of his / some friends of yours etc.

- I went out to meet a friend of mine. (not a friend of me)
- Tom was in the restaurant with a friend of his. (not a friend of him)
- Are those people friends of yours? (not friends of you)

Whose ... ?

- Whose book is this? (= Is it your book?

You can use whose with or without a noun:

- Whose money is this?  It's mine.
  Whose is this?
- Whose shoes are these?  They're John's.
Exercises

Unit 61

61.1 Complete the sentences with mine/yours etc.
1 It's your money. It's __________________________.
2 It's my bag. It's __________________________.
3 It's our car. It's __________________________.
4 They're her shoes. They're __________________________.
5 It's their house. It's __________________________.
6 They're your books. They're __________________________.
7 They're my glasses. They're __________________________.
8 It's his coat. It's __________________________.

61.2 Choose the right word.
1 It's their/their problem, not our/ours. (their and ours are right)
2 This is a nice camera. Is it your/yours?
3 That's not my/mine umbrella. My/Mine is black.
4 Whose books are these? Your/Yours or my/mine?
5 Catherine is going out with her/hers friends this evening.
6 My/Mine room is bigger than her/hers.
7 They've got two children, but I don't know their/their names.
8 Can we use your washing machine? Our/Ours isn't working.

61.3 Complete these sentences. Use friend(s) of mine/yours etc.
1 I went to the cinema with a __________________________.
2 They went on holiday with some __________________________.
3 She's going out with a friend __________________________.
4 We had dinner with some __________________________.
5 I played tennis with a __________________________.
6 Tom is going to meet a __________________________.
7 Do you know those people? Are they __________________________?

61.4 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying?

1 Whose car is this?
2 __________________________.
3 __________________________.
4 __________________________.
5 __________________________.
6 __________________________.
### I/me/my/mine

**I etc.**  
(→ Unit 59)

| I know Tom. | Tom knows me. | It's my car. | It's mine. |

**me etc.**  
(→ Unit 59)

| We know Tom. | Tom knows us. | It's our car. | It's ours. |

**my etc.**  
(→ Unit 60)

| You know Tom. | Tom knows you. | It's your car. | It's yours. |

**mine etc.**  
(→ Unit 61)

| He knows Tom. | Tom knows him. | It's his car. | It's his. |

| She knows Tom. | Tom knows her. | It's her car. | It's hers. |

| They know Tom. | Tom knows them. | It's their car. | It's theirs. |

---

**Study these examples:**

- ‘Do you know that man?’  
  ‘Yes, I know him, but I can’t remember his name.’
- **She** was very pleased because **we** invited her to stay with **us** at **our** house.
- A: Where are the children? Have **you** seen them?
  B: Yes, they are playing with **their** friends in the park.
- That’s my pen. Can you give it to **me**, please?
- ‘Is this your umbrella?’ ‘No, it’s yours.’
- **He** didn’t have an umbrella, so **she** gave him hers. (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- I’m going out with a friend of **mine** this evening. (not a friend of me)

myself/yourself etc. → **Unit 63**  
Give me that book / Give it to me → **Unit 96**
62.1 Answer the questions in the same way.

1. Do you know that man?
   Yes, I know him, but I can't remember his name.

2. Do you know that woman?
   Yes, I know _______________, but I can't remember ____________________.

3. Do you know those people?
   Yes, I ____________________, but I can't remember ____________________.

4. Do you know me?
   Yes, I ________________, but ________________________________.

62.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1. We invited her ____________ to stay with us at our house.

2. He invited us to stay with _________________ at his house.

3. They invited me to stay ............................................ house.

4. I invited them to stay ...................................................... house.

5. She invited us to stay .................................................... house.

6. Did you invite him ......................................................... house?

62.3 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1. I gave him ____________ address, and he gave me his.

2. I gave her ____________ address, and she gave me ____________________.

3. He gave me ____________ address, and I gave ____________________.

4. We gave them _______________ address, and they gave ____________________.

5. She gave him ____________ address, and he gave ____________________.

6. You gave us ______________ address, and we gave ____________________.

7. They gave you ______________ address, and you gave ____________________.

62.4 Write him/her/yours etc.

1. Where's Amanda? Have you seen _______________?

2. Where are my keys? Where did I put _______________?

3. This letter is for Bill. Can you give it to _______________?

4. We don't see _______________ neighbours much. They're not at home very often.

5. 'I can't find my pen. Can I use _______________?' 'Yes, of course.'

6. We're going to the cinema. Why don't you come with _______________?

7. Did your sister pass _______________ exams?

8. Some people talk about _______________ jobs all the time.

9. Last night I went out for a meal with a friend of _______________.
myself/yourself/themselves etc.

He's looking at himself.

Compare:

me/him/them etc.

She is looking at him.

different people

You never talk to me.
I didn't pay for them.
I'm sorry. Did I hurt you?

myself/himself/themselves etc.

He is looking at himself.

the same person

Sometimes I talk to myself.
They paid for themselves.
Be careful. Don't hurt yourself.

by myself / by yourself etc. = alone:

I went on holiday by myself. (= I went alone)
'Was she with friends? 'No, she was by herself.'

each other

Kate and Helen are good friends. They know each other well.
(= Kate knows Helen / Helen knows Kate)
Paul and I live near each other. (= he lives near me / I live near him)

Compare each other and -selves:

Tim and Sue looked at each other. (= he looked at her, she looked at him)

Tim and Sue looked at themselves. (= he looked at himself, she looked at herself)
63.1 Complete the sentences with myself/yourself etc.

1. He looked at ___________ in the mirror.
2. I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with ___________.
3. Karen had a good time in Australia. She enjoyed ___________.
4. My friends had a good time in Australia. They enjoyed ___________.
5. I picked up a very hot plate and burnt ___________.
6. He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about ___________.
7. I want to know more about you. Tell me about ___________. (one person)
8. Goodbye! Have a good trip and look after ___________! (two people)

63.2 Write sentences with by myself / by yourself etc.

1. I went on holiday alone. I went on holiday by myself.
2. When I saw him, he was alone. When I saw him, he ___________.
3. Don’t go out alone. Don’t ___________.
4. I went to the cinema alone. I ___________.
5. My sister lives alone. My sister ___________.
6. Many people live alone. Many people ___________.

63.3 Write sentences with each other.

1. I like her. They like each other.
2. I like him. They can’t ___________.
3. They ___________.
4. I don’t know him. I don’t know him.
5. I’m sitting next to him. I gave her a present.
6. I gave her a present. I phone him a lot.

63.4 Complete the sentences. Use: each other or ourselves/yourself/themselves or us/you/them

1. Paul and I live near ___________.
2. Who are those people? Do you know ___________?
3. You can help Tom, and Tom can help you. So you and Tom can help ___________.
4. There’s food in the kitchen. If you and Chris are hungry, you can help ___________.
5. We didn’t go to Emily’s party. She didn’t invite ___________.
6. When we go on holiday, we always enjoy ___________.
7. Mary and Jane were at school together, but they never see ___________ now.
8. Diane and I are very good friends. We’ve known ___________ for a long time.
9. ‘Did you see Sam and Laura at the party?’ ‘Yes, but I didn’t speak to ___________.’
10. Many people talk to ___________ when they’re alone.
We normally use -s for people:
- I stayed at my sister's house. (*not* the house of my sister)
- Have you met Mr Black's wife? (*not* the wife of Mr Black)
- Are you going to James's party?
- Paul is a man's name. Paula is a woman's name.

You can use -s without a noun after it:
- Sophie's hair is longer than Kate's. (= Kate's hair)
- 'Whose umbrella is this?' 'It's my mother's.' (= my mother's umbrella)
- 'Where were you last night?' 'I was at Paul's.' (= Paul's house)

**friend's and friends'**

my friend's house = one friend
(= his house or her house)

We write 's after
friend/student/mother etc. (singular):
- my mother's car (one mother)
- my father's car (one father)

my friends' house = two or more friends
(= their house)

We write ' after
friends/students/parents etc. (plural):
- my parents' car (two parents)

We use of ... for things, places etc.:
- Look at the roof of that building. (*not* that building's roof)
- We didn't see the beginning of the film. (*not* the film's beginning)
- What's the name of this village?
- Do you know the cause of the problem?
- You can sit in the back of the car.
- Madrid is the capital of Spain.
64.1 Look at the family tree. Complete the sentences about the people in the family.

1. Brian is Helen's _______ husband.
2. Sarah is Daniel's _______ mother.
3. Helen is _______ Sarah's _______ wife.
4. James is _______ Sarah's _______ uncle.
5. James is _______ Daniel's _______ wife.
6. Helen is _______ Daniel's _______ husband.
7. Sarah is _______ James's _______ wife.
8. Paul is _______ Daniel's _______ husband.
9. Paul is _______ Daniel's _______ wife.
10. Helen is _______ Daniel's _______ wife.
11. Daniel is _______ Sarah's _______ nephew.

Helen and Brian are married. They have a son, James, and a daughter, Sarah. Sarah is married to Paul. Sarah and Paul have a son, Daniel.

64.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use one word only.

1. Whose is this? _______ Alice's _______
2. Whose is this? _______
3. And this? _______
4. And these? _______
5. And this? _______
6. And these? _______

64.3 Are these sentences OK? Change them where necessary.

1. I stayed at the house of my sister. _______
2. What is the name of this village? _______
3. Do you like the colour of this coat? _______
4. Do you know the phone number of Simon? _______
5. The job of my brother is very interesting. _______
6. Write your name at the top of the page. _______
7. For me, the morning is the best part of the day. _______
8. The favourite colour of Paula is blue. _______
9. When is the birthday of your mother? _______
10. The house of my parents isn't very big. _______
11. The walls of this house are very thin. _______
12. The car stopped at the end of the street. _______
13. Are you going to the party of Silvia next week? _______
14. The manager of the hotel is not here at the moment. _______
Unit 65  

a/an ...

He’s got a camera.  She’s waiting for a taxi.  It’s a beautiful day.

a ... = one thing or person:
- Rachel works in a bank.  (not in bank)
- Can I ask a question?  (not ask question)
- I haven’t got a computer.
- There’s a woman at the bus stop.

an (not a) before a/e/i/o/u:
- Do you want an apple or a banana?
- I’m going to buy a hat and an umbrella.
- There was an interesting programme on TV last night.

also an hour (h is not pronounced: an hour)
but a university (pronounced university)
   a European country (pronounced yuuropean)

another (= an + other) is one word:
- Can I have another cup of coffee?

We use a/an ... when we say what a thing or a person is. For example:
- The sun is a star.
- Football is a game.
- Dallas is a city in Texas.
- A mouse is an animal. It’s a small animal.
- Joe is a very nice person.

We use a/an ... for jobs etc.:
- A: What’s your job?
  B: I’m a dentist.  (not I’m dentist)
- ‘What does Mark do?’ ‘He’s an engineer.’
- Would you like to be a teacher?
- Beethoven was a composer.
- Picasso was a famous painter.
- Are you a student?
Exercises

65.1 Write a or an.

1 an old book 4 an airport 7 an university
2 an window 5 an new airport 8 an hour
3 an horse 6 an organisation 9 an economic problem

65.2 What are these things? Choose from the box.

bird fruit mountain river musical instrument
flower game planet tool vegetable

1 A duck is a bird.
2 A carrot is
3 Tennis is
4 A hammer is
5 Everest is
6 Saturn is
7 A banana is
8 The Amazon is
9 A rose is
10 A trumpet is

65.3 What are their jobs? Choose from the list and complete the sentences.

architect dentist shop assistant photographer
electrician nurse taxi driver

1 She's a dentist.
2 He's
3 She
4

5
6
7
8 And you? I'm

65.4 Write sentences. Choose from the two boxes. Use a/an where necessary.

I want to ask you. Rebecca works in
Tom never wears Jane wants to learn
I can't ride Mike lives in
My brother is This evening I'm going to

old house artist
party question
bookshop foreign language
hat bicycle
A

The plural of a noun is usually -s:

- singular (= one) → plural (= two or more)
  - a flower → some flowers
  - a train → two trains
  - one week → a few weeks
  - a nice place → some nice places
  - this student → these students

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-s / -sh / -ch / -x</th>
<th>-es</th>
<th>bus → buses</th>
<th>dish → dishes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>also</td>
<td>church → churches</td>
<td>box → boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>potato → potatoes</td>
<td>tomato → tomatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-y</td>
<td>-ies</td>
<td>baby → babies</td>
<td>dictionary → dictionaries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>party → parties</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but -ay / -ey / -oy</td>
<td>-ys</td>
<td>day → days</td>
<td>monkey → monkeys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>boy → boys</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>shelf → shelves</td>
<td>knife → knives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>wife → wives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B

These things are plural in English:

- scissors
glasses
- trousers
jeans
shorts
tights
- pyjamas

☐ Do you wear glasses?
☐ Where are the scissors? I need them.

You can also say a pair of scissors / a pair of trousers / a pair of pyjamas etc.:

☐ I need a new pair of jeans. or I need some new jeans. (not a new jeans)

C

Some plurals do not end in -s:

- this man → these men
- a woman → some women
- a child → many children

- one foot → two feet
- a tooth → all my teeth
- a mouse → some mice

- that sheep → those sheep
- a fish → a lot of fish

also a person → two people / some people / a lot of people etc.:

☐ She's a nice person.

but ☐ They are nice people. (not nice persons)

D

People is plural (= they), so we say people are / people have etc.:

☐ A lot of people speak English. (not speaks)
☐ I like the people here. They are very friendly.

Police is plural:

☐ The police want to talk to anybody who saw the accident. (not The police wants)

by → Unit 21, 63, 109 at/on → Units 103, 106–107 preposition + -ing → Unit 112
66.1 Write the plural.

1. flower —__________  5. umbrella —__________  9. family —__________
2. boat —__________    6. address —__________  10. foot —__________
3. woman —__________  7. knife —__________    11. holiday —__________
4. city —__________    8. sandwich —__________  12. potato —__________

66.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. There are a lot of —__________ in the field.
2. Gary is cleaning his —__________.
3. There are three —__________ at the bus stop.
4. Lucy has got two —__________.
5. There are a lot of —__________ in the river.
6. The —__________ are falling from the tree.

66.3 Are these sentences OK? Change the sentences where necessary.

1. I’m going to buy some flowers.  
   OK: I need a new pair of jeans. OR I need some new jeans.
2. I need a new jeans.
3. It’s a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree.
4. There was a woman in the car with two mens.
5. Sheep eat grass.
6. David is married and has three childs.
7. Most of my friend are student.
8. He put on his pyjama and went to bed.
9. We went fishing, but we didn’t catch many fish.
10. Do you know many persons in this town?
11. I like your trouser. Where did you get it?
12. The town centre is usually full of tourist.
13. I don’t like mice. I’m afraid of them.
14. This scissor isn’t very sharp.

66.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

1. It’s a nice place. Many people —__________ there on holiday.  go or goes?
2. Some people —__________ always late.  is or are?
3. The new city hall is not a very beautiful building. Most people —__________ like it.
4. A lot of people —__________ television every day.  don’t or doesn’t?
5. Three people —__________ injured in the accident.  watch or watches?
6. How many people —__________ in that house?  was or were?
7. —__________ the police know the cause of the explosion?  live or lives?
8. The police —__________ looking for the stolen car.  Do or Does?
9. I need my glasses, but I can’t find —__________ .  is or are?
10. I’m going to buy —__________ new jeans today.  it or them?
a or some?
a bottle / some water (countable/uncountable 1)

A noun can be countable or uncountable.

Countable nouns

For example: (a) car (a) man (a) bottle (a) house (a) key (an) idea (an) accident

You can use one/two/three (etc.) + countable nouns (you can count them):

- one bottle
- two bottles
- three men
- four houses

Countable nouns can be singular (= one) or plural (= two or more):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>a car</th>
<th>the car</th>
<th>my car</th>
<th>etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plural</td>
<td>cars</td>
<td>two cars</td>
<td>the cars</td>
<td>some cars</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I've got a car.
- New cars are very expensive.
- There aren't many cars in the car park.

You can't use the singular (car/bottle/key etc.) alone. You need a/an:
- We can't get into the house without a key. (not without key)

Uncountable nouns

For example: water air rice salt plastic money music tennis

You can't say one/two/three (etc.) + these things: one water two music

Uncountable nouns have only one form:

money the money my money some money much money etc.

- I've got some money.
- There isn't much money in the box.
- Money isn't everything.

You can't use a/an + uncountable nouns: money music water

But you can say a piece of ... / a bottle of ... etc. + uncountable noun:

- a bottle of water
- a piece of cheese
- a bowl of rice
- a carton of milk
- a bottle of perfume
- a cup of coffee
- a bar of chocolate
- a piece of music
- a game of tennis

a/an → Unit 65      countable/uncountable 2 → Unit 68
Exercises

67.1 What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write a/an if necessary. The names of these things are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bucket</th>
<th>envelope</th>
<th>money</th>
<th>sand</th>
<th>toothbrush</th>
<th>wallet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>egg</td>
<td>jug</td>
<td>salt</td>
<td>spoon</td>
<td>toothpaste</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. It's [salt]
2. It's [a spoon]
3. It's [a toothbrush]
4. It's [water]
5. It's [a newspaper]
6. It's [a pen]
7. It's [an egg]
8. It's [a loaf of bread]
9. It's [a scooter]
10. It's [a cup]
11. It's [a stick of butter]
12. It's [a letter]

67.2 Some of these sentences are OK, but some need a/an. Write a/an where necessary.

1. I haven't got watch. [a watch]
2. Do you like cheese? [Ok]
3. I never wear hat. [a hat]
4. Are you looking for job? [a job]
5. Kate doesn't eat meat. [a meal]
6. Kate eats apple every day. [an apple]
7. I'm going to party tonight. [a party]
8. Music is wonderful thing. [a thing]
9. Jamaica is island. [an island]
10. I don't need key. [a key]
11. Everybody needs food. [food]
12. I've got good idea. [an idea]
13. Can you drive car? [a car]
14. Do you want cup of coffee? [a cup of coffee]
15. I don't like coffee without milk. [a cup of coffee]
16. Don't go out without umbrella. [an umbrella]

67.3 What are these things? Write a ... of ... for each picture. Use the words in the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>milk</td>
<td>wood</td>
<td>glass</td>
<td>chocolate</td>
<td>tea</td>
<td>bread</td>
<td>paper</td>
<td>soup</td>
<td>wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bar</td>
<td>cup</td>
<td>loaf</td>
<td>bowl</td>
<td>milk</td>
<td>bread</td>
<td>chocolate</td>
<td>honey</td>
<td>piece</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. [a carton of milk]
2. [a stick of butter]
3. [a cup of tea]
4. [a chocolate]
5. [a piece of wood]
6. [a glass of milk]
7. [a loaf of bread]
8. [a piece of paper]
9. [a jar of honey]
a cake / some cake / some cakes (countable/uncountable 2)

a/an and some

a/an + singular countable nouns (car/apple/shoe etc.):
☐ I need a new car.
☐ Would you like an apple?

some + plural countable nouns (cars/apples/shoes etc.):
☐ I need some new shoes.
☐ Would you like some apples?

some + uncountable nouns (water/money/music etc.):
☐ I need some water.
☐ Would you like some cheese?
   (or Would you like a piece of cheese?)

Compare a and some:
☐ Nicole bought a hat, some shoes and some perfume.
☐ I read a newspaper, made some phone calls, and listened to some music.

Many nouns are sometimes countable and sometimes uncountable. For example:

a cake
some cakes
some cake or a piece of cake

a chicken
some chickens
some chicken or a piece of chicken

Compare a paper (= a newspaper) and some paper:
☐ I want something to read. I’m going to buy a paper.
but ☐ I want to make a shopping list. I need some paper / a piece of paper. (not a paper)

Be careful with:

advice bread furniture hair information news weather work

These nouns are usually uncountable. So you can’t say a/an ... (a bread, an advice), and they can’t be plural (advises, furnitures etc.).

☐ Can I talk to you? I need some advice. (not an advice)
☐ I’m going to buy some bread. (not a bread)
☐ They’ve got some very nice furniture in their house. (not furnitures)
☐ Silvia has got very long hair. (not hairs)
☐ I’d like some information about hotels in London. (not informations)
☐ Listen! I’ve just had some good news. (not a good news)
☐ It’s nice weather today. (not a nice weather)
☐ ‘Do you like your job?’ ‘Yes, but it’s hard work.’ (not a hard work)

We say a job (but not a work):
☐ I’ve got a new job. (not a new work)
Exercises

68.1 What did you buy? Use the pictures to write sentences (I bought ...).

1. I bought some perfume, a hat and some shoes.
2. I bought
3. I bought
4. I bought

68.2 Write sentences with Would you like a ... ? or Would you like some ... ?

1. Would you like some cheese? 4. ?
2. Would you like ? 5. ?
3. Would ? 6. ?

68.3 Write a/an or some.

1. I read a book and listened to some music.
2. I need money. I want to buy food.
3. We met interesting people at the party.
4. I’m going to open window to get fresh air.
5. Rachel didn’t eat much for lunch – only apple and bread.
6. We live in big house. There’s nice garden with beautiful trees.
7. I’m going to make a table. First I need wood.
8. Listen to me carefully. I’m going to give you advice.
9. I want to write a letter. I need paper and pen.

68.4 Which is right?

1. I’m going to buy some new shoe/shoes. (shoes is right)
2. Martin has got brown eye/eyes.
3. Paula has got short black hair/hairs.
4. The tour guide gave us some information/informations about the city.
5. We’re going to buy some new chair/chairs.
6. We’re going to buy some new furniture/furnitures.
7. It’s hard to find a work/job at the moment.
8. We had wonderful weather / a wonderful weather when we were on holiday.
a/an and the

a/an

There are three windows here.
a window = window 1 or 2 or 3

☐ I’ve got a car.
(there are many cars and I’ve got one)
☐ Can I ask a question? (there are many questions – can I ask one?)
☐ Is there a hotel near here? (there are many hotels – is there one near here?)
☐ Paris is an interesting city. (there are many interesting cities and Paris is one)
☐ Lisa is a student.
(there are many students and Lisa is one)

the

There is only one window here –
the window.

☐ I’m going to clean the car tomorrow.
(= my car)
☐ Can you repeat the question, please? (the question that you asked)
☐ We enjoyed our holiday. The hotel was very nice. (= our hotel)
☐ Paris is the capital of France.
(there is only one capital of France)
☐ Lisa is the youngest student in her class. (there is only one youngest student in her class)

Compare a and the:

☐ I bought a jacket and a shirt. The jacket was cheap, but the shirt was expensive.
(= the jacket and the shirt that I bought)

We say the … when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example:

the door / the ceiling / the floor / the carpet / the light etc. (of a room)
the roof / the garden / the kitchen / the bathroom etc. (of a house)
the centre / the station / the airport / the town hall etc. (of a town)

☐ ‘Where’s Tom? ‘In the kitchen.’
(= the kitchen of this house or flat)
☐ Turn off the light and close the door.
(= the light and the door of the room)
☐ Do you live far from the centre?
(= the centre of your town)
☐ I’d like to speak to the manager, please.
(= the manager of this shop etc.)
Exercises

69.1 Write a/an or the.

1. We enjoyed our trip. _______ hotel was very nice.
2. ‘Can I ask _______ question?’ ‘Sure. What do you want to know?’
4. ‘Where’s Tom?’ ‘He’s in _______ garden.’
5. Eve is _______ interesting person. You should meet her.
6. A: Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to _______ city centre?
   B: Yes, go straight on and then take _______ next turning left.
7. A: Shall we go out for _______ meal this evening?
   B: Yes, that’s _______ good idea.
8. It’s _______ nice morning. Let’s go for _______ walk.
9. Amanda is _______ student. When she finishes her studies, she wants to be _______ journalist.
   She lives with two friends in _______ apartment near _______ college where she is studying.
   _______ apartment is small, but she likes it.
10. Peter and Mary have got two children, _______ boy and _______ girl. _______ boy is seven
    years old, and _______ girl is three. Peter works in _______ factory. Mary hasn’t got _______ job
    at the moment.

69.2 Complete the sentences. Use a or the + these words:

airport cup dictionary door floor picture

1. Can you open _______ door, please?
2. How far is it to _______ airport?
3. Can I have _______ cup of coffee, please?
4. That’s _______ nice _______ dictionary – I like it.
5. Can you pass me _______ floor, please?
6. Why are you sitting on _______ chair?

69.3 These sentences are not correct. Put in a/an or the where necessary.

1. Don’t forget to turn off light when you go out.
2. Enjoy your trip, and don’t forget to send me postcard.
3. What is name of this village?
4. Canada is very big country.
5. What is largest city in Canada?
6. I like this room, but I don’t like colour of carpet.
7. ‘Are you OK?’ ‘No, I’ve got headache.’
8. We live in old house near station.
9. What is name of director of film we saw last night?
We use the when it is clear which thing or person we mean:

- What is the name of this street? (there is only one name)
- Who is the best player in your team? (there is only one best player)
- Can you tell me the time, please? (= the time now)
- My office is on the first floor. (= the first floor of the building)

Don’t forget the:
- Do you live near the city centre? (not near city centre)
- Excuse me, where is the nearest bank? (not where is nearest ...)

the same ...

- We live in the same street. (not in same street)
- ‘Are these two books different?’ ‘No, they’re the same.’ (not they’re same)

We say:

the sun / the moon / the world / the sky / the sea / the country
- The sky is blue and the sun is shining.
- Do you live in a town or in the country?

the police / the fire brigade / the army (of a city, country etc.)
- My brother is a soldier. He’s in the army.
- What do you think of the police? Do they do a good job?

the top / the end / the middle / the left etc.
- Write your name at the top of the page.
- My house is at the end of the street.
- The table is in the middle of the room.
- Do you drive on the right or on the left in your country?

(play) the piano / the guitar / the trumpet etc. (musical instruments)
- Paula is learning to play the piano.

the radio
- I listen to the radio a lot.

the Internet
- Do you use the Internet much?

We do not use the with:

television / TV
- I watch TV a lot.
- What’s on television tonight?

but Can you turn off the television? (= the TV set)

breakfast / lunch / dinner
- What did you have for breakfast? (not the breakfast)
- Dinner is ready!

next / last + week/month/year/summer/Monday etc.
- I’m not working next week. (not the next week)
- Did you have a holiday last summer? (not the last summer)
Exercises  

70.1 Put in the where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.

1. What is name of this street?  
2. What's on television tonight?  
3. Our apartment is on second floor.  
4. Would you like to go to moon?  
5. Which is best hotel in this town?  
6. What time is lunch?  
7. How far is it to city centre?  
8. We're going away at end of May.  
9. What are you doing next weekend?  
10. I didn't like her first time I met her.  
11. I'm going out after dinner.  
12. Internet is a good way of getting information.  
13. My sister got married last month.  
14. My dictionary is on top shelf on right.  
15. We live in country about ten miles from nearest town.

70.2 Complete the sentences. Use the same + these words:

age colour problem street time

1. I live in North Street and you live in North Street. We live in ____________ the same street _________.
2. I arrived at 8.30 and you arrived at 8.30. We arrived at ___________________________.
3. Jim is 25 and Sue is 25. Jim and Sue are ___________________________.
4. My shirt is dark blue and so is my jacket. My shirt and jacket are ___________________________.
5. I've got no money and you've got no money. We've got ___________________________.

70.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the if necessary.

1. The sun is shining.  
2. She's playing ____________.  
3. They're having ____________.  
4. He's watching ____________.  
5. They're swimming in ____________.  
6. Tim's name is at ____________ of the list.

70.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list. Use the if necessary.

capital dinner police lunch middle name sky television

1. We had ____________ at a restaurant last night.
2. We stayed at a very nice hotel, but I don't remember ___________________________.
3. ____________________________ is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.
4. Sometimes there are some good films on ___________________________. late at night.
5. Somebody was trying to break into the shop, so I called ___________________________.
6. Tokyo is ____________________________ of Japan.
7. ‘What did you have for ____________________________ ?’ ‘A salad.’
8. I woke up in ____________________________ of the night.
We say:

(go) **to work**, (be) **at work**, start **work**, finish **work**
- Bye! I’m **going to work** now. *(not to the work)*
- I **finish work** at 5 o’clock every day.

(go) **to school**, (be) **at school**, start **school**, leave **school** etc.
- What did you learn **at school** today? *(not at the school)*
- Some children don’t like **school**.

(go) **to university/college**, (be) **at university/college**
- Helen wants to **go to university** when she leaves **school**.
- What did you study **at college**?

(go) **to hospital**, (be) **in hospital**
- Jack had an accident. He had to **go to hospital**.

(go) **to prison**, (be) **in prison**
- Why is he **in prison**? What did he do?

(go) **to church**, (be) **in/at church**
- David usually goes **to church** on Sundays.

(go) **to bed**, (be) **in bed**
- I’m tired. I’m **going to bed**. *(not to the bed)*
- ‘Where’s Jane?’ ‘She’s **in bed**.’

(go) **home**, (be) **at home** etc.
- I’m tired. I’m **going home**. *(not to home)*
- Are you going out tonight, or are you **staying at home**?

We say:

(go to) **the cinema** / **the theatre** / **the bank** / **the post office** / **the station** / **the airport** / **the city centre**
- I never go to **the theatre**, but I go to **the cinema** a lot.
- ‘Are you going to **the bank**?’ ‘No, to **the post office**.’
- The number 5 bus goes to **the airport**; the number 8 goes to **the city centre**.

(go to) **the doctor**, **the dentist**
- You’re not well. Why don’t you go to **the doctor**?
- I have to go to **the dentist** tomorrow.
71.1 Where are these people? Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the.

1. He’s in ___________.  
2. They’re at ___________.  
3. She’s in ___________.  
4. She’s at ___________.  
5. They’re at ___________.  
6. He’s in ___________.

71.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the list. Use the if necessary.
- bank  - bed  - church  - home  - post office  - school  - station

1. I need to change some money. I have to go to ___________.
2. David usually goes to ___________ on Sundays.
3. In Britain, children go to ___________ from the age of five.
4. There were a lot of people at ___________ waiting for the train.
5. I phoned you last night, but you weren’t at ___________.
6. I’m going to ___________ now. Goodnight!
7. I’m going to ___________ to get some stamps.

71.3 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the.

1. If you want to catch a plane, you ___________.
2. If you want to see a film, you go to ___________.
3. If you are tired and you want to sleep, you ___________.
4. If you rob a bank and the police catch you, you ___________.
5. If you have a problem with your teeth, you ___________.
6. If you want to study after you leave school, you ___________.
7. If you are badly injured in an accident, you ___________.

71.4 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1. We went to cinema last night.
2. I finish work at 5 o’clock every day.
3. Lisa wasn’t feeling well yesterday, so she went to doctor.
4. I wasn’t feeling well this morning, so I stayed in bed.
5. Why is Angela always late for work?
6. ‘Where are your children?’ ‘They’re at school.’
7. We have no money in bank.
8. When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday.
9. What time do you usually get home from work?
10. Do you live far from city centre?
11. ‘Where shall we meet?’ ‘At station.’
12. Jim is ill. He’s in hospital.
13. Kate takes her children to school every day.
14. Would you like to go to university?
15. Would you like to go to theatre this evening?
Do not use the for general ideas:

- I like music, especially classical music.  
  (not the music ... the classical music)
- We don't eat meat very often. (not the meat)
- Life is not possible without water.  
  (not The life ... the water)
- I hate exams. (not the exams)
- Do you know a shop that sells foreign newspapers?
- I'm not very good at writing letters.

Do not use the for games and sports:

- My favourite sports are football and skiing. (not the football ... the skiing)

Do not use the for languages or school subjects (history/geography/physics/biology etc.):

- Do you think English is difficult? (not the English)
- Tom's brother is studying physics and chemistry.

flowers or the flowers?

Compare:

- Flowers are beautiful.  
  (= flowers in general)
- I don't like cold weather.  
  (= cold weather in general)
- We don't eat fish very often. (= fish in general)
- Are you interested in history?  
  (= history in general)
- I love this garden.  
  The flowers are beautiful.  
  (= the flowers in this garden)
- The weather isn't very good today.  
  (= the weather today)
- We had a great meal last night. The fish was excellent.  
  (= the fish we ate last night)
- Do you know much about the history of your country?
Exercises

72.1 What do you think about these things?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>big cities</th>
<th>computer games</th>
<th>exams</th>
<th>jazz</th>
<th>parties</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chocolate</td>
<td>dogs</td>
<td>housework</td>
<td>museums</td>
<td>tennis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choose seven of these things and write sentences with:

I like ... I don't like ... I love ... I hate ... or ... is/are all right

1 I hate exams, or I like exams, or Exams are all right, (etc.)
2
3
4
5
6
7
8

72.2 Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

| I'm (very) interested in ... | I know a lot about ... | I don't know much about ... |
| I'm not interested in ...    | I know a little about ... | I don't know anything about ... |

1 (history) I'm very interested in history.
2 (politics) I know a lot about politics.
3 (sport)
4 (art)
5 (astronomy)
6 (economics)

72.3 Which is right?

1 My favourite sport is football / the football. (football is right)
2 I like this hotel. Rooms / The rooms are very nice. (The rooms is right)
3 Everybody needs friends / the friends.
4 Jane doesn't go to parties / the parties very often.
5 I went shopping this morning. Shops / The shops were very busy.
6 'Where's milk / the milk?' 'It's in the fridge.'
7 I don't like milk / the milk. I never drink it.
8 'Do you do any sports?' 'Yes, I play basketball / the basketball.'
9 'What does your brother do?' 'He sells computers / the computers.'
10 We went for a swim in the river. Water / The water was very cold.
11 I don't like swimming in cold water / the cold water.
12 Excuse me, can you pass salt / the salt, please?
13 I like this town. I like people / the people here.
14 Vegetables / The vegetables are good for you.
15 Houses / The houses in this street are all the same.
16 I can't sing this song. I don't know words / the words.
17 I enjoy taking photographs / the photographs. It's my hobby.
18 Do you want to see photographs / the photographs that I took when I was on holiday?
19 English / The English is used a lot in international business / the international business.
20 Money / The money doesn't always bring happiness / the happiness.
the ... (names of places)

A

Places (continents, countries, states, islands, towns etc.)

In general we do not use the with names of places:
- France is a very large country. (not the France)
- Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
- Corsica is an island in the Mediterranean.
- Peru is in South America.

But we use the in names with ‘republic’/’states’/’kingdom’:
- the Czech Republic
- the United States of America (the USA)
- the United Kingdom (the UK)

B

the -s (plural names)

We use the with plural names of countries/islands/mountains:
- the Netherlands
- the Canary Islands
- the Philippines
- the Alps

C

Seas, rivers etc.

We use the with names of oceans/seas/rivers/canals:
- the Atlantic (Ocean)
- the Mediterranean (Sea)
- the Amazon
- the Nile
- the Suez Canal
- the Black Sea

D

Places in towns (streets, buildings etc.)

In general we do not use the with names of streets, squares etc.:
- Kevin lives in Newton Street.
- Where is Highfield Road, please?
- Times Square is in New York.

We do not use the with names of airports, stations and many other important buildings:

Kennedy Airport
Victoria Station
Westminster Abbey
Cambridge University
London Zoo
Edinburgh Castle

But we use the with names of most hotels, museums, theatres and cinemas:
- the Regent Hotel
- the Science Museum
- the National Theatre
- the Odeon (cinema)

E

the ... of ...

We use the + names with ... of ...
- the Museum of Modern Art
- the Great Wall of China
- the University of California
- the Tower of London

We say the north / the south / the east / the west (of ...):
- I’ve been to the north of Italy, but not to the south.

the → Units 69–72
73.1 Answer these geography questions. Choose from the box. Use The if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Word(s)</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Cairo</td>
<td>is the capital of Egypt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>The Atlantic</td>
<td>is between Africa and America.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>is a country in northern Europe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td>is a river in South America.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td>is the largest continent in the world.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>is the largest ocean.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td>is a river in Europe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td>is a country in East Africa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td>is between Canada and Mexico.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td>are mountains in South America.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td>is the capital of Thailand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td>are mountains in central Europe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td>is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
<td>is an island in the Caribbean.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td>are a group of islands near Florida.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

73.2 Write the where necessary. If the sentence is already correct, write OK.

1 Kevin lives in Newton Street.
2 We went to see a play at National Theatre. **OK**
3 Have you ever been to China?
4 Have you ever been to Philippines?
5 Have you ever been to south of France?
6 Can you tell me where Regal Cinema is?
7 Can you tell me where Merrion Street is?
8 Can you tell me where Museum of Art is?
9 Europe is bigger than Australia.
10 Belgium is smaller than Netherlands.
11 Which river is longer – Mississippi or Nile?
12 Did you go to National Gallery when you were in London?
13 We stayed at Park Hotel in Hudson Road.
14 How far is it from Trafalgar Square to Victoria Station (in London)?
15 Rocky Mountains are in North America.
16 Texas is famous for oil and cowboys.
17 I hope to go to United States next year.
18 Mary comes from west of Ireland.
19 Alan is a student at Manchester University.
20 Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean.

→ Additional exercises 33–34 (pages 269–70)
this/that/these/those

We use *this*/that/*these*/those with a noun (*this picture / those girls* etc.) or without a noun:

- This hotel is expensive, but it’s very nice.
- Who’s that girl? ‘I don’t know.’
- Do you like these shoes? I bought them last week.
- Those apples look nice. Can I have one?
- This is a nice hotel, but it’s very expensive.
- ‘Excuse me, is this your bag?’ ‘Oh yes, thank you.’
- Who’s that? (= Who is that person?)
- Which shoes do you prefer – these or those?

that = something that has happened:

- ‘I’m sorry I forgot to phone you.’ ‘That’s all right.’
- That was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.

that = what somebody has just said:

- ‘You’re a teacher, aren’t you?’ ‘Yes, that’s right.’
- ‘Martin has got a new job.’ ‘Has he? I didn’t know that.’
- ‘I’m going on holiday next week.’ ‘Oh, that’s nice.’

We use *this* ... and *is that* ... ? on the telephone:

- Hi Sarah, *this* is David.
  (this = the speaker)
- Is *that* Sarah?
  (that = the other person)

We use *this* ... to introduce people:

- A: Brian, *this* is Chris.
- B: Hello, Chris – nice to meet you.
- C: Hi.

this one / that one → Unit 75
74.1 Complete the sentences. Use this/that/these/those + these words:

1. Do you like these shoes?
2. Who lives in that house?
3. How much are these postcards?
4. Look at those birds.
5. Excuse me, is this seat free?
6. These plates are dirty.

74.2 Write questions: Is this/that your ... ? or Are these/those your ... ?

1. Is this your bag?
2. Is that your ambulance?
3. Is this book yours?
4. Are those books yours?
5. Is that your bicycle?
6. Are those your keys?
7. Are those your keys?
8. Is this your watch?
9. Are those your glasses?

74.3 Complete the sentences with this is or that’s or that.

1. A: I’m sorry I’m late.
   B: That’s all right.
2. A: I can’t come to the party tomorrow.
   B: Oh, a pity. Why not?
   Jane: Oh, hi Sue. How are you?
   B: not true!
5. A: Beth plays the piano very well.
   B: Does she? I didn’t know.
6. Mark meets Paul’s sister, Helen.
   Paul: Mark, my sister, Helen.
   Mark: Hi, Helen.
7. A: I’m sorry I was angry yesterday.
   B: OK. Forget it!
8. A: You’re a friend of Tim’s, aren’t you?
   B: Yes, right.
one (＝ a …)

These chocolates are good. Would you like one?

Would you like one? = Would you like a chocolate?

one = a/an … (a chocolate / an apple etc.)

I need a pen. Have you got one? (one = a pen)
A: Is there a bank near here?
B: Yes, there’s one at the end of this street. (one = a bank)

one and ones

one (singular)

Which one? = Which hat?

one = hat/car/girl etc.

car/girl etc.

Which one? = Which hat?

one = hat/car/girl etc.

car/girl etc.

this one / that one

Which car is yours? This one or that one? (= this car or that car)

the one …

A: Which hotel did you stay at?
B: The one opposite the station.

I found this key. Is it the one you lost?

the … one

I don’t like the black coat, but I like the brown one.

Don’t buy that camera. Buy the other one.

a/an … one

This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?

That biscuit was nice. I’m going to have another one.

ones (plural)

Which ones? = Which flowers?

ones = flowers/cars/girls etc.

flowers/cars/girls etc.

these/those or these ones / those ones

Which flowers do you want? These or those? or
These ones or those ones?

the ones …

A: Which books are yours?
B: The ones on the table.

I found these keys. Are they the ones you lost?

the … ones

I don’t like the red shoes, but I like the green ones.

Don’t buy those apples. Buy the other ones.

some … ones

These cups are dirty. Can we have some clean ones?

My shoes are very old. I’m going to buy some new ones.
75.1 A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B's answers. Use one (not a/an ...) in the answers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B doesn't need a car</th>
<th>B has just had a cup of coffee</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>there's a chemist in Mill Road</td>
<td>B is going to get a bike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B hasn't got a pen</td>
<td>B hasn't got an umbrella</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 A: Can you lend me a pen?   B: I'm sorry, I haven't got one.
2 A: Would you like to have a car?   B: No, I don't
3 A: Have you got a bike?     B: No, but
4 A: Can you lend me an umbrella?   B: I'm sorry, but
5 A: Would you like a cup of coffee?   B: No, thank you.
6 A: Is there a chemist near here?   B: Yes,

75.2 Complete the sentences. Use a/an ... one. Use the words in the list.

- better
- big
- clean
- different
- new
- old

1 This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?
2 I'm going to sell my car and buy a big one.
3 That's not a very good photograph, but this is a better one.
4 I want today's newspaper. This is the old one.
5 This box is too small. I need a bigger one.
6 Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to a different one.

75.3 A is talking to B. Use the information to complete the conversations. Use one/ones.

1 A stayed at a hotel. It was opposite the station.
   A: We stayed at a hotel.
   B: Which one?
   A: The one opposite the station.

2 A sees some shoes in a shop window. They're green.
   A: I like those shoes.
   B: Which ones?
   A: The green ones.

3 A is looking at a house. It has a red door.
   A: That's a nice house.
   B: Which one?
   A: The red one.

4 A is looking at some CDs. They're on the top shelf.
   A: Are those your CDs?
   B: Which ones?
   A: The ones on the top shelf.

5 A is looking at a jacket in a shop. It's black.
   A: Do you like that jacket?
   B: Which one?
   A: The black one.

6 A is looking at a picture. It's on the wall.
   A: That's an interesting picture.
   B: Which one?
   A: The one on the wall.

7 A sees a girl in a group of people. She's tall with long hair.
   A: Do you know that girl?
   B: Which one?
   A: The one with long hair.

8 A is looking at some flowers in the garden.
   They're yellow.
   A: Those flowers are beautiful.
   B: Which ones?
   A: The yellow ones.

9 A is looking at a man in a restaurant. He has a moustache and glasses.
   A: Who's that man?
   B: Which one?
   A: The man with a moustache and glasses.

10 A took some photos at the party last week.
   A: Did I show you my photos?
   B: Which ones?
   A: The ones from the party.
Unit 76

some and any

**some**

I've got some money.

- Use **some** in positive sentences:
  - I'm going to buy some clothes.
  - There's some ice in the fridge.
  - We made some mistakes.

**any**

I haven't got any money.

- Use **any** in negative sentences:
  - I'm not going to buy any clothes.
  - There isn't any milk in the fridge.
  - We didn't make any mistakes.

**any and some** in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use **any** (not **some**):

- Is there any ice in the fridge?
- Has he got any friends?
- Do you need any help?

We normally use **some** (not **any**) when we offer things (Would you like ...?):

- A: Would you like some coffee?
  - B: Yes, please.

or when we ask for things (Can I have ...? etc.):

- A: Can I have some soup, please?
  - B: Yes. Help yourself.
- A: Can you lend me some money?
  - B: Sure. How much do you need?

**some and any** without a noun

- I didn't take any photographs, but Jane took some. (= some photographs)
- You can have some coffee, but I don't want any. (= any coffee)
- I've just made some coffee. Would you like some? (= some coffee)
- 'Where's your luggage?' ‘I haven't got any.’ (= any luggage)
- ‘Are there any biscuits?’ ‘Yes, there are some in the kitchen.’ (= some biscuits)

**something / somebody (or someone)**

- She said something.
- I saw somebody (or someone).
- Would you like something to eat?
- Somebody's at the door.

**anything / anybody (or anyone)**

- She didn't say anything.
- I didn't see anybody (or anyone).
- Are you doing anything tonight?
- Where's Sue? Has anybody seen her?
76.1 Write some or any.
1 I bought _________ cheese, but I didn’t buy _________ bread.
2 I’m going to the post office. I need _________ stamps.
3 There aren’t _________ shops in this part of town.
4 Gary and Alice haven’t got _________ children.
5 Have you got _________ brothers or sisters?
6 There are _________ beautiful flowers in the garden.
7 Do you know _________ good hotels in London?
8 ‘Would you like _________ tea?’ ‘Yes, please.’
9 When we were on holiday, we visited _________ very interesting places.
10 Don’t buy _________ rice. We don’t need _________.
11 I went out to buy _________ oranges, but they didn’t have _________ in the shop.
12 I’m thirsty. Can I have _________ water, please?

76.2 Complete the sentences. Use some or any + the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>air</th>
<th>cheese</th>
<th>help</th>
<th>milk</th>
<th>questions</th>
<th>shampoo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>batteries</td>
<td>friends</td>
<td>languages</td>
<td>photographs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 I want to wash my hair. Is there _________ shampoo?
2 The police want to talk to you. They want to ask you ________________________________.
3 I haven’t got my camera, so I can’t take ________________________________.
4 Do you speak _________ foreign _________?
5 Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant with ________________________________ of mine.
6 Can I have ________________________________ in my coffee, please?
7 The radio isn’t working. There aren’t ________________________________ in it.
8 It’s hot in this office. I’m going out for ________________________________.
9 A: Would you like ________________________________?
   B: No, thank you. I’ve had enough to eat.
10 I can do this job alone. I don’t need ________________________________.

76.3 Complete the sentences. Use some or any.
1 Jane didn’t take any photographs, but _________ (I/take)
2 ‘Where’s your luggage?’ ‘I haven’t got any.’ (I/not have)
3 ‘Do you need any money?’ ‘No, thank you. ____________’ (I/not have)
4 ‘Can you lend me some money?’ ‘I’m sorry, but ____________’ (I/not have)
5 The tomatoes in the shop didn’t look very good, so ____________ (I/not buy)
6 There were some nice oranges in the shop, so ____________ (I/buy)
7 ‘How many phone calls did you make yesterday?’ ‘___________’ (I/not make)

76.4 Write something/somebody or anything/anybody.
1 A woman stopped me and said __________________, but I didn’t understand.
2 ‘What’s wrong?’ ‘There’s __________________ in my eye.’
3 Do you know __________________ about politics?
4 I went to the shop, but I didn’t buy __________________.
5 __________________ has broken the window. I don’t know who.
6 There isn’t __________________ in the bag. It’s empty.
7 I’m looking for my keys. Has __________________ seen them?
8 Would you like __________________ to drink?
9 I didn’t eat __________________ because I wasn’t hungry.
10 This is a secret. Please don’t tell __________________.
not + any  no  none

The car park is empty.
There aren't any cars. There are no cars.
How many cars are there in the car park? None.

not (-n't) + any
☐ There aren't any cars in the car park.
☐ Tracey and Jeff haven't got any children.
☐ You can have some coffee, but I don't want any.

no + noun (no cars / no garden etc.)
no ... = not any or not a
☐ There are no cars in the car park. (= there aren't any cars)
☐ We've got no coffee. (= we haven't got any coffee)
☐ It's a nice house, but there's no garden. (= there isn't a garden)
We use no ... especially after have (got) and there is/are.

negative verb + any = positive verb + no
☐ They haven't got any children.  or  They've got no children.
(not They haven't got no children)
☐ There isn't any sugar in your coffee.  or  There's no sugar in your coffee.

no and none

Use no + noun (no money / no children etc.):
☐ We've got no money.
☐ Everything was OK. There were no problems.

Use none alone (without a noun):
☐ 'How much money have you got?'  'None.' (= no money)
☐ 'Were there any problems?'  'No, none.' (= no problems)

none and no-one

none = 0 (zero)
no-one = nobody

None is an answer for How much? / How many? (things or people):
☐ 'How much money have you got?'  'None.' (= no money)
☐ 'How many people did you meet?'  'None.' (= no people)

No-one is an answer for Who?:
☐ 'Who did you meet?'  'No-one.'  or  'Nobody.'
Exercises

77.1 Write these sentences again with no.

1 We haven't got any money. We've got no money.
2 There aren't any shops near here. There are no shops near here.
3 Carla hasn't got any free time. She hasn't got any free time.
4 There isn't a light in this room. There is no light in this room.

Write these sentences again with any.

5 We've got no money. We haven't got any money.
6 There's no milk in the fridge. There isn't any milk in the fridge.
7 There are no buses today. There aren't any buses today.
8 Tom has got no brothers or sisters. Tom hasn't got any brothers or sisters.

77.2 Write no or any.

1 There's no sugar in your coffee.
2 My brother is married, but he hasn't got any children.
3 Sue doesn't speak any foreign languages.
4 I'm afraid there's no coffee. Would you like some tea?
5 'Look at those birds!' 'Birds? Where? I can't see any birds.'
6 'Do you know where Jessica is?' 'No, I've got no idea.'

Write no, any or none.

7 There aren't any pictures on the wall.
8 The weather was cold, but there was no wind.
9 I wanted to buy some oranges, but they didn't have any in the shop.
10 Everything was correct. There were no mistakes.
11 'How much luggage have you got?' 'None.'
12 'How much luggage have you got?' 'I haven't got any.'

77.3 Complete the sentences. Use any or no + the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>answer</th>
<th>difference</th>
<th>friends</th>
<th>furniture</th>
<th>heating</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>money</td>
<td>problems</td>
<td>questions</td>
<td>queue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Everything was OK. There were no problems.
2 Jack and Emily would like to go on holiday, but they've got no money.
3 I'm not going to answer any questions.
4 He's always alone. He's got no friends.
5 There is no difference between these two machines. They're exactly the same.
6 There wasn't anything empty in the room. It was completely empty.
7 I tried to phone you yesterday, but there was no answer.
8 The house is cold because there isn't any heating.
9 There was no queue outside the cinema, so we didn't have to wait to get our tickets.

77.4 Write short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use none where necessary.

1 How many letters did you write yesterday? Two.
2 How many sisters have you got? A lot.
3 How much coffee did you drink yesterday? None.
4 How many photographs have you taken today? None.
5 How many legs has a snake got? None.
not + anybody/anyone
nobody/no-one
(for people)

- There isn’t anybody in the room.
- There is nobody in the room.
- A: Who is in the room?
  B: Nobody. / No-one.

-body and -one are the same:
 anybody = anyone
 nobody = no-one

not + anything
nothing
(for things)

- There isn’t anything in the bag.
- There is nothing in the bag.
- A: What’s in the bag?
  B: Nothing.

not + anybody/anyone
I don’t know anybody (or anyone) here.

nobody = not + anybody
no-one = not + anyone
- I’m lonely. I’ve got nobody to talk to.
  (= I haven’t got anybody)
- The house is empty. There is no-one in it. (= There isn’t anyone in it.)

not + anything
I can’t remember anything.

nothing = not + anything
- She said nothing.
  (= She didn’t say anything.)
- There’s nothing to eat.
  (= There isn’t anything to eat.)

You can use nobody/no-one/nothing at the beginning of a sentence or alone (to answer a question):

- The house is empty. Nobody lives there. (not Anybody lives there)
  ‘Who did you speak to?’ ‘No-one.’

- Nothing happened.
  (not Anything happened)
  ‘What did you say?’ ‘Nothing.’

Remember: negative verb + anybody/anyone/anything
positive verb + nobody/no-one/nothing

- He doesn’t know anything. (not He doesn’t know nothing)
- Don’t tell anybody. (not Don’t tell nobody)
- There is nothing to do in this town. (not There isn’t nothing)

some and any → Unit 76  any and no → Unit 77  somebody/anything/nowhere etc. → Unit 79
Exercises

78.1 Write these sentences again with nobody/no-one or nothing.

1 There isn’t anything in the bag. There’s nothing in the bag.
2 There isn’t anybody in the office. There’s
3 I haven’t got anything to do. I
4 There isn’t anything on TV.
5 There wasn’t anyone at home.
6 We didn’t find anything.

78.2 Write these sentences again with anybody/anyone or anything.

1 There’s nothing in the bag. There isn’t anything in the bag.
2 There was nobody on the bus. There wasn’t
3 I’ve got nothing to read.
4 I’ve got no-one to help me.
5 She heard nothing.
6 We’ve got nothing for dinner.

78.3 Answer these questions with nobody/no-one or nothing.

1a What did you say? Nothing. 5a Who knows the answer?
2a Who saw you? Nobody. 6a What did you buy?
3a What do you want? 7a What happened?
4a Who did you meet? 8a Who was late?

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.
Use nobody/no-one/nothing or anybody/anyone/anything:

1b I didn’t say anything.
2b Nobody saw me.
3b I don’t
4b I
5b I’m afraid I can’t help you. There’s the answer.
6b
7b
8b

78.4 Complete the sentences. Use: nobody / no-one / nothing or anybody / anyone / anything

1 That house is empty. Nobody lives there.
2 Jack has a bad memory. He can’t remember anything.
3 Be quiet! Don’t say.
4 I didn’t know about the meeting. Told me.
5 ‘What did you have to eat?’ I wasn’t hungry.
6 I didn’t eat. I wasn’t hungry.
7 Helen was sitting alone. She wasn’t with.
8 I’m afraid I can’t help you. There’s I can do.
9 I don’t know about car engines.
10 The museum is free. It doesn’t cost to go in.
11 I heard a knock on the door, but when I opened it, there was there.
12 The hotel receptionist spoke very fast. I didn’t understand.
13 ‘What are you doing tonight?’ Why?’
14 Helen has gone away. knows where she is. She didn’t tell where she was going.
somebody/anything/nowhere etc.

**Somebody** (or Someone) has broken the window.

**Somebody**/**someone**
- a person, but we don't know who

She has got something in her mouth.

**something** = a thing, but we don't know what

Tom lives **somewhere** near London.

**somewhere** = in/to a place, but we don't know where

**people** (**-body** or **-one**)

**somebody** or **someone**
- There is **somebody** (**or someone**) at the door.
- Is there **anybody** (**or anyone**) at the door? No.
- There isn't **anybody** (**or anyone**) at the door.
- There is **nobody** (**or no-one**) at the door.

**anybody** or **anyone**

**nobody** or **no-one**

- **-body** and **-one** are the same: **somebody** = **someone**, **nobody** = **no-one** etc.

**things** (**-thing**)

**something**
- Lucy said **something**, but I didn't understand what she said.
- Are you doing **anything** at the weekend?
- I was angry, but I didn't say **anything**.

**anything**

**nothing**
- 'What did you say?' 'Nothing.'

**places** (**-where**)

**somewhere**
- Ruth's parents live **somewhere** in the south of England.
- Did you go **anywhere** interesting for your holidays?
- I'm staying here. I'm **not** going **anywhere**.
- I don't like this town. There is **nowhere** to go.

**anywhere**

**nowhere**

**something/anything** etc. + **adjective** (**big/cheap/interesting** etc.)

- Did you meet **anybody interesting** at the party?
- We always go to the same place. Let's go **somewhere different**.
- 'What's that letter?' 'It's **nothing** important.'

**something/anything** etc. + **to** ...

- I'm hungry. I want **something to eat**. (= something that I can eat)
- Tony hasn't got **anybody to talk** to. (= anybody that he can talk to)
- There is **nowhere to go** in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)

some and any → **Unit 76**  any and no → **Unit 77**  anybody/nothing etc. → **Unit 78**  everything/-body/-where → **Unit 80**
Exercises

79.1 Write somebody (or someone) / something / somewhere.

1 Lucy said something. What did she say?
2 I've lost something. What have you lost?
3 Sue and Tom went somewhere. Where did they go?
4 I'm going to phone somewhere. Who are you going to phone?

79.2 Write nobody (or no-one) / nothing / nowhere.

1a What did you say? Nothing.
2a Where are you going? Nowhere.
3a What do you want? Nothing.
4a Who are you looking for? Nowhere.

Now answer the same questions with full sentences. Use not + anybody/anything/anywhere.

1b I didn't say anything.
2b I'm not anywhere.
3b I want to tell you something.
4b I'm waiting for someone.

79.3 Write somebody/anything/nowhere etc.

1 It's dark. I can't see anything.
2 Tom lives somewhere near London.
3 Do you know anything about computers?
4 'Listen!' 'What? I can't hear something.'
5 'What are you doing here?' 'I'm waiting for someone.'
6 We need to talk. There's someone I want to tell you.
7 'Did you see the accident?' 'No, I don't know.'
8 We weren't hungry, so we didn't eat anything.
9 'What's going to happen?' 'I don't know. Someone knows.'
10 'Do you know anyone in Paris?' 'Yes, a few people.'
11 'What's in that cupboard?' 'Nothing. It's empty.'
12 I'm looking for my glasses. I can't find them anywhere.
13 I don't like cold weather. I want to live somewhere warm.
14 Is there anything interesting on television tonight?
15 Have you ever met anyone famous?

79.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

something anything nothing
don't eat park sit
something anywhere nowhere
drink go read stay

1 We don't go out very much because there's nowhere to go.
2 There isn't any food in the house. We haven't got anything.
3 I'm bored. I've got nothing to do.
4 'Why are you standing?' 'Because there isn't anything.'
5 'Would you like something to drink?' 'Yes, please — a glass of water.'
6 If you're going to the city centre, take the bus. Don't drive because there's nowhere to park.
7 I want to go to the library. I'm going to buy a magazine.
8 I need somewhere to eat in London. Can you recommend a hotel?
every and all

every

Every house in the street is the same.  
every house in the street =
all the houses in the street

We use every + singular noun (every house / every country etc.):
- Sarah has been to every country in Europe.
- Every summer we have a holiday by the sea.
- She looks different every time I see her.

Use a singular verb after every ...
- Every house in the street is the same. (not are the same)
- Every country has a national flag. (not have)

Compare every and all:
- Every student in the class passed the exam.
- Every country has a national flag.
- All the students in the class passed the exam.
- All countries have a national flag.

every day and all day

every day = on all days:

how often?

SUN  MON  TUE  WED  THUR  FRI  SAT

EVERY DAY

- It rained every day last week.
- Bill watches TV for about two hours every evening. (= on all evenings)
- Also every morning/night/summer etc.

all day = the complete day:

how long?

beginning
of the day

ALL DAY

end of
the day

- It rained all day yesterday.
- On Monday, I watched TV all evening. (= the complete evening)
- Also all morning/night/summer etc.

everybody (or everyone) / everything / everywhere

everybody or everyone
(people)

everything
(things)

everywhere
(places)

□ Everybody (or Everyone) needs friends. (= all people need friends)
□ Have you got everything you need? (= all the things you need)
□ I lost my watch. I’ve looked everywhere for it. (= I’ve looked in all places)

Use a singular verb after everybody/everyone/everything:
□ Everybody has problems. (not Everybody have)
80.1 Complete the sentences. Use every + these words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>day</th>
<th>room</th>
<th>student</th>
<th>time</th>
<th>word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Every</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>student</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Every student in the class passed the exam.
2. My job is very boring. The same.
3. Kate is a very good tennis player. When we play, she wins.
4. Times in the hotel has satellite TV.
5. ‘Did you understand what she said?’ ‘Most of it, but not.’

80.2 Complete the sentences with every day or all day.

1. Yesterday it rained ________.
2. I buy a newspaper ________, but sometimes I don’t read it.
3. I’m not going out tomorrow. I’ll be at home ________.
4. I usually drink about four cups of coffee ________.
5. Paula was ill yesterday, so she stayed in bed ________.
6. I’m tired now because I’ve been working hard ________.
7. Last year we went to the seaside for a week, and it rained ________.

80.3 Write every or all.

1. Bill watches TV for about two hours ________.
2. Julia gets up at 6.30 ________.
3. The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat outside ________.
4. I’m going away on Monday. I’ll be away ________.
5. ‘How often do you go skiing?’ ‘________ year. Usually in March.’
6. A: Were you at home at 10 o’clock yesterday?
   B: Yes, I was at home ________.
7. My sister loves new cars. She buys one ________.
8. I saw Sam at the party, but he didn’t speak to me ________.
9. We go away on holiday for two or three weeks ________.

80.4 Write everybody/everything/everywhere.

1. Everybody ________ needs friends.
2. Chris knows ________ about computers.
3. I like the people here. ________ is very friendly.
4. This is a nice hotel. It’s comfortable and ________ is very clean.
5. Kevin never uses his car. He goes ________ by motorcycle.
6. Let’s get something to eat. ________ is hungry.
7. Sue’s house is full of books. There are books ________.
8. You are right. ________ you say is true.

80.5 Complete the sentences. Use one word only each time.

1. Everybody ________ problems.
3. The house is empty. Everyone ________ gone out.
4. Gary is very popular. Everybody ________ him.
5. This town is completely different now. Everything ________ changed.
6. I got home very late last night. I came in quietly because everyone ________ asleep.
7. Everybody ________ mistakes!
8. A: ________ everything clear? ________ everybody know what to do?
   B: Yes, we all understand.
all  most  some  any  no/none

Compare:

children/money/books etc. (in general):

- Children like playing.
  (= children in general)
- Money isn’t everything.
  (= money in general)
- I enjoy reading books.
- Everybody needs friends.

the children / the money / these books etc.:

- Where are the children?
  (= our children)
- I want to buy a car, but I haven’t got the money. (= the money for a car)
- Have you read these books?
- I often go out with my friends.

most / most of …, some / some of … etc.

all  most  some  any  no / none / not + any

most/some etc. + noun

all  most  some  any  no

- *Most children* like playing.
  (= children in general)
- *I don’t want any money*.
- *Some books* are better than others.
- *He’s got no friends*.
- *All cities* have the same problems.
  (= cities in general)

Do not use *of* in these sentences:

- *Most people* drive too fast.
  (*not Most of people*)
- *Some birds* can’t fly.
  (*not Some of birds*)

most of/some of etc. + the/this/my … etc.

all  most  some  any  none

- *Most of the children* at this school are under 11 years old.
- *I don’t want any of this money*.
- *Some of these books* are very old.
- *None of my friends* live near me.

You can say *all the …* or *all of the …* (with or without of):

- *All the students in our class passed the exam. (or All of the students …)*
- *Silvia has lived in London all her life. (or … all of her life.)*

all of it / most of them / none of us etc.

all  most  some  any  none

- You can have *some of this cake*, but not *all of it*.
- *A:* Do you know those people?
  *B:* *Most of them*, but not *all of them*.
- *Some of us* are going out tonight. Why don’t you come with us?
- *I’ve got a lot of books, but I haven’t read any of them*.
- ‘How many of these books have you read?’ ‘None of them.’
81.1 Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets (some/most etc.). Sometimes you need of (some of / most of etc.).

1. Most ___________ children like playing. (most)
2. ___________ this money is yours. (some)
3. ___________ people never stop talking. (some)
4. ___________ the shops in the city centre close at 6.30. (most)
5. You can change your money in ___________ banks. (most)
6. I don’t like ___________ the pictures in the living room. (any)
7. He’s lost ___________ his money. (all)
8. ___________ my friends are married. (none)
9. Do you know ___________ the people in this photograph? (any)
10. ___________ birds can fly. (most)
11. I enjoyed ___________ the film, but I didn’t like the ending. (most)
12. ___________ sports are very dangerous. (some)
13. We can’t find anywhere to stay. ___________ the hotels are full. (all)
14. You must have ___________ this cheese. It’s delicious. (some)
15. The weather was bad when we were on holiday. It rained ___________ the time. (most)

81.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use:

all/most/some/none + of them / of it

1. How many of the people are women? ___________
2. How many of the boxes are on the table? ___________
3. How many of the men are wearing hats? ___________
4. How many of the windows are open? ___________
5. How many of the people are standing? ___________
6. How much of the money is Ben’s? ___________

81.3 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1. Most of children like playing. ___________
2. All the students failed the exam. ___________
3. Some of people work too hard. ___________
4. Some of questions in the exam were very easy. ___________
5. I haven’t seen any of those people before. ___________
6. All of insects have six legs. ___________
7. Have you read all these books? ___________
8. Most of students in our class are very nice. ___________
9. Most of my friends are going to the party. ___________
10. I’m very tired this morning – I was awake most of night. ___________
We use both/either/neither to talk about two things or people:

- Both have two children. Both are married. (both = the two children)
- Would you like tea or coffee? You can have either. (either = tea or coffee)
- A: Do you want to go to the cinema or the theatre?  
  B: Neither. I want to stay at home. (neither = not the cinema or the theatre)

Compare either and neither:

- 'Would you like tea or coffee?'  
  - 'Either. I don’t mind.' (= tea or coffee)  
  - 'I don’t want either.' (not I don’t want neither)  
  - 'Neither.' (= not tea or coffee)

### both/either/neither + noun

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>both</th>
<th>plural</th>
<th>both windows/books/children etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>either</td>
<td>+ singular</td>
<td>either window/book/child etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neither</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked both cities very much.
- First I worked in an office, and later in a shop. Neither job was very interesting.
- There are two ways from here to the station. You can go either way.

### both of … / either of … / neither of …

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>both</th>
<th>(of) the ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>either</td>
<td>these/those ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neither</td>
<td>my/your/Paul’s ... etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Neither of my parents is British.
- I haven’t read either of these books.

You can say both the/those/my … or both the/those/my … (with or without of):

- I like both of those pictures. or I like both those pictures.
- Both of Paul’s sisters are married. or Both Paul’s sisters are married.
  
  **but** Neither of Paul’s sisters is married. (not Neither Paul’s sisters)

### both of them / neither of us

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>both</th>
<th>of them</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>either</td>
<td>of us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neither</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Paul has got two sisters. Both of them are married.
- Sue and I didn’t eat anything. Neither of us was hungry.
- Who are those two people? I don’t know either of them.

I can’t either / neither can I → Unit 42
82.1 Write both/either/neither. Use of where necessary.

1. Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked _______________ cities very much.
2. There were two pictures on the wall. I didn’t like _______________ them.
3. It was a good football match. _______________ teams played well.
4. It wasn’t a good football match. _______________ team played well.
5. ‘Is your friend English or American?’ _______________. She’s Australian.’
6. We went away for two days, but the weather wasn’t good. It rained _______________ days.
7. a: I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?
   b: _______________. It doesn’t matter which one.
8. I invited Donna and Mike to the party, but _______________ them came.
9. ‘Do you go to work by car or by bus?’ _______________. I always walk.’
10. ‘Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?’ ‘I don’t like _______________ them.’
11. ‘Do you work or are you a student?’ _______________. I work and I’m a student too.’
12. Paula and I didn’t know the time because _______________ us had a watch.
13. Helen has got two sisters and a brother. _______________ sisters are married.
14. Helen has got two sisters and a brother. I’ve met her brother, but I haven’t met _______________ her sisters.

82.2 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use Both ... and Neither ...

1. _______________ empty. 4. _______________ beards.
2. _______________ are open. 5. _______________ to the airport.
3. _______________ wearing a hat. 6. _______________ right.

82.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers were the same. Write sentences with Both/Neither of them ...

1. Are you married?
   No
   No
   1. Neither of them is married.
2. How old are you?
   21
   21
   2. Both of them are 21.
3. Are you a student?
   Yes
   Yes
   3. _______________ students.
4. Have you got a car?
   No
   No
   4. _______________ a car.
5. Where do you live?
   London
   London
   5. _______________
6. Do you like cooking?
   Yes
   Yes
   6. _______________
7. Can you play the piano?
   No
   No
   7. _______________
8. Do you read newspapers?
   Yes
   Yes
   8. _______________
9. Are you interested in sport?
   No
   No
   9. _______________
### A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a lot of money</th>
<th>not much money</th>
<th>a lot of books</th>
<th>not many books</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

We use **much** + uncountable noun (much food / much money etc.):
- Did you buy much food?
- We haven’t got much luggage.
- How much money do you want?
- A: Have you got any money?  
  B: I’ve got some, but not much.

We use **many** + plural noun (many books / many people etc.):
- Did you buy many books?
- We don’t know many people.
- How many photos did you take?
- A: Did you take any photos?  
  B: I took some, but not many.

We use **a lot of** + both types of noun:
- We bought a lot of food.
- Paula hasn’t got a lot of free time.

We say:
- There is a lot of food/money/water ... (singular verb)
- There are a lot of trees/shops/people ... (plural verb)
- A lot of people speak English. (not speaks)

### B

We use **much** in questions and negative sentences:
- Do you drink much coffee?
- I don’t drink much coffee.

But we do not often use **much** in positive sentences:
- I drink a lot of coffee. (not I drink much coffee)
- ‘Do you drink much coffee?’ ‘Yes, a lot.’ (not Yes, much)

We use **many** and **a lot of** in all types of sentences (positive/negative/question):
- We’ve got many friends / a lot of friends.
- We haven’t got many friends / a lot of friends.
- Have you got many friends / a lot of friends?

### C

You can use **much** and **a lot** without a noun:
- Donna spoke to me, but she didn’t say much.
- ‘Do you watch TV much?’ ‘No, not much.’ (= not often)
- We like films, so we go to the cinema a lot. (not go to the cinema much)
- I don’t like him very much.
Exercises

83.1 Write much or many.
1 Did you buy ______ food?
2 There aren’t _______ hotels in this town.
3 We haven’t got _______ petrol. We need to stop and get some.
4 Were there _______ people on the train?
5 Did _______ students fail the exam?
6 Paula hasn’t got _______ money.
7 I wasn’t hungry, so I didn’t eat _______.
8 I don’t know where Gary lives these days. I haven’t seen him for _______ years.

Write How much or How many.
9 _______ people are coming to the party?
10 _______ milk do you want in your coffee?
11 _______ bread did you buy?
12 _______ players are there in a football team?

83.2 Complete the sentences. Use much or many with these words:
books countries luggage people time times
1 I don’t read very much. I haven’t got _______ books.
2 Hurry up! We haven’t got _______ luggage.
3 Do you travel a lot? Have you been to _______ countries?
4 Tina hasn’t lived here very long, so she doesn’t know _______ people.
5 ‘Have you got _______ money?’ ‘No, only this bag.’
6 I know Tokyo well. I’ve been there _______.

83.3 Complete the sentences. Use a lot of + these words:
accidents books fun interesting things traffic
1 I like reading. I have _______ books.
2 We enjoyed our visit to the museum. We saw _______.
3 This road is very dangerous. There are _______ accidents.
4 We enjoyed our holiday. We had _______ fun.
5 It took me a long time to drive here. There was _______ traffic.

83.4 In some of these sentences much is not natural. Change the sentences or write OK.
1 Do you drink _______ coffee?
2 I drink _______ tea.
3 It was a cold winter. We had _______ snow.
4 There wasn’t _______ snow last winter.
5 It costs _______ money to travel around the world.
6 We had a cheap holiday. It didn’t cost _______.
7 Do you know _______ about computers?
8 ‘Have you got _______ luggage?’ ‘Yes, _______.’

83.5 Write sentences about these people. Use much and a lot.
1 Jim loves films. (go to the cinema)
2 Nicole thinks TV is boring. (watch TV)
3 Tina is a good tennis player. (play tennis)
4 Martin doesn’t like driving. (use his car)
5 Paul spends most of the time at home. (go out)
6 Sue has been all over the world. (travel)

He goes to the cinema _______.
She doesn’t watch TV _______.
She _______.
He _______.

177
(a) little + uncountable noun:
(a) little water
(a) little time
(a) little money
(a) little soup

a little water

(a) few + plural noun:
(a) few books
(a) few questions
(a) few people
(a) few days

a few books

a little = some but not much
□ She didn’t eat anything, but she drank a little water.
□ I speak a little Spanish.
   (= some Spanish but not much)
□ A: Can you speak Spanish?
   B: A little.

a few = some but not many
□ Excuse me, I have to make a few phone calls.
□ We’re going away for a few days.
□ I speak a few words of Spanish.
□ A: Are there any shops near here?
   B: Yes, a few.

little (without a) = nearly no or nearly nothing
□ There was little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.

You can say very little:
□ Dan is very thin because he eats very little. (= nearly nothing)

a few (without a) = nearly no
□ There were few people in the theatre. It was nearly empty.

You can say very few:
□ Your English is very good. You make very few mistakes.

little and a little
A little is a positive idea:
□ They have a little money, so they’re not poor. (= they have some money)

Little (or very little) is a negative idea:
□ They have little money. They are very poor. (= nearly no money)

few and a few
A few is a positive idea:
□ I’ve got a few friends, so I’m not lonely. (= I’ve got some friends)

Few (or very few) is a negative idea:
□ I’m sad and I’m lonely. I’ve got few friends. (= nearly no friends)
84.1 Answer the questions with a little or a few.
1 'Have you got any money?' ‘Yes, a little.’
2 'Have you got any envelopes?' ‘Yes,..............’
3 'Do you want sugar in your coffee?' ‘Yes,....................., please.’
4 'Did you take any photographs when you were on holiday?' ‘Yes,.................’
5 'Does your friend speak English?' ‘Yes,.................’
6 'Are there any good restaurants in this town?' ‘Yes,.................’

84.2 Write a little or a few + these words:
chairs days fresh air friends milk Russian times years
1 Martin speaks Italian well. He lived in Italy for ................. years.
2 Can I have .......................................................... in my coffee, please?
3 ‘When did Julia go away?’ ‘........................................... ago.’
4 'Do you speak any foreign languages?' ‘I can speak..........................’
5 'Are you going out alone?' ‘No, I’m going with..........................................’
6 ‘Have you ever been to Mexico?’ ‘Yes,............................................ ’
7 There wasn’t much furniture in the room – just a table and ..........................................
8 I’m going out for a walk. I need .........................................

84.3 Complete the sentences. Use very little or very few + these words:
coffee hotels mistakes people rain time work
1 Your English is very good. You make ................. mistakes.
2 I drink ............................................................., I don’t like it.
3 The weather here is very dry in summer. There is ..........................................
4 It’s difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are ..........................................
5 Hurry up. We’ve got ........................................................ go out.
7 Some people in the office are very lazy. They do .........................................

84.4 Write little / a little or few / a few.
1 There was ............. food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.
2 ‘When did Sarah go out?’ ‘........................ minutes ago.’
3 I can’t decide now. I need ................................... time to think about it.
4 There was ...................... traffic, so we arrived earlier than we expected.
5 The bus service isn’t very good at night – there are ................. buses after 9 o’clock.
6 ‘Would you like some soup?’ ‘Yes,............................., please.’
7 I’d like to practise my English more, but I have ................. opportunity.

84.5 Right or wrong? Change the sentences where necessary. Write OK if the sentence is correct.
1 We’re going away for few days next week. for a few days
2 Everybody needs little luck.
3 I can’t talk to you now – I’ve got few things to do.
4 I eat very little meat – I don’t like it very much.
5 Excuse me, can I ask you few questions?
6 There were little people on the bus – it was nearly empty.
7 Martin is a very private person. Few people know him well.
old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)

**adjective + noun** (nice day / blue eyes etc.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>It’s a nice day today.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laura has got brown eyes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There’s a very old bridge in this village.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you like Italian food?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t speak any foreign languages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are some beautiful yellow flowers in the garden.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The adjective is before the noun:
- They live in a **modern house**. (not a house modern)
- Have you met any **famous people**? (not people famous)

The ending of an adjective is always the same:
- a different place different places (not different)

**be** (am/is/was etc.) + **adjective**

- The weather is **nice** today.
- These flowers are very **beautiful**.
- Are you **cold**? Shall I close the window?
- I’m **hungry**. Can I have something to eat?
- The film wasn’t very **good**. It was **boring**.
- Please be **quiet**. I’m reading.

**look/feel/smell/taste/sound** + **adjective**

- ‘You **look** tired.’ ‘Yes, I **feel** tired.’
- Gary told me about his new job. It **sounds** very **interesting**.
- I’m not going to eat this fish. It doesn’t **smell** **good**.

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He</th>
<th>looks</th>
<th>feels</th>
<th>is</th>
<th>they</th>
<th>are</th>
<th>looks</th>
<th>sound</th>
<th>happy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>smells</td>
<td>tastes</td>
<td>looks</td>
<td>feels</td>
<td>tired.</td>
<td>happy.</td>
<td>sound</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*get + adjective (get hungry/tired etc.)* → **Unit 56**  
*something/anybody + adjective* → **Unit 79**
85.1 Put the words in the right order.

1 (new / live in / house / they / a) ____________________________
2 (like / jacket / I / that / green) ____________________________
3 (music / like / do / classical / you?) ____________________________
4 (had / wonderful / a / I / holiday) ____________________________
5 (went to / restaurant / a / Japanese / we) ____________________________

They live in a new house.

85.2 The words in the box are adjectives (black/foreign etc.) or nouns (air/job etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>air</th>
<th>clouds</th>
<th>foreign</th>
<th>holiday</th>
<th>job</th>
<th>languages</th>
<th>sharp</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>black</td>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>fresh</td>
<td>hot</td>
<td>knife</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Do you speak any ____________________________?
2 Look at those ____________________________... It's going to rain.
3 Sue works very hard, and she's very tired. She needs a ____________________________.
4 I would like to have a shower, but there's no ____________________________.
5 Can you open the window? We need some ____________________________ to cut these onions.
6 Fire-fighting is a ____________________________.

85.3 Write sentences for the pictures. Choose from the boxes.

feel(s) / look(s) / sound(s) / smell(s) / taste(s) / happy / ill / nice / horrible / new / surprised

1 You ____________________________
2 It ____________________________
3 I ____________________________
4 You ____________________________
5 They ____________________________
6 It ____________________________

85.4 A and B don't agree. Complete B's sentences. Use feel/look etc.

A  B
1 You look tired.  Do I? I ____________________________ (feel)
2 This is a new coat.  Is it? It doesn't ____________________________ (look)
3 I'm American.  Are you? You ____________________________ (sound)
4 You look cold.  Do I? I ____________________________ (feel)
5 These bags are heavy.  Are they? They ____________________________ (look)
6 That soup looks good.  Maybe, but it ____________________________ (taste)
quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)

Quickly and suddenly are adverbs.

_adjective + -ly → adverb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>quick</th>
<th>bad</th>
<th>sudden</th>
<th>careful</th>
<th>heavy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adverb</td>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>badly</td>
<td>suddenly</td>
<td>carefully</td>
<td>heavily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Spelling (→ Appendix 5): easy → easily heavy → heavily

Adverbs tell you _how_ something happens or _how_ somebody does something:

- The train _stopped_ suddenly.
- I _opened_ the door slowly.
- Please _listen_ carefully.
- I _understand_ you _perfectly_.

It's _raining_ heavily.

Compare:

_adjective

- Sue is very _quiet_.
- Be careful!
- It was a _bad_ game.
- I _felt_ nervous. (= I was nervous)

_adverb

- Sue _speaks_ very _quietly_. (not speaks very quiet)
- Listen _carefully_! (not listen careful)
- Our team _played_ _badly_. (not played bad)
- I _waited_ nervously.

hard fast late early

These words are adjectives _and_ adverbs:

- Sue's job _is_ very _hard_.
- Ben is a _fast_ runner.
- The bus _was_ _late/early_.

- Sue _works_ very _hard_. (not hardly)
- Ben can _run_ _fast_.
- I went to bed _late/early_.

_good (adjective) → well (adverb)_

- Your English _is_ very _good_.
- It was a _good_ game.

- You _speak_ English very _well_. (not very good)
- Our team _played_ _well_.

But _well_ is also an _adjective_ (= not ill, in good health):

- 'How are you?'  'I'm very _well_, thank you. And you?'

adjectives → Unit 85
86.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with these adverbs:

angrily  badly  dangerously  fast  heavily  quietly

1. It's raining __________________________. 4. She shouted at me __________________________.
2. He sings very __________________________. 5. She can run very __________________________.
3. They came in __________________________. 6. He was driving __________________________.

86.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

come  know  sleep  win
explain  listen  think  work

1. I'm going to tell you something very important, so please __________________________.
2. They __________________________. At the end of the day they're always tired.
3. I'm tired this morning. I didn't __________________________ last night.
4. You play tennis much better than me. When we play, you always __________________________.
5. __________________________ before you answer the question.
6. I've met Alice a few times, but I don't __________________________ her very __________________________.
7. Our teacher doesn't __________________________ things very __________________________. We never understand him.
8. Helen! I need your help. __________________________!

86.3 Which is right?

1. Don't eat so quick/quickly. It's not good for you. (quickly is right)
2. Why are you angry/angrily? I haven't done anything.
3. Can you speak slow/slowly, please?
4. Come on, Dave! Why are you always so slow/slowly?
5. Bill is a very careful/carefully driver.
6. Jane is studying hard/hardly for her examinations.
7. 'Where's Diane?' 'She was here, but she left sudden/suddenly.'
8. Please be quiet/quietly. I'm studying.
9. Some companies pay their workers very bad/badly.
10. Those oranges look nice/nicely. Can I have one?
11. I don't remember much about the accident. Everything happened quick/quickly.

86.4 Write good or well.

1. Your English is very __________________________. You speak it very __________________________.
2. Jackie did very __________________________ in her exams.
3. The party was very __________________________. I enjoyed it very much.
4. Martin has a difficult job, but he does it __________________________.
5. How are your parents? Are they __________________________?
6. Did you have a __________________________ holiday? Was the weather __________________________?
Older / heavier / more expensive are comparative forms.
The comparative is -er (older) or more ... (more expensive).

older/heavier etc.

Short words (1 syllable) → -er:
- old → older
- slow → slower
- cheap → cheaper
- nice → nicer
- late → later
- big → bigger

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):
- big → bigger
- hot → hotter
- thin → thinner

Words ending in -y → -ier:
- easy → easier
- heavy → heavier
- early → earlier

- Rome is old, but Athens is older. (not more old)
- Is it cheaper to go by car or by train? (not more cheap)
- Helen wants a bigger car.
- This coat is OK, but I think the other one is nicer.
- Don’t take the bus. It’s easier to take a taxi. (not more easy)

far → further:
- ‘How far is it to the station? A mile?’ ‘No, it’s further. About two miles.’

more ...

Long words (2/3/4 syllables) → more ... :
- careful → more careful
- polite → more polite
- expensive → more expensive
- interesting → more interesting

- You must be more careful.
- I don’t like my job. I want to do something more interesting.
- Is it more expensive to go by car or by train?

good/well → better    bad → worse

- The weather wasn’t very good yesterday, but it’s better today.
- ‘Do you feel better today?’ ‘No, I feel worse.’
- Which is worse – a headache or a toothache?

**older than ... / more expensive than ... → Unit 88    the oldest / the most expensive → Unit 90**
87.1 Look at the pictures and write the comparative (older / more interesting etc.).

1 heavy
2 big
3 slow
4 expensive
5 high
6 dangerous

87.2 Write the comparative.

1 old older
2 strong
3 happy
4 modern
5 important
6 good
7 large
8 serious
9 pretty
10 crowded

87.3 Write the opposite.

1 younger older
2 colder
3 cheaper
4 better
5 nearer
6 easier

87.4 Complete the sentences. Use a comparative.

1 Helen's car isn't very big. She wants a bigger one.
2 My job isn't very interesting. I want to do something more interesting.
3 You're not very tall. Your brother is.
4 David doesn't work very hard. I work.
5 My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is.
6 Your idea isn't very good. My idea is.
7 These flowers aren't very nice. The blue ones are.
8 My bag isn't very heavy. Your bag is.
9 I'm not very interested in art. I'm in history.
10 It isn't very warm today. It was yesterday.
11 These tomatoes don't taste very good. The other ones tasted.
12 Britain isn't very big. France is.
13 London isn't very beautiful. Paris is.
14 This knife isn't very sharp. Have you got a one?
15 People today aren't very polite. In the past they were.
16 The weather isn't too bad today. Often it is much.
older than ... more expensive than ...

We use than after comparatives (older than ... / more expensive than ... etc.):
- Athens is older than Rome.
- Are oranges more expensive than bananas?
- It's easier to take a taxi than to take the bus.
- 'How are you today?' 'Not bad. Better than yesterday.'
- The restaurant is more crowded than usual.

We usually say: than me / than him / than her / than us / than them.
You can say:
- I can run faster than him. or I can run faster than he can.
- You are a better singer than me. or You are a better singer than I am.
- I got up earlier than her. or I got up earlier than she did.

more/less than ...
- A: How much did your shoes cost? £50?
  B: No, more than that. (= more than £50)
- The film was very short – less than an hour.
- They've got more money than they need.
- You go out more than me.

a bit older / much older etc.

Box A is a bit bigger than Box B.

Box C is much bigger than Box D.

- Canada is much bigger than France.
- Sue is a bit older than Gary – she's 25 and he's 24.
- The hotel was much more expensive than I expected.
- You go out much more than me.
Exercises

88.1 Write sentences about Liz and Ben. Use than.

1 I’m 26.
2 I’m not a very good swimmer.
3 I’m 1 metre 68 tall.
4 I start work at 8 o’clock.
5 I don’t work very hard.
6 I haven’t got much money.
7 I’m a very good driver.
8 I’m not very patient.
9 I’m not a very good dancer.
10 I’m very intelligent.
11 I speak French very well.
12 I don’t go to the cinema very much.

1 Liz is older than Ben.
2 Ben is a better swimmer than Liz.
3 Liz is.
4 Liz starts Ben.
5 Ben has got.
6 Ben is.

88.2 Complete the sentences. Use than.

1 He isn’t very tall. You’re taller than him (OR taller than he is).
2 She isn’t very old. You’re
3 I don’t work very hard. You work
4 He doesn’t watch TV very much. You
5 I’m not a very good cook. You
6 We don’t know many people. You
7 They haven’t got much money. You
8 I can’t run very fast. You can
9 She hasn’t been here very long. You
10 They didn’t get up very early. You
11 He wasn’t very surprised. You

88.3 Complete the sentences with a bit or much + comparative (older/better etc.).

1 Emma is 25. Gary is 24½.
   Emma is a bit older than Gary.
2 Jack’s mother is 52. His father is 69.
   Jack’s mother
3 My camera cost £100. Yours cost £96.
   My camera
4 Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel OK.
   I feel
5 Today the temperature is 12 degrees. Yesterday it was 10 degrees.
   It’s
6 Sarah is an excellent tennis player. I’m not very good.
   Sarah
not as ... as

She’s old, but she’s not as old as he is.  
Box A isn’t as big as Box B.

☐ Rome is not as old as Athens.  (= Athens is older)
☐ The Grand Hotel isn’t as expensive as the Europa.  (= the Europa is more expensive)
☐ I don’t play tennis as often as you.  (= you play more often)
☐ The weather is better than it was yesterday.  It isn’t as cold.  (= as cold as it was yesterday)

not as much as ... / not as many as ...

☐ I haven’t got as much money as you.  (= you’ve got more money)
☐ I don’t know as many people as you.  (= you know more people)
☐ I don’t go out as much as you.  (= you go out more)

Compare not as ... as and than:

☐ Rome is not as old as Athens.  
   Athens is older than Rome.  (not older as Rome)

☐ Tennis isn’t as popular as football.  
   Football is more popular than tennis.

☐ I don’t go out as much as you.  
   You go out more than me.

We usually say:  as me / as him / as her etc.
You can say:

☐ She’s not as old as him.  or  She’s not as old as he is.
☐ You don’t work as hard as me.  or  You don’t work as hard as I do.

We say the same as ... :

☐ The weather today is the same as yesterday.
☐ My hair is the same colour as yours.
☐ I arrived at the same time as Tim.

much/many → Unit 83  older than ... / more expensive than ... → Unit 88
89.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B and C.

1 A is __________ than C, but not __________ as B.
2 A is __________ B, but not __________ C.
3 C is __________ A, but __________
4 A is __________ , but __________
5 B has got __________
6 C works __________

89.2 Write sentences with as ... as ...

1 Athens is older than Rome. Rome __________
2 My room is bigger than yours. Your room isn’t __________
3 You got up earlier than me. I didn’t __________
4 We played better than them. They __________
5 I’ve been here longer than you. You __________
6 She’s more nervous than him. He __________

89.3 Write as or than.

1 Athens is older __________ Rome. 5 Joe isn’t as intelligent __________ he thinks.
2 I don’t watch TV as much __________ you. 6 Belgium is smaller __________ Switzerland.
3 You eat more __________ me. 7 Brazil isn’t as big __________ Canada.
4 I’m more tired today __________ I was yesterday. 8 I can’t wait longer __________ an hour.

89.4 Complete the sentences about Julia, Andy and Laura. Use the same age / the same street etc.

Julia
I’m 22.
I live in Hill Street.
I got up at 7.15.
I haven’t got a car.

Andy
I’m 24.
I live in Baker Street.
I got up at 7.15.
My car is dark blue.

Laura
I’m 24.
I live in Hill Street.
I got up at 7.45.
I’ve got a car. It’s dark blue.

1 (age) __________
2 (street) Julia lives __________
3 (time) Julia got up __________
4 (colour) Andy’s __________

189
Box A is **bigger than** Box B.

Box A is **bigger than** all the other boxes.

Box A is **the biggest** box.

The Euopa Hotel is **more expensive than** the Grand.

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** all the other hotels in the city.

The Europa Hotel is **the most expensive** hotel in the city.

**Bigger / older / more expensive etc.** are **comparative** forms (→ Unit 87).

**Biggest / oldest / most expensive etc.** are **superlative** forms.

The superlative form is **-est (oldest)** or **most ...** (**most expensive**).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short words (old/cheap/nice etc.)</th>
<th>→ the -est:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>old → <strong>the oldest</strong></td>
<td>cheap → <strong>the cheapest</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but good → <strong>the best</strong></td>
<td>bad → <strong>the worst</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Spelling (→ Appendix 5):**

| big → **the biggest** | hot → **the hottest** |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words ending in -y (easy/heavy etc.)</th>
<th>→ the -est:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>easy → <strong>the easiest</strong></td>
<td>heavy → <strong>the heaviest</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Long words (careful/expensive/interesting etc.)</th>
<th>→ the most ... :</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>careful → <strong>the most careful</strong></td>
<td>interesting → <strong>the most interesting</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**We say** the oldest ... / the most expensive ... etc. (with the):

- The church is very old. *It’s the oldest building in the town.*
  
  (= it is **older than** all the other buildings)

- What is the longest river in the world?

- Money is important, but it isn’t **the most important** thing in life.

- Excuse me, where is **the nearest** bank?

**You can use** the oldest / the best / the most expensive etc. **without a noun**:

- Ken is a good player, but he isn’t **the best** in the team.
  
  *(the best = the best player)*

**You can use superlative + I’ve ever ... / you’ve ever ... etc.:**

- The film was very bad. I think it’s **the worst** film I’ve ever seen.

- What is **the most unusual** thing you’ve ever done?

**present perfect + ever → Unit 17  older / more expensive → Units 87–88**
90.1 Write sentences with comparatives (older etc.) and superlatives (the oldest etc.).

1. big/small
   (A/D) A is bigger than D.
   (A) A is the biggest.
   (B) B is the smallest.

2. long/short
   (C/A) C is ........................................ A.
   (D) D is ........................................
   (B) B ........................................

3. young/old
   (D/C) D ........................................
   (B) ........................................
   (C) ........................................

4. expensive/cheap
   (D/A) ........................................
   (C) ........................................
   (A) ........................................

5. RESTAURANT A excellent
   RESTAURANT B not bad
   RESTAURANT C good but not wonderful
   RESTAURANT D awful

90.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (the oldest etc.).

1. This building is very old. It's ........................................ in the town.

2. It was a very happy day. It was ........................................ of my life.

3. It's a very good film. It's ........................................ I've ever seen.

4. She's a very popular singer. She's ........................................ in the country.

5. It was a very bad mistake. It was ........................................ I've ever made.

6. It's a very pretty village. It's ........................................ I've ever seen.

7. It was a very cold day. It was ........................................ of the year.

8. He's a very boring person. He's ........................................ I've ever met.

90.3 Write sentences with a superlative (the longest etc.). Choose from the boxes.

| Sydney | Alaska | high | country | Africa |
| Everest | the Nile | large | river | Australia |
| Brazil | Jupiter | long | city | the USA |
|        |         |      | mountain | the world |
|        |         |      | planet | the solar system |

1. Sydney is the largest city in Australia.

2. Everest ........................................

3. ........................................

4. ........................................

5. ........................................

6. ........................................
enough

**B**

enough + noun (enough money / enough people etc.)
- ‘Is there enough milk in your coffee?’ ‘Yes, thank you.’
- We wanted to play football, but we didn’t have enough players.
- Why don’t you buy a car? You’ve got enough money. (not money enough)

enough without a noun
- I’ve got some money, but not enough to buy a car.
  (= I need more money to buy a car)
- ‘Would you like some more to eat?’ ‘No, thanks. I’ve had enough.’
- You’re always at home. You don’t go out enough.

adjective + enough (good enough / tall enough etc.)
- ‘Shall we sit outside?’ ‘No, it isn’t warm enough.’ (not enough warm)
- Can you hear the radio? Is it loud enough for you?
- Don’t buy that coat. It’s nice, but it isn’t long enough. (= it’s too short)

Remember:

enough + noun but adjective + enough

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>enough money</th>
<th>tall enough</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enough time</td>
<td>good enough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enough people</td>
<td>old enough</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**D**

We say:

- enough for somebody/something
- enough to do something

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>enough for somebody/something to do something</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e.g. This pullover isn’t big enough for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e.g. I haven’t got enough money for a new car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e.g. I haven’t got enough money to buy a new car. (not for buy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e.g. Is your English good enough to have a conversation? (not for have)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e.g. There aren’t enough chairs for everybody to sit down.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
91.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use enough + these words:

1. She hasn’t got ___________________________.
2. There aren’t ___________________________.
3. She hasn’t got ___________________________.
4. There isn’t ___________________________.

91.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these adjectives + enough:

big long strong tall

1. He ___________________________.
2. The car ___________________________.
3. His legs aren’t ___________________________.
4. He ___________________________.

91.3 Complete the sentences. Use enough with these words:

big eat loud milk old practise space time tired

1. ‘Is there ___________________________ milk in your coffee?’ ‘Yes, thank you.’
2. Can you hear the radio? Is it ___________________________ for you?
3. He can leave school if he wants – he’s ___________________________.
4. When I visited New York last year, I didn’t have ___________________________ to see all the things I wanted to see.
5. This house isn’t ___________________________ for a large family.
6. Tina is very thin. She doesn’t ___________________________.
7. My office is very small. There isn’t ___________________________.
8. It’s late, but I don’t want to go to bed now. I’m not ___________________________.
9. Lisa isn’t a very good tennis player because she doesn’t ___________________________.

91.4 Complete the sentences. Use enough with these words:

1. We haven’t got ___________________________ a new car.
2. This knife isn’t ___________________________.
3. The water wasn’t ___________________________.
4. Have we got ___________________________ sandwiches?
5. We played well, but not ___________________________ the game.
6. I don’t have ___________________________ newspapers.
too

His shoes are **too big** for him.

There is **too much** sugar in it.

too + adjective / adverb (too big / too hard etc.)

- Can you turn the radio down?
  It's **too loud**. (= louder than I want)
- I can't work. I'm **too tired**.
- I think you work **too hard**.

**too much** / **too many** = more than you want, more than is good:

- I don't like the weather here. There is **too much rain**. (= more rain than is good)
- Let's go to another restaurant. There are **too many people** here.
- Emily studies all the time. I think she studies **too much**.
- Traffic is a problem in this town. There are **too many cars**.

Compare **too** and **not enough**:

- The hat is **too big** for him.
- The radio is **too loud**. Can you turn it down, please?
- There's **too much sugar** in my coffee, (= more sugar than I want)
- I don't feel very well. I ate **too much**.

**too big**

- The hat isn't **big enough** for him. (= it's **too small**)
- The radio isn't **loud enough**. Can you turn it up, please?
- There's **not enough sugar** in my coffee. (= I need more sugar)
- You're very thin. You don't eat **enough**.

**not big enough**

We say:

- **too ... for somebody/something**
  - These shoes are **too big for me**.
  - It's a small house – **too small for a large family**.
  - I'm **too tired to go** out. (not for go out)
  - It's **too cold to sit** outside.
  - She speaks **too fast for me to understand**.
92.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use too + these words:

- big
- crowded
- fast
- heavy
- loud
- low

1. The music is _________________.
2. The box is _________________.
3. The net is _________________.
4. She's driving _________________.
5. The ball is _________________.
6. The museum is _________________.

92.2 Write too / too much / too many or enough.

1. You’re always at home. You don’t go out _________________.
2. I don’t like the weather here. There’s ________________ rain.
3. I can’t wait for them. I haven’t got _______________ time.
4. There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were _______________ people.
5. You’re always tired. I think you work _______________ hard.
6. ‘Did you have _______________ to eat?’ ‘Yes, thank you.’
7. You drink _______________ coffee. It’s not good for you.
8. You don’t eat _______________ vegetables. You should eat more.
9. I don’t like the weather here. It’s _______________ cold.
10. Our team didn’t play well. We made _______________ mistakes.
11. ‘Would you like some milk in your tea?’ ‘Yes, but not _______________.’

92.3 Complete the sentences. Use too or enough with these words:

1. I couldn’t work. I _______________ tired. (tired)
2. Can you turn the radio up, please? It _______________ loud enough. (loud)
3. I don’t want to walk home. It’s _______________ far. (far)
4. Don’t buy anything in that shop. It’s _______________ expensive. (expensive)
5. You can’t put all your things in this bag. It’s _______________ big. (big)
6. I couldn’t do the exercise. It’s _______________ difficult. (difficult)
7. Your work needs to be better. It’s _______________ good. (good)
8. I can’t talk to you now. I’m _______________ busy. (busy)
9. I thought the film was boring. It’s _______________ long. (long)

92.4 Complete the sentences. Use too (+ adjective) + to ...

1. (I’m not going out / cold) It’s _______________ to go out. (cold)
2. (I’m not going to bed / early) It’s _______________.
3. (they’re not getting married / young) They’re _______________.
4. (nobody goes out at night / dangerous) It’s _______________.
5. (don’t phone Sue now / late) It’s _______________.
6. (I didn’t say anything / surprised) I was _______________.

195
He speaks English very well.
(word order 1)

verb + object

Sue reads a newspaper every day.

The verb (reads) and the object (a newspaper) are usually together. We say:

- Sue reads a newspaper every day. (not Sue reads every day a newspaper)

verb + object

He speaks English very well. (not He speaks very well English)
I like Italian food very much. (not I like very much ...)
Did you watch television all evening? (not Did you watch all evening ...)
Paul often wears a black hat. (not Paul wears often ...)
We invited a lot of people to the party.
I opened the door slowly.
Why do you always make the same mistake?
I'm going to borrow some money from the bank.

where and when

We went to a party last night.

Place (where?) is usually before time (when?). We say:

- We went to a party last night. (not We went last night to a party)

place (where?) + time (when? how long? how often?)

| Lisa walks to work every day. (not ... every day to work) |
| Will you be at home this evening? (not ... this evening at home) |
| I usually go to bed early. (not ... early to bed) |
| We arrived at the airport at 7 o'clock. |
| They've lived in the same house for 20 years. |
| Joe's father has been in hospital since June. |

word order in questions → Units 44-46 always/usually/often etc. → Unit 94
### 93.1 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Original Sentence</th>
<th>Corrected Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Did you watch all evening television?</td>
<td>Did you watch television all evening?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Sue reads a newspaper every day.</td>
<td>Ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>I like very much this picture.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Tom started last week his new job.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>I want to speak English fluently.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Jane bought for her friend a present.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>I drink every day three cups of coffee.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Don’t eat your dinner too quickly!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>I borrowed from my brother fifty pounds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 93.2 Put the words in order.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Original Sentence</th>
<th>Corrected Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>(the door / opened / I / slowly)</td>
<td>I opened the door slowly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>(a new computer / I / last week / bought)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>(finished / Paul / quickly / his work)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>(Emily / very well / French / doesn’t speak)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>(a lot of shopping / did / I / yesterday)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>(London / do you know / well?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>(we / enjoyed / very much / the party)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>(the problem / carefully / I / explained)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>(we / at the airport / some friends / met)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>(did you buy / in England / that jacket?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>(every day / do / the same thing / we)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>(football / don’t like / very much / I)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 93.3 Put the words in order.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Original Sentence</th>
<th>Corrected Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>(to work / every day / walks / Lisa)</td>
<td>Lisa walks to work every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>(at the hotel / I / early / arrived)</td>
<td>I arrived at the hotel early.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>(goes / every year / to Italy / Julia)</td>
<td>Julia goes to Italy every year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>(we / since 1988 / here / have lived)</td>
<td>Sue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>(in London / Sue / in 1980 / was born)</td>
<td>Sue was born in London in 1980.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>(didn’t go / yesterday / Paul / to work)</td>
<td>Paul didn’t go to work yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>(to a wedding / last weekend / went / Helen)</td>
<td>Helen went to a wedding last weekend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>(I / in bed / this morning / my breakfast / had)</td>
<td>I had my breakfast in bed this morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>(in September / Barbara / to university / is going)</td>
<td>Barbara is going to university in September.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>(I / a beautiful bird / this morning / in the garden / saw)</td>
<td>I saw a beautiful bird in the garden this morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>(many times / have been / my parents / to the United States)</td>
<td>My parents have been to the United States many times.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>(my umbrella / I / last night / left / in the restaurant)</td>
<td>I left my umbrella in the restaurant last night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>(to the cinema / tomorrow evening / are you going?)</td>
<td>Are you going to the cinema tomorrow evening?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>(the children / I / took / this morning / to school)</td>
<td>I took the children to school this morning.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)

These words (always/never etc.) are with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>always</th>
<th>often</th>
<th>ever</th>
<th>rarely</th>
<th>also</th>
<th>already</th>
<th>all</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>usually</td>
<td>sometimes</td>
<td>never</td>
<td>seldom</td>
<td>just</td>
<td>still</td>
<td>both</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- My brother never speaks to me.
- She’s always late.
- Do you often go to restaurants?
- I sometimes eat too much. (or Sometimes I eat too much.)
- ‘Don’t forget to phone Laura.’ ‘I’ve already phoned her.’
- I’ve got three sisters. They’re all married.

Always/never etc. are before the verb:

- I always drink coffee in the morning. (not I drink always coffee)
- Helen often goes to London. (not Helen goes often)
- You sometimes look unhappy.
- They usually have dinner at 7 o’clock.
- We rarely (or seldom) watch television.
- Richard is a good footballer. He also plays tennis and volleyball. (not He plays also tennis)
- I’ve got three sisters. They all live in London.

But always/never etc. are after am/is/are/was/were:

- I am always tired. (not I always am tired)
- They are never at home during the day.
- It is usually very cold here in winter.
- When I was a child, I was often late for school.
- ‘Where’s Laura?’ ‘She’s still in bed.’
- I’ve got two brothers. They’re both doctors.

Always/never etc. are between two verbs (have ... been / can ... find etc.):

- I will always remember you.
- It doesn’t often rain here.
- Do you usually go to work by car?
- I can never find my keys.
- Have you ever been to Egypt?
- A: Where’s Laura?
  B: She’s just gone out. (She’s = She has)
- My friends have all gone to the cinema.

always/never + present simple → Unit 5  just/already + present perfect → Unit 15  all → Units 80–81
both → Unit 82  still → Unit 95
94.1 Read Paul's answers to the questions. Write sentences about Paul with often/never etc.

1. Do you ever play tennis? Yes, often.
   Paul often plays tennis.
2. Do you get up early? Yes, always.
3. Are you ever late for work? No, never.
5. Do you ever go swimming? Rarely.
6. Are you at home in the evenings? Yes, usually.

94.2 Write these sentences with never/always/usually etc.

1. My brother speaks to me. (never) My brother never speaks to me.
2. Susan is polite. (always) Susan is polite.
3. I finish work at 5 o'clock. (usually) I finish work at 5 o'clock.
4. Sarah has started a new job. (just) Sarah has started a new job.
5. I go to bed before midnight. (rarely) I go to bed before midnight.
6. The bus isn't late. (usually) The bus isn't late.
7. I don't eat fish. (often) I don't eat fish.
8. I will forget what you said. (never) I will never forget what you said.
9. Have you lost your passport? (ever) Have you ever lost your passport?
10. Do you work in the same place? (still) I still work in the same place.
11. They stay in the same hotel. (always) They always stay in the same hotel.
12. Jane doesn't work on Saturdays. (usually) Jane doesn't work on Saturdays.
13. Is Tina here? (already) Tina has already arrived.
14. What do you have for breakfast? (usually) What do you usually have for breakfast?
15. I can remember his name. (never) I can never remember his name.

94.3 Write sentences with also.

1. Do you play football? (tennis) Yes, I also play tennis.
2. Do you speak Italian? (French) Yes, and I speak French.
3. Are you tired? (hungry) Yes, I am hungry.
4. Have you been to England? (Ireland) Yes, I have been to Ireland.
5. Did you buy any clothes? (some books) Yes, and I bought some books.

94.4 Write sentences with both and all.

1. They both live in London. They both live in London.
2. They are from England. They are both married.
Unit 95

still  yet  already

A

**still**

*An hour ago*

The rain hasn’t stopped

An hour ago it was raining.

It is **still** raining now.

**still** = something is the same as before:

- I had a lot to eat, but I’m **still** hungry. (= I was hungry before, and I’m hungry now)
- ‘Did you sell your car?’ ‘No, I’ve **still** got it.’
- ‘Do you **still** live in Barcelona?’ ‘No, I live in Madrid now.’

B

**yet**

*20 minutes ago*

Bill will be here soon.

Twenty minutes ago they were waiting for Bill.

*now*

Where’s Bill? He’s very late.

They are **still** waiting for Bill.

**Bill hasn’t come yet.**

yet = until now

We use **yet** in negative sentences (He hasn’t come yet.) and in questions (Has he come yet?).

**Yet** is usually at the end of a sentence:

- A: Where’s Emma?
  - B: She isn’t here **yet**. (= she will be here, but until now she hasn’t come)
- A: What are you doing this evening?
  - B: I **don’t** know **yet**. (= I will know later, but I don’t know at the moment)
- A: Are you ready to go **yet**?
  - B: **Not** **yet**. In a minute. (= I will be ready, but I’m not ready at the moment)
- A: Have you finished with the newspaper **yet**?
  - B: No, I’m still reading it.

Compare **yet** and **still**:

- She hasn’t gone **yet**. = She’s **still** here. (not she is yet here)
- I haven’t finished eating **yet**. = I’m **still** eating.

C

**already** = earlier than expected:

- ‘What time is Joe coming?’ ‘He’s **already** here.’ (= earlier than we expected)
- ‘I’m going to tell you what happened.’ ‘That’s not necessary. I **already** know.’
- Sarah isn’t coming to the cinema with us. She has **already** seen the film.

**already/yet** + present perfect → **Unit 16**  word order (**still/already**) → **Unit 94**
95.1 You meet Tina. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with still.

Tina - two years ago

1. I play the piano.
2. I live in Clare Street.
3. I'm a student.
4. I've got a motorbike.
5. I go to the cinema a lot.
6. I want to be a teacher.

95.2 Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.

(before) They were waiting for the bus.
(still) They are still waiting.
(yet) The bus hasn't come yet.

(before) He was...
(still) He...
(yet) He...

(before) She was asleep.
(still) She...
(yet) She...

(before) They were eating dinner.
(still) They...
(yet) They...

95.3 Write questions with yet.

1. You and Sue are going out together. You are waiting for her to get ready. Perhaps she is ready now. You ask her: ________________ Are you ready yet?

2. You are waiting for Helen to arrive. She wasn't here ten minutes ago. Perhaps she is here now. You ask somebody: __________________ Helen ____________________________ yet.

3. Anna did an exam and is waiting for the results. Perhaps she has her results now. You ask her: __________________ you ____________________________ yet.

4. A few days ago you spoke to Tom. He wasn't sure where to go on holiday. Perhaps he has decided now. You ask him: __________________ you ____________________________ yet.

95.4 Complete the sentences. Use already.

He's already _______ here.
No, she _________ has already seen _______ it.
It's too late. She __________________________.
No, thanks. I __________________________ one.
No, it's OK. I __________________________.
No, he __________________________. I told him.
Give me that book!  Give it to me!

After these verbs (give/lend etc.), there are two possible structures:

**give something to somebody**
- I gave the keys to Sarah.

**give somebody something**
- I gave Sarah the keys.

---

### give something to somebody

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>That’s my book.</th>
<th>Give</th>
<th>it</th>
<th>to me.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>These are Sue’s keys. Can you give them to me?</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>to me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you give these flowers to me?</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>these flowers</td>
<td>to me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I lent my car to you.</td>
<td>lend</td>
<td>my car</td>
<td>to you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you send a postcard to me?</td>
<td>send</td>
<td>a postcard</td>
<td>to me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We’ve seen these photos. You showed them to us.</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>to us.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### give somebody something

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Give</th>
<th>somebody</th>
<th>something</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tom gave his mother some flowers.</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>his mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I lent Joe some money.</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>Joe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much money did you lend him?</td>
<td>lend</td>
<td>him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I sent you an email. Did you get it?</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicole showed us her holiday photos.</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you pass me the salt, please?</td>
<td>pass</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can also say ‘buy/get somebody something’:
- I bought my mother some flowers. (= I bought some flowers for my mother.)
- Can you get me a newspaper when you go out? (= get a newspaper for me)

You can say:
- I gave the keys to Sarah.
  
  and I gave Sarah the keys.
  
  *(but not I gave to Sarah the keys)*

- That’s my book. Can you give it to me?
  
  and Can you give me that book?
  
  *(but not Can you give to me that book?)*

We prefer the first structure (give something to somebody) with it or them:
- I gave it to her. *(not I gave her it)*
- Here are the keys. Give them to your father. *(not Give your father them)*
Exercises

96.1 Mark had some things that he didn’t want. He gave them to different people.

Write sentences beginning He gave ... .

1. What did Mark do with the armchair? He gave it to his brother.
2. What did he do with the tennis racket? He gave it to Sarah.
3. What happened to the books? He gave them to Robert.
4. What about the lamp? He gave it to Gary.
5. What did he do with the pictures? He gave them to his sister.
6. And the ladder? He gave it to a neighbour.

96.2 You gave presents to your friends. You decided to give them the things in the pictures.
Write a sentence for each person.

1  PAUL
2  JOANNA
3  RICHARD
4  EMMA
5  RACHEL
6  KEVIN

1. I gave Paul a book.
2. I gave you a plant.
3. I gave Richard a scarf.
4. I gave you a box of chocolates.
5. I gave you a rose.
6. I gave you a pen.

96.3 Write questions beginning Can you give me ... ? / Can you pass me ... ? etc.

1. (you want the salt) (pass) Can you give me the salt?
2. (you need an umbrella) (lend) Can you lend me your umbrella?
3. (you want my address) (give) Can you give me your address?
4. (you need twenty pounds) (lend) Can you lend me twenty pounds?
5. (you want some information) (send) Can you send me some information?
6. (you want to see the letter) (show) Can you show me the letter?
7. (you want some stamps) (get) Can you get me some stamps?

96.4 Which is right?

1. I gave to Sarah the keys. / I gave Sarah the keys. (I gave Sarah the keys is right)
2. I’ll lend to you some money if you want. / I’ll lend you some money if you want.
3. Did you send the letter me? / Did you send the letter to me?
4. I want to buy for you a present. / I want to buy you a present.
5. Can you pass to me the sugar, please? / Can you pass me the sugar, please?
6. This is Lisa’s bag. Can you give it to her? / Can you give her it?
7. I showed to the policeman my identity card. / I showed the policeman my identity card.
We use these words (conjunctions) to join two sentences. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:

sentence A: The car stopped.  sentence B: The driver got out.

The car stopped and the driver got out.

**and/but/or**

- We stayed at home and (we)* watched television.
- My sister is married and (she)* lives in London.
- He doesn't like her, but she doesn't like him.
- I bought a newspaper, but I didn't read it.
- It's a nice house, but it hasn't got a garden.
- Do you want to go out, or are you too tired?

* It is not necessary to repeat 'we' and 'she'.

In lists, we use commas (,). We use **and** before the last thing:

- I got home, had something to eat, sat down in an armchair and fell asleep.
- Karen is at work, Sue has gone shopping and Chris is playing football.

**so** (the result of something)

- It was very hot, so I opened the window.
- Joe does a lot of sport, so he's very fit.
- They don't like travelling, so they haven't been to many places.

**because** (the reason for something)

- I opened the window because it was very hot.
- Joe can't come to the party because he's going away.
- Lisa is hungry because she didn't have breakfast.

**Because** is also possible at the beginning:
- **Because it was very hot**, I opened the window.

In these examples there is more than one conjunction:
- It was late and I was tired, so I went to bed.
- I always enjoy visiting London, but I wouldn't like to live there because it's too big.
Exercises

97.1 Write sentences. Choose from the boxes and use and/but/or.

I stayed at home.
I bought a newspaper.
I went to the window.
I wanted to phone you.
I jumped into the river.
I usually drive to work.
Do you want me to come with you?
I didn’t have your number.
Shall I wait here?
I didn’t read it.
I went by bus this morning.
I watched television.
I swam to the other side.
I looked out.

1 stayed at home and watched television.
2 bought a newspaper, but I didn’t read it.

97.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use and/but/so/because.

1 It was very hot, so he opened the window.
2 They couldn’t play tennis.
3 They went to the museum.
4 Bill wasn’t hungry.
5 Helen was late.
6 Sue said.

97.3 Write sentences about what you did yesterday. Use and/but etc.

1 (and) In the evening I stayed at home and studied.
2 (because) I went to bed very early because I was tired.
3 (but)
4 (and)
5 (so)
6 (because)
When ...

When I went out, it was raining.

This sentence has two parts:

\textbf{when I went out} + \textbf{it was raining}

You can say:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{When I went out}, it was raining. \textit{or}
  \item \textbf{It was raining} when I went out.
\end{itemize}

We write a comma (,) if \textbf{When} ... is at the beginning:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{When} you're tired, don't drive.
  \item Don't drive \textbf{when} you're tired.
  \item Helen was 25 \textbf{when} she got married.
  \item \textbf{When} Helen got married, she was 25.
\end{itemize}

We do the same in sentences with \textbf{before}/\textbf{while}/\textbf{after}:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{Before} you cross the road, always look both ways.
  \item \textbf{While} I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain.
  \item \textbf{After} he broke his leg, he never played football again.
\end{itemize}

When I am ... / When I go ... etc.

Next week Sarah is going to New York.
She has a friend, Lisa, who lives in New York,
but Lisa is also going away — to Mexico.
So they won’t see each other in New York.

Lisa \textbf{will be} in Mexico \textbf{when} Sarah \textbf{is} in New York.

The time is \textbf{future} (next week) but we say:
\textbf{... when} Sarah \textbf{is} in New York.
\textit{(not when Sarah will be)}

We use the \textbf{present} (\textit{I am} / \textit{I go} etc.) with a \textbf{future meaning} after \textbf{when}:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{When} I \textit{get} home this evening, I’m going to have a shower.
  \textit{(not When I will get home)}
  \item I can’t talk to you now. I’ll talk to you later \textbf{when} I \textbf{have} more time.
\end{itemize}

We do the same after \textbf{before}/\textbf{while}/\textbf{after}/\textbf{until}:

\begin{itemize}
  \item Please close the window \textbf{before} you \textbf{go} out. \textit{(not before you will go)}
  \item Rachel is going to stay in our flat \textbf{while} we \textbf{are} away. \textit{(not while we will be)}
  \item I’ll wait here \textbf{until} you \textbf{come} back. \textit{(not until you will come back)}
\end{itemize}
98.1 **Write sentences beginning with when. Choose from the boxes.**

When +

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Went out</th>
<th>I turned off the TV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I went out</td>
<td>I always go to the same place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm tired</td>
<td>there were no rooms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I phoned her</td>
<td>it was raining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I go on holiday</td>
<td>there was no answer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the programme ended</td>
<td>I like to watch TV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I got to the hotel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. When I went out, it was raining.
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 

98.2 **Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Somebody broke into the house</th>
<th>Before they came here</th>
<th>When they heard the news</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>before they crossed the road</td>
<td>while they were away</td>
<td>they didn't believe me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they went to live in New Zealand</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. They looked both ways before they crossed the road.
2. They were very surprised
3. After they got married,
4. Their house was damaged in a storm
5. Where did they live ?
6. While we were asleep,
7. When I told them what happened,

98.3 **Which is right?**

1. I stay / I'll stay here until you come / you'll come back. (I'll stay and you come are right)
2. I'm going to bed when I finish / I'll finish my work.
3. We must do something before it's / it will be too late.
4. Helen is going away soon. I'm / I'll be very sad when she leaves / she'll leave.
5. Don't go out yet. Wait until the rain stops / will stop.
6. We come / We'll come and visit you when we're / we'll be in England again.
7. When I come / I'll come to see you tomorrow, I bring / I'll bring our holiday photos.
8. I'm going to Paris next week. I hope to see some friends of mine while I'm / I'll be there.
9. 'I need your address.' 'OK, I give / I'll give it to you before I go / I'll go.'
10. I'm not ready yet. I tell / I'll tell you when I'm / I'll be ready.

98.4 **Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.**

1. Can you close the window before you go out ?
2. What are you going to do when ?
3. When I have enough money, 
4. I'll wait for you while 
5. When I start my new job, 
6. Will you be here when ?
If we go ... If you see ... etc.

If can be at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle:

If at the beginning

If we go by bus, it will be cheaper.
If you don’t hurry, you’ll miss the train.
If you’re hungry, have something to eat.
If the phone rings, can you answer it, please?

If in the middle

It will be cheaper if we go by bus.
You’ll miss the train if you don’t hurry.
I’m going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
Is it OK if I use your phone?

In conversation, we often use the if-part of the sentence alone:

☐ ‘Are you going to the concert?’ ‘Yes, if I can get a ticket.’

If you see Ann tomorrow ... etc.

After if, we use the present (not will). We say ‘if you see ...’ (not if you will see):

☐ If you see Ann tomorrow, can you ask her to call me?
☐ If I’m late this evening, don’t wait for me. (not if I will be)
☐ What shall we do if it rains? (not if it will rain)
☐ If I don’t feel well tomorrow, I’ll stay at home.

if and when

If I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I’m not sure:

☐ A: Are you going out later?
☐ B: Maybe. If I go out, I’ll close the windows.

When I go out = I’m going out (for sure):

☐ A: Are you going out later?
☐ B: Yes, I am. When I go out, I’ll close the windows.

Compare when and if:

☐ When I get home this evening, I’m going to have a shower.
☐ If I’m late this evening, don’t wait for me. (not When I’m late)
☐ We’re going to play tennis if it doesn’t rain. (not when it doesn’t rain)
Exercises

99.1 Write sentences beginning with if. Choose from the boxes.

If +
- you don’t hurry
- you pass the exam
- you fail the exam
- you don’t want this magazine
- you want those pictures
- you’re busy now
- you’re hungry
- you need money

+ we can have lunch now
- you can have them
- I can lend you some
- you’ll get a certificate
- you’ll be late
- I’ll throw it away
- we can talk later
- you can do it again

1. If you don’t hurry, you’ll be late.
2. If you pass
3. If
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.

99.2 Which is right?
1. If I’m / I’ll be late this evening, don’t wait for me.  (I’m is right)
2. Will you call me if I give / I’ll give you my phone number?
3. If there is / will be a fire, the alarm will ring.
4. If I don’t see you tomorrow morning, I call / I’ll call you in the evening.
5. I’m / I’ll be surprised if Martin and Jane get / will get married.
6. Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they’ll invite you?

99.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.
1. I’m going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
2. If you don’t hurry, you’ll miss the train.
3. I don’t want to disturb you if
4. If you go to bed early tonight,
5. Turn the television off if
6. Tina won’t pass her exams if
7. If I have time tomorrow,
8. We can go to the beach tomorrow if
9. I’ll be surprised if

99.4 Write if or when.
1. If I’m late this evening, don’t wait for me.
2. I’m going to do some shopping now. I come back, we can have lunch.
3. I’m thinking of going to see Tim. I go, will you come with me?
4. you don’t want to go out tonight, we can stay at home.
5. Is it OK I close the window?
6. John is still at school. he leaves school, he wants to go to college.
7. Shall we have a picnic tomorrow the weather is good?
8. We’re going to Madrid next week. We haven’t got anywhere to stay - we hope to find a hotel we get there. I don’t know what we’ll do we don’t find a room.
If I had ...  If we went ...  etc.

Dan likes fast cars, but he doesn’t have one. He doesn’t have enough money.

If he **had** the money, he **would** buy a fast car.

Usually **had** is past, but in this sentence **had** is not past. If he **had** the money = if he had the money **now** (but he doesn’t have it).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you it they etc.</th>
<th>had/knew/lived/went (etc.) ..., didn’t have/didn’t know (etc.) ..., were ... , could ... ,</th>
<th>If you it they etc.</th>
<th>would(n’t)</th>
<th>buy ... be ... have ... go ... etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

You can say:
- If he **had** the money, he would buy a car.
  - He would buy a car if he **had** the money.

I’d / she’d / they’d etc. = I would / she would / they would etc.:
- I don’t know the answer. If I **knew** the answer, I’d **tell** you.
- It’s raining, so we’re not going out. We’d **get** wet if we **went** out.
- Jane lives in a city. She likes cities. She wouldn’t be happy if she **lived** in the country.
- If you **didn’t have** a job, what **would** you **do**? (but you have a job)
- I’m sorry I can’t help you. I’d **help** you if I could. (but I can’t)
- If we **had** a car, we **could travel** more. (but we haven’t got a car, so we can’t travel much)

If (I) was/were ...

You can say ‘if I/he/she/it was’ or ‘if I/he/she/it were’:
- It’s not a very nice place. I wouldn’t go there if I **were you**. (or ... if I was you)
- It would be nice if the weather **was** better.
  - (or ... if the weather **were** better)
- What would Tom do if he **were** here?
  - (or ... if he **was** here)

Compare:

if I have / if it is etc.
- I must go and see Helen.
  - If I **have** time, I will **go** today.
    (= maybe I’ll have time, so maybe I’ll go)
- I like that jacket.
  - I’ll **buy** it if it **isn’t** too expensive.
    (= maybe it will not be too expensive)
- I’ll **help** you if I **can**. (= maybe I can help)

if I had / if it was etc.
- I must go and see Helen.
  - If I **had** time, I would **go** today.
    (= I don’t have time today, so I will not go)
- I like that jacket, but it’s very expensive.
  - I’d **buy** it if it **wasn’t** so expensive.
    (= it is expensive, so I’m not going to buy it)
- I’d **help** you if I **could**, but I can’t.
100.1 Complete the sentences.

1. I don’t know the answer. If I knew the answer, I’d tell you.
2. I have a car. I couldn’t travel very much if I didn’t have a car.
3. I don’t want to go out. If I didn’t have to go out, I’d go.
4. We haven’t got a key. If we had a key, we could get into the house.
5. I’m not hungry. I would have something to eat if I was hungry.
6. Sue enjoys her work. She wouldn’t do it if she didn’t enjoy it.
7. He can’t speak any foreign languages. If he could speak a foreign language, perhaps he would get a better job.
8. You don’t try hard enough. If you tried harder, you would have more success.
9. I have a lot to do today. If I didn’t have so much to do, we could go out.

100.2 Put the verb in the correct form.

1. If he had the money, he would buy a fast car. (he/have)
2. Jane likes living in a city. She wouldn’t be happy if she lived in the country. (she/not/be)
3. If I wanted to learn Italian, I would go to Italy. (I/go)
4. I haven’t told Helen what happened. She’d be angry if I didn’t tell her. (she/know)
5. If you had a map, I could show you where I live. (we/have)
6. What would you do if you won a lot of money? (you/win)
7. It’s not a very good hotel. We’d stay there if we were you. (I/not/stay)
8. If you lived nearer London, we would go there more often. (we/live)
9. It’s a pity you have to go now. It would be nice if you had more time. (it/be)
10. I’m not going to take the job. I’d take it if the salary were better. (the salary/be)
11. I don’t know anything about cars. If the car broke down, I’d have no idea what to do. (I/not/know)
12. If you could change one thing in the world, what would you change? (you/change)

100.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb in the correct form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>we (have) a bigger house</th>
<th>it (be) a bit cheaper</th>
<th>I (watch) it</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we (buy) a bigger house</td>
<td>every day (be) the same</td>
<td>I (be) bored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we (have) some pictures on the wall</td>
<td>the air (be) cleaner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I’d buy that jacket if it was a bit cheaper.
2. If there was a good film on TV tonight,
3. This room would be nicer if
4. If there wasn’t so much traffic,
5. Life would be boring if
6. If I had nothing to do,
7. We could invite all our friends to stay if
8. If we had more money,

100.4 Complete the sentences. Use your own ideas.

1. I’d be happier if I could get a better job.
2. If I could go anywhere in the world,
3. I wouldn’t be very happy if
4. I’d buy something if
5. If I saw an accident in the street,
6. The world would be a better place if
who is for people (not things):

A thief is a **person** who steals things.
Do you know **anybody** who can play the piano?
The man **who** phoned didn't give his name.
The people **who** work in the office are very friendly.

that is for things or people:

An aeroplane is a **machine** that flies.
Emma lives in a **house** that is 400 years old.
The people **who** work in the office are very friendly.

You can use **that** for people, but **who** is more usual.

which is for things (not people):

An aeroplane is a **machine** which flies. *not a machine who ...*
Emma lives in a **house** which is 400 years old.

Do not use **which** for people:

☐ Do you remember the **woman who** was playing the piano at the party?  
*not the woman which ...*

who and which in questions → **Units 45, 47**  
the people we met (relative clauses 2) → **Unit 102**
101.1 Choose from the boxes and write sentences: A ... is a person who ... . Use a dictionary if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a thief</th>
<th>a dentist</th>
<th>doesn't tell the truth</th>
<th>is ill in hospital</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a butcher</td>
<td>a fool</td>
<td>takes care of your teeth</td>
<td>steals things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a musician</td>
<td>a genius</td>
<td>is very intelligent</td>
<td>does stupid things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a patient</td>
<td>a liar</td>
<td>plays a musical instrument</td>
<td>sells meat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A thief is a person who steals things.
2. A butcher is a person...
3. A musician...
4. ...
5. ...
6. ...
7. ...
8. ...

101.2 Make one sentence from two.

1. (A man phoned. He didn't give his name.)
   The man who phoned didn't give his name.
2. (A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.)
   The woman a yellow dress.
3. (Some students took the exam. Most of them passed.)
   Most of the students
4. (A policeman stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.)
   The

101.3 Write who or which.

1. I met a woman who can speak six languages.
2. What's the name of the man has just started work in your office?
3. What's the name of the river flows through the town?
4. Where is the picture was hanging on the wall?
5. Do you know anybody wants to buy a car?
6. You always ask questions are difficult to answer.
7. I have a friend is very good at repairing cars.
8. I think everybody went to the party enjoyed it very much.
9. Why does he always wear clothes are too small for him?

101.4 Right or wrong? Correct the mistakes.

1. A thief is a person who steals things. a person who steals things
2. An aeroplane is a machine that flies. OK
3. A coffee maker is a machine who makes coffee. a coffee maker is a machine who makes coffee.
4. Have you seen the money that was on the table? a person who makes coffee
5. I don't like people who never stop talking. OK
6. I know somebody that can help you. OK
7. I know somebody who works in that shop. OK
8. Correct the sentences who are wrong. a person who works in that shop
9. My neighbour bought a car who cost £40,000. a person who bought a car who cost £40,000
the people we met
the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)

The man is carrying a bag.
It's very heavy.  

The bag (that) he is carrying is very heavy.

Kate won some money.
What is she going to do with it?

What is Kate going to do with the money
(that) she won?

You can say:
- The bag that he is carrying ...  or  The bag he is carrying ... (with or without that)
- ... the money that Kate won?  or  ... the money Kate won?

You do not need that/who/which when it is the object:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The man</td>
<td>was carrying</td>
<td>a bag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kate</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>some money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>wanted</td>
<td>some books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>some people</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Did you find the books you wanted?  (or ... the books that you wanted?)
- The people we met were very friendly.  (or The people who we met ...)
- Everything I said was true.  (or Everything that I said ...)

We say:
- The film we saw was very good.  (not The film we saw it was ...)

Sometimes there is a preposition (to/in/at etc.) after the verb:

Eve is talking to a man.  →  Do you know the man Eve is talking to?
We stayed at a hotel.  →  The hotel we stayed at was near the station.
I told you about some books.  →  These are the books I told you about.

We say:
- ... the books I told you about.  (not the books I told you about them)

You can say (a place) where ...

- The hotel where we stayed was near the station.  (= The hotel we stayed at ...)

You must use who/that/which when it is the subject (→ Unit 101):
- I met a woman who can speak six languages.  (who is the subject)
- Jack was wearing a hat that was too big for him.  (that is the subject)

a person who ..., a thing that/which ... (relative clauses 1) → Unit 101
Exercises

102.1 Make one sentence from two.

1 (Helen took some photographs. Have you seen them?)
   Have you seen the photographs Helen took?

2 (You gave me a pen. I’ve lost it.)
   I’ve lost the __________________________.

3 (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.)
   I like the __________________________.

4 (I gave you some flowers. Where are they?)
   Where are the __________________________?

5 (He told us a story. I didn’t believe it.)
   I __________________________.

6 (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)
   How __________________________?

102.2 Make one sentence from two.

1 (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.)
   The bag I was carrying was very heavy.

2 (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.)
   The __________________________.

3 (I’m wearing shoes. They aren’t very comfortable.)
   The __________________________.

4 (We invited some people to dinner. They didn’t come.)
   The __________________________.

102.3 You ask your friend some questions. Complete the sentences.

1 Your friend stayed at a hotel. You ask:
   What’s the name of __________________________?

2 Your friend was talking to some people. You ask:
   Who are the people __________________________?

3 Your friend was looking for some keys. You ask:
   Did you find the __________________________?

4 Your friend is going to a party. You ask:
   Where is the __________________________?

5 Your friend was talking about a film. You ask:
   What’s the name of __________________________?

6 Your friend is listening to some music. You ask:
   What’s that __________________________?

7 Your friend was waiting for a letter. You ask:
   Did you get __________________________?

102.4 Complete the questions. Use where.

1 John stayed at a hotel. You ask him:
   Did you like __________________________?

2 Sue had dinner in a restaurant. You ask her:
   What’s the name of the restaurant __________________________?

3 Sarah lives in a village. You ask her:
   How big is the __________________________?

4 Richard works in a factory. You ask him:
   Where exactly is __________________________?
at 8 o'clock  on Monday  in April

at

8 o'clock
10.30
midnight etc.

on

Sunday(s) / Monday(s) etc.
25 April / 6 June etc.
New Year's Day etc.

in

April/June etc.
2003/1968 etc.
summer/spring etc.

We say:

at the weekend
at night
at Christmas / at Easter
at the end of...
at the moment

- Are you going away at the weekend?
- I can't sleep at night.
- Where will you be at Christmas? (but on Christmas Day)
- I'm going on holiday at the end of October.
- Are you busy at the moment?

in the morning / in the afternoon / in the evening

- I always feel good in the morning.
- Do you often go out in the evening?

but

on Monday morning / on Tuesday afternoon / on Friday evening / on Saturday night etc.:

- I'm meeting Joanne on Monday morning.
- Are you doing anything on Saturday night?

We do not use at/on/in before:

this ... (this morning / this week etc.)
last ... (last August / last week etc.)
next ... (next Monday / next week etc.)
every ... (every day / every week etc.)

- Are you going out this evening?
- We go on holiday every summer. Last summer we went to Canada.
- I'm leaving next Monday.

(not on next Monday)

in five minutes / in a few days / in six weeks / in two years etc.

- Hurry! The train leaves in five minutes.

(= it leaves five minutes from now)
- Bye! I'll see you in a few days.

(= a few days from now)
### Exercises

#### 103.1 Write at/on/in.

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><strong>on</strong></td>
<td>6 June</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>24 September</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>the evening</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Thursday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>half past two</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>11.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td>Wednesday</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Christmas Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td>1997</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Christmas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>September</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>the morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Friday morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Saturday night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the end of the day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the weekend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>winter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 103.2 Write at/on/in.

1. Bye! See you **on** Friday.
2. Where were you **on** 28 February?
3. I got up **at** 8 o'clock this morning.
4. I like getting up early **at** the morning.
5. My sister got married **on** May.
7. Did you go out **on** Tuesday?
8. Did you go out **on** Tuesday evening?
9. Do you often go out **on** the evening?
10. Let's meet **at** 7.30 tomorrow evening.
11. I often go away **on** the weekend.
12. I'm starting my new job **on** 3 July.
13. We often go to the beach **in** summer.
14. George isn't here **on** the moment.
15. Jane's birthday is **on** December.
16. Do you work **on** Saturdays?
17. The company started **on** 1989.
18. I like to look at the stars **in** the night.
19. I'll send you the money **on** the end of the month.

#### 103.3 Look at Lisa's diary for next week and complete the sentences.

```
[Diary page with dates and events]
```

1. Lisa is going to the cinema **on** Wednesday evening.
2. She has to phone Chris.
3. She isn't doing anything special.
4. She's got a driving lesson.
5. She's going to a party.
6. She's meeting Sam.

#### 103.4 Write sentences with in ...

1. It's 8.25 now. The train leaves at 8.30. The train leaves **in** five minutes.
2. It's Monday today. I'll call you on Thursday. I'll call you **in** three days.
3. Today is 14 June. My exam is on 28 June. My exam is **in** two weeks.
4. It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3.30. Tom will be here **in** 30 minutes.

#### 103.5 Write at/on/in if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1. I'm going **on** Friday.
2. I'm going **on** next Friday. (already complete)
3. I always feel tired **on** the evening.
4. Will you be at home **on** this evening?
5. We went to France **in** last summer.
6. Laura was born **on** 1990.
7. What are you doing **on** the weekend?
8. I phone Robert **on** every Sunday.
9. Shall we play tennis **in** next Sunday?
10. I can't go to the party **on** Sunday.
11. I'm going out. I'll be back **in** an hour.
12. I don't often go out **in** night.
from ... to until since for

from ... to ...
- We lived in Japan from 1992 to 2001.
- I work from Monday to Friday.

You can also say from ... until ...
- We lived in Japan from 1992 until 2001.

until ...
- They're going away tomorrow.
- They'll be away until Friday.
- I went to bed early, but I wasn't tired.
- I read a book until 3 o'clock.
- Wait here until I come back.

You can also say till (= until):
- Wait here till I come back.

Compare:
- 'How long will you be away?' 'Until Monday.'
- 'When are you coming back?' 'On Monday.'

since + a time in the past (to now)

We use since after the present perfect (have been / have done etc.):
- Joe is in hospital. He has been in hospital since Monday.
  (= from Monday to now)
- Sue and Dave have been married since 1968.
  (= from 1968 to now)
- It has been raining since I arrived.

Compare:
- We lived in Japan from 1992 to 2001.
  We lived in Japan until 2001.
- Now we live in Canada. We came to Canada in 2001.
  We have lived in Canada since 2001. (= from 2001 until now)

We use for (not since) + a period of time (three days / ten years etc.):
- Joe has been in hospital for three days. (not since three days)

for + a period of time
- Gary stayed with us for three days.
- I'm going away for three days.
- I'm going away for the weekend.
- They've been married for ten years.

present perfect + for/since → Units 18-19 present perfect (I have lived) and past simple (I lived) → Unit 20
104.1 Read the information and complete the sentences. Use from ... to / until / since.

**ALEX**
I live in England now.
I lived in Canada before.
I came to England in 1999.

**KAREN**
I live in Switzerland now.
I lived in France before.
I came to Switzerland in 2003.

**CLARE**
I work in a restaurant now.
I worked in a hotel before.
I started work in the restaurant in 2001.

**ADAM**
I'm a journalist now.
I was a teacher before.
I started work as a journalist in 1998.

2 (Alex / Canada / → 1999) Alex lived in Canada 1999.
3 (Alex / England / 1999 →) Alex has lived in England.
4 (Karen / France / → 2003) Karen has lived in France.
7 (Clare / a restaurant / 2001 →) Clare has worked as a restaurant since 2001.
9 (Adam / a journalist / 1998 →) Adam has been a journalist since 1998.

**Now write sentences with for.**

10 (Alex / Canada) Alex lived in Canada for eight years.
11 (Alex / England) Alex has lived in England.
12 (Karen / Switzerland) Karen has lived in Switzerland.
13 (Clare / a hotel) Clare worked as a hotel.
14 (Clare / a restaurant) Clare has worked as a restaurant.
15 (Adam / a teacher) Adam was a teacher.
16 (Adam / a journalist) Adam has been a journalist.

104.2 Write until/since/for.

1 Sue and Dave have been married since 1968.
2 I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed until 10 o’clock.
3 We waited for Sue for half an hour, but she didn’t come.
4 ‘Have you just arrived?’ ‘No, I’ve been here for half past seven.’
5 ‘How long did you stay at the party last night?’ ‘For midnight.’
6 Dan and I are good friends. We have known each other for ten years.
7 I’m tired. I’m going to lie down for a few minutes.
8 Don’t open the door of the train until the train stops.
9 This is my house. I’ve lived here since I was seven years old.
10 Jack has gone away. He’ll be away for Wednesday.
11 Next week I’m going to Paris for three days.
12 I usually finish work at 5.30, but sometimes I work until six.
13 ‘How long have you known Anna?’ ‘We were at school together.’
14 Where have you been? I’ve been waiting for you for twenty minutes.
**Unit 105**

**before** | **after** | **during** | **while**
---|---|---|---
before, during and after

- Everybody feels nervous **before exams**.
- I fell asleep **during the film**.
- We were tired **after our visit** to the museum.

before, while and after

- Don’t forget to close the window **before you go out**.
- I often fall asleep **while I’m reading**.
- They went home **after they did the shopping**.

**during, while and for**

We use **during** + noun (**during the film**). We use **while** + verb (**while I’m reading**):

- We didn’t speak **during the meal**.
- We didn’t speak **while we were eating**. (**not during we were eating**)

Use **for** (**not during**) + *a period of time* (**three days** / **two hours** / **a year** etc.):

- We played tennis **for two hours**. (**not during two hours**)
- I lived in London **for a year**. (**not during a year**)

You can use **before/after** + **-ing** (**before going** / **after eating** etc.):

- I always have breakfast **before going** to work. (**= before I go to work**)
- **After doing** the shopping, they went home. (**= after they did**)

Remember we say **before going** (**not before to go**), **after doing** (**not after to do**) etc.:

- Before eating the apple, I washed it carefully. (**not before to eat**)
- I started work **after reading** the newspaper. (**not after to read**)

past continuous (**I was -ing**) → **Units 13-14**
**before/after/while/when** → **Unit 98**
**for** → **Unit 104**
prepositions + **-ing** → **Unit 112**
### Exercises

#### 105.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

| after | during | + | lunch | the end | they went to Australia |
|-------|--------|+|       |        |                            |
| before | while  |   | the concert | the exam | you’re waiting          |
|        |         |   | the course  | the night |                            |

1. Everybody was nervous **before the exam**.
2. I usually work four hours in the morning, and another three hours **during** the day.
3. The film was really boring. We left **after** it finished.
4. Anna went to evening classes to learn German. She learnt a lot **while** she was studying.
5. My aunt and uncle lived in London **for** five years.
6. A: Somebody broke a window **while** someone was looking. Did you hear anything?  
   B: No, I was asleep all the time.
7. Would you like to sit down **while** we’re waiting for our food?
8. ‘Are you going home **during** the exam?’ ‘Yes, I have to get up early tomorrow.’

#### 105.2 Write **during/while/for**.

1. We didn’t speak **while** we were eating.
2. We didn’t speak **during** the meal.
3. Gary called **while** you were out.
4. I stayed in Rome **for** five days.
5. Sally didn’t read any newspapers **while** she was on holiday.
6. The students looked very bored **during** the lesson.
7. I fell out of bed **while** I was asleep.
8. Last night I watched TV **for** three hours.
9. I don’t usually watch TV **during** the day.
10. Do you ever watch TV **while** you are having dinner?

#### 105.3 Complete the sentences. Use **-ing** (doing, having etc.).

1. After **doing** the shopping, they went home.
2. I felt sick after **eating** too much chocolate.
3. I’m going to ask you a question. Think carefully before **saying** it.
4. I felt awful when I got up this morning. I felt better after **having** a shower.
5. After **finishing** my work, I left the office and went home.
6. Before **going** to a foreign country, you should try and learn a little of the language.

#### 105.4 Write sentences with **before** + **-ing** and **after** + **-ing**.

1. They did the shopping. Then they went home.
   After **doing** the shopping, they went home.

2. John left school. Then he worked in a bookshop for two years.
   John worked **after** he left school.

3. I read for a few minutes. Then I went to sleep.
   Before **reading** for a few minutes, I went to sleep.

4. We walked for three hours. We were very tired.
   After **walking** for three hours, we were very tired.

5. Let’s have a cup of coffee. Then we’ll go out.
   Let’s **before** the coffee, we’ll go out.
in at on (places 1)

**in**
- in a room
- in a shop
- in a car
- in the water
- in a garden
- in a town
- in the city centre
- in Brazil

- 'Where's David?'  'In the kitchen. / In the garden. / In London.'
- What's in that box / in that bag / in that cupboard?
- Rachel works in a shop / in a bank / in a factory.
- I went for a swim in the river / in the pool / in the sea.
- Milan is in the north of Italy. Naples is in the south.
- I live in a big city, but I'd like to live in the country.

**at**
- at the bus stop
- at the door
- at the traffic lights
- at her desk

- There's somebody at the bus stop / at the door.
- The car is waiting at the traffic lights.
- Jane is working at her desk.

- at the top / at the bottom / at the end (of ...):
  - Write your name at the top of the page.
  - My house is at the end of the street.

**on**
- on a shelf
- on a plate
- on a balcony
- on the floor
- on a wall
- on a door
- on the ceiling

- There are some books on the shelf and some pictures on the wall.
- There are a lot of apples on those trees.
- Don't sit on the grass. It's wet.
- There is a stamp on the envelope.

- on a horse / on a bicycle / on a motorbike:
  - Who is that man on the motorbike?
106.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use in/at/on.

1 Where is he? In the kitchen.
2 Where are the shoes?
3 Where is the pen?
4 Where is the clock?
5 Where is the bus?
6 Where are the horses?
7 Where are they standing?
8 Where is she swimming?
9 Where is he standing?
10 Where is the spider?
11 Where is he sitting?
12 Where is she sitting?

106.2 Write in/at/on.

1 Don't sit on the grass. It's wet.
2 What have you got in your bag?
3 Look! There's a man on the roof. What's he doing?
4 There are a lot of fish in this river.
5 Our house is number 45 - the number is on the door.
6 'Is the post office near here?' 'Yes, turn left on the traffic lights.'
7 It's difficult to park on the centre of town. It's better to take the bus.
8 My sister lives in Brussels.
9 There's a small park on the top of the hill.
10 I think I heard the doorbell. There's somebody in the door.
11 Munich is a large city in the south of Germany.
12 There are a few shops at the end of the street.
13 It's difficult to carry a lot of things on a bicycle.
14 I looked at the list of names. My name was on the bottom.
15 There is a mirror on the wall in the living room.
**Unit 107**

**in**
- in bed
- in hospital
- in the sky
- in the world
- in a newspaper / in a book
- in a photograph / in a picture
- in a car / in a taxi
- in the middle (of ...)

- ‘Where’s Kate?’ ‘She’s in bed.’
- David’s father is ill. He’s in hospital.
- I like to look at the stars in the sky at night.
- What’s the largest city in the world?
- I read about the accident in the newspaper.
- You look sad in this photograph.
- Did you come here in your car?
- There’s a big tree in the middle of the garden.

**at**
- at home
- at work / at school
- at university / at college
- at the station / at the airport
- at Jane’s (house) / at my sister’s (house) / at the doctor’s / at the hairdresser’s etc.
- at a concert / at a party / at a football match etc.

- Will you be at home this evening?
- ‘Where’s Kate?’ ‘She’s at work.’
- Helen is studying law at university.
- I’ll meet you at the station, OK?
- A: Where were you yesterday?
  B: At my sister’s.
- I saw Tom at the doctor’s.
- There weren’t many people at the party.

Often it is possible to use in or at for buildings (hotels, restaurants etc.):
- We stayed at a nice hotel. or We stayed in a nice hotel.

**on**
- on a bus
- on the first floor
- on the way from A to B

- Did you come here on the bus?
- The office is on the first floor.
  (not in the first floor)
- I met Ann on the way to work / on the way home.
107.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use in/at/on.

1. (hospital) Where is she? In hospital.
2. (the airport) Where are they?
3. (bed) Where is he?
4. (the sky) Where are they?
5. (a party) Where are the stars?
6. (a plane) Where are they?
7. (the doctor’s) Where is Steve?
8. (the second floor) Where is the restaurant?
9. (work) Where is she?
10. (a taxi) Where are they?
11. (a wedding) Where are they?
12. (a ship) Where are they?

107.2 Write in/at/on.

1. Helen is studying law at university.
2. There was a big table at the middle of the room.
3. What is the longest river at the world?
4. Were there many people at the concert last night?
5. Will you be at home tomorrow afternoon?
6. Who is the man at this photograph? Do you know him?
7. Where are your children? Are they at school?
8. Gary is coming by train. I’m going to meet him at the station.
9. Charlie is at hospital. He had an operation yesterday.
10. How many pages are there at this book?
11. ‘Are you hungry after your journey?’ ‘No, I had something to eat at the train.’
12. I’m sorry I’m late. My car broke down at the way here.
13. ‘Is Tom here?’ ‘No, he’s at his brother’s.’
14. Don’t believe everything you see at the newspaper!
15. I walked to work, but I came home at the bus.
to  in   at  (places 3)

to

go/come/return/walk (etc.) to ...

to London

☐ We're going to London on Sunday.
☐ I want to go to Italy next year.
☐ We walked from my house to the centre of town.
☐ What time do you go to bed?

in/at (→ Units 106–107)

be/stay/do something (etc.) in ...

in London

☐ Piccadilly Circus is in London.
☐ My brother lives in Italy.
☐ The main shops are in the centre of town.
☐ I like reading in bed.

be/stay/do something (etc.) at ...

at the airport

☐ The bus is going to the airport.
☐ Karen didn't go to work yesterday.
☐ I went to a party last night.
☐ You must come to our house.

☐ The bus is at the airport.
☐ Sarah wasn't at work yesterday.
☐ I met a lot of people at the party.
☐ Helen stayed at her brother's house.

home

go/come/walk (etc.) home (without to):

☐ I'm tired. I'm going home.
(not to home)

☐ Did you walk home?

be/stay/do something (etc.) at home:

☐ I'm staying at home tonight.

arrive and get

arrive in a country or town (arrive in Italy / arrive in Paris etc.):

☐ They arrived in England last week. (not arrived to England)

arrive at other places (arrive at the station / arrive at work etc.):

☐ What time did you arrive at the hotel? (not arrive to the hotel)

get to (a place):

☐ What time did you get to the hotel?

☐ What time did you get to Paris?

get home / arrive home (no preposition):

☐ I was tired when I got home.  or  I was tired when I arrived home.
Exercises

108.1 Write to or in.
1 I like reading ______ bed.
2 We’re going ______ Italy next month.
3 Sue is on holiday ______ Italy at the moment.
4 I have to go ______ the bank today.
5 I was tired, so I stayed ______ bed late.
6 What time do you usually go ______ bed?
7 Does this bus go ______ the centre?
8 Would you like to live ______ another country?

108.2 Write to or at if necessary. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.
1 Paula didn’t go ______ work yesterday.
2 I’m tired. I’m going ______ home. (already complete)
3 Tina is not very well. She has gone ______ the doctor.
4 Would you like to come ______ a party on Saturday?
5 ‘Is Liz ______ home?’ ‘No, she’s gone ______ work.’
6 There were 20,000 people ______ the football match.
7 Why did you go ______ home early last night?
8 A boy jumped into the river and swam ______ the other side.
9 There were a lot of people waiting ______ the bus stop.
10 We had a good meal ______ a restaurant, and then we went back ______ the hotel.

108.3 Write to, at or in if necessary. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.
1 I’m not going out this afternoon. I’m staying ______ home.
2 We’re going ______ a concert tomorrow evening.
3 I went ______ New York last year.
4 How long did you stay ______ New York?
5 Next year we hope to go ______ Canada to visit some friends.
6 Do you want to go ______ the cinema this evening?
7 Did you park your car ______ the station?
8 After the accident three people were taken ______ hospital.
9 How often do you go ______ the dentist?
10 ‘Is Sarah here?’ ‘No, she’s ______ Helen’s.’
11 My house is ______ the end of the street on the left.
12 I went ______ Maria’s house, but she wasn’t ______ home.
13 There were no taxis, so we had to walk ______ home.
14 ‘Who did you meet ______ the party?’ ‘I didn’t go ______ the party.’

108.4 Write to, at or in if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.
1 What time do you usually get ______ work? 4 When did you arrive ______ London?
2 What time do you usually get ______ home? 5 What time does the train get ______ Paris?
3 What time did you arrive ______ the party? 6 We arrived ______ home very late.

108.5 Complete these sentences about yourself. Use to/in/at.
1 At three o’clock this morning I was ______ bed.
2 Yesterday I went ____________________________________________.
3 At 11 o’clock yesterday morning I was ____________________________________________.
4 One day I’d like to go ____________________________________________.
5 I don’t like going ____________________________________________.
6 At 9 o’clock yesterday evening I was ____________________________________________.
under, behind, opposite etc.

next to / beside / between / in front of / behind

A is next to B. or A is beside B.
B is between A and C.
D is in front of B.
E is behind B.

also
A is on the left.
C is on the right.
B is in the middle (of the group).

opposite / in front of

A is sitting in front of B.
A is sitting opposite C.
C is sitting opposite A.

by (= next to / beside)

☐ Our house is by the sea. (= beside the sea)
☐ Who is that man standing by the window?
☐ If you feel cold, why don’t you sit by the fire?

by the window

under

☐ The cat is under the table.
☐ The girl is standing under a tree.
☐ I’m wearing a jacket under my coat.

under the table
under a tree

above and below

A is above the line.
(= higher than the line)

B is below the line.
(= lower than the line)

The pictures are above the shelves.
The shelves are below the pictures.
Exercises

109.1 Where are the people in the picture? Complete the sentences.

1 Colin is standing ___________ Frank.
2 Frank is sitting ___________ Emma.
3 Emma is sitting ___________ Barbara.
4 Emma is sitting ___________ Donna and Frank.
5 Donna is sitting ___________ Emma.
6 Frank is sitting ___________ Colin.
7 Alan is standing ___________ Donna.
8 Alan is standing ___________ left.
9 Barbara is standing ___________ middle.

109.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1 The cat is ___________ the table.
2 There is a big tree ___________ the house.
3 The plane is flying ___________ the clouds.
4 She is standing ___________ the piano.
5 The cinema is ___________ the right.
6 She's sitting ___________ the phone.
7 The switch is ___________ the window.
8 The cupboard is ___________ the sink.
9 There are some shoes ___________ the bed.
10 The plant is ___________ the piano.
11 Paul is sitting ___________ Fiona.
12 In Britain people drive ___________ the left.

109.3 Write sentences about the picture.

1 (next to) ___________ The bank is next to the bookshop.
2 (in front of) ___________ The ___________ in front of ___________.
3 (opposite) ___________.
4 (next to) ___________.
5 (above) ___________.
6 (between) ___________.

229
up, over, through etc.

- Jane is going to France next week.
- We walked from the hotel to the station.
- A lot of English words come from Latin.

- We jumped into the water.
- A man came out of the house and got into a car.
- Why are you looking out of the window?
- I took the old batteries out of the radio.

We say put something in ... (not usually into):
- I put new batteries in the radio.

- Don’t put your feet on the table.
- Please take your feet off the table.
- I’m going to hang some pictures on the wall.
- Be careful! Don’t fall off your bicycle.
- We got on the bus in Princes Street.

- We walked up the hill to the house.
- Be careful! Don’t fall down the stairs.

- The plane flew over the mountains.
- I jumped over the wall into the garden.
- Some people say it is unlucky to walk under a ladder.

- A bird flew into the room through a window.
- The old road goes through the village.
- The new road goes round the village.
- The bus stop is just round the corner.
- I walked round the town and took some photographs.

You can also use around (= round):
- We walked around the town.

- I was walking along the road with my dog.
- Let’s go for a walk along the river.
- The dog swam across the river.

- They walked past me without speaking.
- A: Excuse me, how do I get to the hospital?
  B: Go along this road, past the cinema, under the bridge and the hospital is on the left.
110.1 Somebody asks you how to get to a place. You say which way to go. Look at the pictures and write sentences beginning Go ... .

110.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. The dog swam across the river.
3. A plane flew over the village.
4. A woman got into the car.
5. A girl ran into the road.
6. Suddenly a car came around the corner.
7. They drove through the village.
8. They got on the train.
9. The moon travels around the earth.
10. They got into the house near the window.

110.3 Complete the sentences. Use over/from/into etc.

1. I looked through the window and watched the people in the street.
2. My house is very near here. It's just around the corner.
3. 'Where's my phone?' 'You put it into your bag.'
4. How far is it from here to the airport?
5. We walked around the museum for an hour and saw a lot of interesting things.
6. You can put your coat over the back of the chair.
7. In tennis, you have to hit the ball from the net.
8. Silvia took a key from her bag and opened the door.
on

on holiday
on television
on the radio
on the phone
on fire
on time (= not late)

Jane isn’t at work this week. She’s on holiday.
We watched the news on television.
We listened to the news on the radio.
I spoke to Rachel on the phone last night.
The house is on fire! Call the fire brigade.
‘Was the train late?’ ‘No, it was on time.’

at

at (the age of) 21 / at 50 kilometres an hour / at 100 degrees etc.:
Lisa got married at 21. (or ... at the age of 21.)
A car uses more petrol at 120 kilometres an hour than at 90.
Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.

by

by car / by bus / by plane / by bike etc.:
Do you like travelling by train?
Jane usually goes to work by bike.

but on foot:
You can’t get there by car. You have to go on foot. (= you have to walk)

a book by ... / a painting by ... / a piece of music by ... etc.:
Have you read any books by Charles Dickens?
Who is that painting by? Picasso?

by after the passive (→ Unit 21):
I was bitten by a dog.

with/without

Did you stay at a hotel or with friends?
Wait for me. Please don’t go without me.
Do you like your coffee with or without milk?
I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.

a man with a beard / a woman with glasses etc.:
Do you know that man with the beard?
I’d like to have a house with a big garden.

about

talk/speak/think/hear/know about ...:
Some people talk about their work all the time.
I don’t know much about cars.

a book / a question / a programme / information (etc.) about ...:
There was a programme about volcanoes on TV last night. Did you see it?
111.1 Complete the sentences. Use on + these words:

- holiday
- the phone
- the radio
- television
- time

1. We heard the news __________.
2. Please don’t be late. Try to be here __________.
3. I won’t be back next week. I’m going __________.
4. ‘Did you see Linda?’ ‘No, but I talked to her __________.’
5. ‘What’s __________ this evening?’ ‘Nothing that I want to watch.’

111.2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with at/by/with etc.

1. I cut the paper __________ a pair of scissors.
2. She usually goes to work __________ car.
3. Who is the woman __________ short hair?
4. They are talking __________ the weather.
5. The car is __________ fire.
6. She’s listening to some music __________ Mozart.
7. The plane is flying __________ 600 miles an hour.
8. They’re __________ holiday.
9. Do you know the man __________ sunglasses?

111.3 Complete the sentences. Use at/by/with etc.

1. In tennis, you hit the ball __________ a racket.
2. It’s cold today. Don’t go out __________ a coat.
3. _Hamlet_, _Othello_ and _Macbeth_ are plays __________ William Shakespeare.
4. Do you know anything __________ computers?
5. My grandmother died __________ the age of 98.
6. How long does it take from New York to Los Angeles __________ plane?
7. I didn’t go to the football match, but I watched it __________ television.
8. My house is the one __________ the red door on the right.
9. These trains are very fast. They can travel __________ very high speeds.
10. I don’t use my car very often. I prefer to go __________ bike.
11. Can you give me some information __________ hotels in this town?
12. I was arrested __________ two policemen and taken to the police station.
13. The buses here are very good. They’re nearly always __________ time.
14. What would you like to drink __________ your meal?
15. We travelled from Paris to Moscow __________ train.
16. The museum has some paintings __________ Rembrandt.
afraid of ... / good at ... etc. (adjective + preposition)

- afraid of ...
- angry with somebody
- angry about something
- different from ...
  or different to ...
- fed up with ...
- full of ...
- good at ...
- interested in ...
- married to ...
- nice/kind of somebody to ...
  be nice/kind to somebody
- sorry about a situation
- sorry for/about doing something
  be/feel sorry for somebody

- Are you afraid of dogs?
- Why are you angry with me? What have I done?
- Are you angry about last night? (= something that happened last night)
- Lisa is very different from (or to) her sister.

- I'm fed up with my job. I want to do something different. (= I've had enough of my job)
- The room was full of people.
- Are you good at maths?
- I'm not interested in sport.
- Sue is married to a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)
- It was kind of you to help us. Thank you very much.
- David is very friendly. He's always very nice to me.

- I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm sorry about that.
- I'm sorry for/about not phoning you yesterday.
  (or I'm sorry I didn't phone you)
- I feel sorry for them. They are in a very difficult situation.

of/at/for (etc.) + -ing

After a preposition (of/at/for etc.), a verb ends in -ing:

| I'm not very good at telling stories. |
| Are you fed up with the same thing every day? |
| I'm sorry for you yesterday. |
| Thank you for me. |
| Mark is thinking of a new car. |
| Tom left without goodbye. (= he didn't say goodbye) |
| Without the shopping, they went home. |
Exercises

112.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with of/with/in etc.

1. He’s afraid of dogs.
2. She’s interested in science.
3. She’s married to a footballer.
4. She’s very good at languages.
5. He’s fed up with the weather.
6. A: Can I help you?
   B: Thanks, that’s very kind of you.

112.2 Complete the sentences with in/of/with etc.

1. I’m not interested in sport.
2. I’m not very good at sport.
3. I like Sarah. She’s always very kind to me.
4. I’m sorry about your broken window. It was an accident.
5. He’s very brave. He isn’t afraid of anything.
6. It was very nice of Jane to let us stay in her apartment.
7. Life today is very different from life 50 years ago.
8. Are you interested in politics?
9. I feel sorry for her, but I can’t help her.
10. Chris was angry about what happened.
11. These boxes are very heavy. They are full of books.
12. I’m sorry for getting angry at you yesterday.

112.3 Complete the sentences.

1. I’m not very good at telling stories.
2. I wanted to go to the cinema, but Paula wasn’t interested in going.
3. Sue isn’t very good at getting up in the morning.
4. Let’s go! I’m waiting for you in the middle of the night.
5. I’m waiting for you in the middle of the night.
6. Sorry I’m late! I’m waiting for you in the middle of the night.

112.4 Complete the sentences. Use without -ing.

1. (Tom left / he didn’t say goodbye) Tom left without saying goodbye.
2. (Sue walked past me / she didn’t speak) Sue walked past me.
3. (don’t do anything / ask me first) Don’t ask me first.
4. (I went out / I didn’t lock the door) I didn’t lock the door.

112.5 Write sentences about yourself.

1. (interested) I’m interested in sport.
2. (afraid) I’m afraid of dogs.
3. (not very good) I’m not very good at science.
4. (not interested) I’m not interested in music.
5. (fed up) I’m fed up with the weather.
Unit 113

(verb + preposition)

A

ask (somebody) for ...
belong to ...

happen to ...
listen to ...
speak/talk to somebody about something
thank somebody for ...
think about … or think of ...

wait for ...
write to somebody

but phone/call somebody (without to)

- A man stopped me and asked me for money.
- Does this book belong to you? (= Is this your book?)
- I can't find my pen. What's happened to it?
- Listen to this music. It's great.
- Did you talk to Paul about the problem? *(on the phone)* Can I speak to Chris, please?
- Thank you very much for your help.
- He never thinks about (or of) other people.
- Mark is thinking of (or about) buying a new computer.
- Wait for me. I'm nearly ready.
- I couldn't contact the company by phone. I had to write to them.
- I'm going to phone my parents this evening. *(not phone to my parents)*

B

look at / look for / look after

look at ...

- He's looking at his watch.
- Look at these flowers! They're beautiful.
- Why are you looking at me like that?

look for ...
 (= try to find)

- She's lost her key. She's looking for it.
- I'm looking for Sarah. Have you seen her?

look after ...
 (= take care of, keep safe)

- When Emily is at work, a friend of hers looks after her children.
- Don't lose this book. Look after it. (= Keep it safe.)

C

depend

We say depend on ...

- A: Do you like eating in restaurants?
  B: Sometimes. It depends on the restaurant. *(not it depends of)*

You can say it depends what/where/how (etc.) with or without on:

- A: Do you want to come out with us?
  B: It depends where you're going. or It depends on where you're going.

wait → Unit 54  preposition + -ing → Unit 112
113.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with to/for/at etc.

1. She's looking ______ at her watch.
2. He's listening ______ the radio.
3. They're waiting ______ a taxi.
4. Paul is talking ______ Jane.
5. They're looking ______ a picture.
6. Sue is looking ______ Tom.

113.2 Complete the sentences with to/for/about etc. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

1. Thank you very much ______ your help.
2. This isn't my umbrella. It belongs ______ a friend of mine.
3. (on the phone) Can I speak ______ Steven Davis, please?
4. (on the phone) Thank you ______ calling. Goodbye.
5. What happened ______ Ella last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
6. We're thinking ______ going to Australia next year.
7. We asked the waiter ______ coffee, but he brought us tea.
8. 'Do you like reading books?' 'It depends ______ the book.'
9. John was talking, but nobody was listening ______ what he was saying.
10. We waited ______ Karen until 2 o'clock, but she didn't come.
11. If you want to contact me, you can write ______ me at this address.
12. Don't forget to phone ______ your mother tonight.
13. He's alone all day. He never talks ______ anybody.
14. 'How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?' 'It depends ______ the type of room.'
15. Catherine is thinking ______ changing her job.

113.3 Complete these sentences. Use at/for/after.

1. I looked ______ the newspaper, but I didn't read it carefully.
2. When you are ill, you need somebody to look ______ you.
3. Excuse me, I'm looking ______ Hill Street. Can you tell me where it is?
4. Goodbye! Have a great holiday and look ______ yourself.
5. I want to take a photograph of you. Please look ______ the camera and smile.
6. Barry is looking ______ a job. He wants to work in a hotel.

113.4 Answer these questions with It depends...

1. Do you want to go out with us? ______
2. Do you like eating in restaurants? ______
3. Do you enjoy watching TV? ______
4. Can you do something for me? ______
5. Are you going away this weekend? ______
6. Can you lend me some money? ______

It depends where you're going.
It depends on the restaurant.

It depends ____________________________
It depends ____________________________

_______________________________
### A phrasal verb is a verb (go/look/be etc.) + in/out/up/down etc.

#### in
- I waited outside the shop. I didn’t **go in**.
- Sarah opened the door of the car and **got in**. (= into the car)

#### on
- The bus came, and I **got on**.

#### up
- He **stood up** and left the room.
- I usually **get up** early. (= get out of bed)
- We **looked up** at the stars in the sky.

#### away or off
- The thief **ran away**. (or ... ran off)
- Emma got into the car and **drove away**. (or ... drove off)

**be/go away** (= in/to another place)
- Tim has **gone away** for a few days.

#### out
- I went to the window and **looked out**.
- The car stopped and a woman **got out**. (= out of the car)

#### off
- Be careful! Don’t **fall off**.

#### down
- The picture **fell down**.
- Would you like to **sit down**?
- Lie **down** on the floor.

#### back
- Go away and don’t **come back**!
- We went out for dinner and then **went back** to our hotel.

**be back**
- Tim is away. He’ll be **back** on Monday.

#### round (or around)
- Somebody shouted my name, so I **looked round** (or **around**).
- We went for a long walk. After an hour we **turned round** (or **around**) and went back.
114.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these verbs + in/out/up etc.

1. I went to the window and __________________.
2. The door was open, so we __________________.
3. He heard a plane, so he __________________.
4. She got on her bike and __________________.
5. I said hello, and he __________________.
6. The bus stopped, and she __________________.
7. There was a free seat, so she __________________.
8. A car stopped, and two men __________________.

114.2 Complete the sentences. Use out/away/back etc.

1. ‘What happened to the picture on the wall?’ ‘It fell __________________.’
2. Wait a minute. Don’t go __________________. I want to ask you something.
3. Lisa heard a noise behind her, so she looked __________________ to see what it was.
4. I’m going __________________ now to do some shopping. I’ll be __________________ at 5 o’clock.
5. I’m feeling very tired. I’m going to lie __________________ on the sofa.
6. When you have read this page, turn __________________ and read the other side.
7. Mark is from Canada. He lives in London now, but he wants to go __________________ to Canada.
8. We haven’t got a key to the house, so we can’t get __________________.
9. I was very tired this morning. I couldn’t get __________________.
10. a: ‘When are you going __________________?’
    b: ‘On the 5th. And I’m coming __________________ on the 24th.’

114.3 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 6 (page 250).
Complete the sentences. Choose a verb from the box + on/off/up etc. If necessary, put the verb into the correct form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>break</th>
<th>fall</th>
<th>give</th>
<th>hold</th>
<th>speak</th>
<th>wake</th>
<th>+ on/off/up/down/over</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>carry</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>slow</td>
<td>take</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I went to sleep at 10 o’clock and __________________ at 8 o’clock the next morning.
2. ‘It’s time to go.’ __________________ a minute. I’m not ready yet.’
3. The train __________________ and finally stopped.
4. I like flying, but I’m always nervous when the plane __________________________ .
5. How are your children? How are they __________________________ at school?
6. It’s difficult to hear you. Can you __________________________ a little?
7. This car isn’t very good. It has __________________________ many times.
8. When babies try to walk, they sometimes __________________________ .
9. The hotel isn’t far from here. If you __________________________ along this road, you’ll see it on the left.
10. I tried to find a job, but I __________________________ . It was impossible.
11. The fire alarm __________________________ and everyone had to leave the building.
Sometimes a phrasal verb (put on / take off etc.) has an object. For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{verb} & \quad \text{object} \\
\text{put on} & \quad \text{your coat} \\
\text{take off} & \quad \text{your shoes}
\end{align*}
\]

You can say:
- put on your coat
- or put your coat on

But it/them (pronouns) always go before on/off etc.:
- put it on (not put on it)
- take them off (not take off them)
- It was cold, so I put on my coat.
  (or I put my coat on)
- I’m going to take off my shoes.
  (or take my shoes off)
- Here’s your coat. Put it on.
- Your shoes are dirty. Take them off.

Some more phrasal verbs + object:

**turn on / turn off** (lights, machines, taps etc.):
- It was dark, so I turned on the light.  
  (or I turned the light on)
- I don’t want to watch this programme. You can turn it off.

**also switch on / switch off** (lights, machines etc.):
- I switched on the light and switched off the television.

**pick up / put down**:
- Those are my keys on the floor. Can you pick them up for me?
- I stopped reading and put my book down.  
  (or put down my book)

**bring back / take back / give back / put back**:
- You can take my umbrella, but please bring it back.
- I took my new sweater back to the shop. It was too small for me.
- I’ve got Rachel’s keys. I have to give them back to her.
- I read the letter and then put it back in the envelope.
Exercises

Unit 115

115.1 Look at the pictures. What did these people do?

1 He ____________ the light.
2 She ____________________.
3 He ____________________.

115.2 You can write these sentences in three different ways. Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I turned on the radio.</th>
<th>I turned the radio on.</th>
<th>I turned it on.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I put on his jacket.</td>
<td>He ____________________</td>
<td>He ____________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I picked up the phone.</td>
<td>She took her glasses off.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They gave back the key.</td>
<td>We turned the lights off.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

115.3 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs with it or them.

bring back pick up switch off take back turn on

1 I wanted to watch something on television, so I ________ it on. 
2 My new lamp doesn’t work. I’m going to ____________________ to the shop. 
3 There were some gloves on the floor, so I ____________________ and put them on the table. 
4 The heating was on but it was too warm, so I ____________________ . 
5 Thank you for lending me these books. I won’t forget to ____________________ . 

115.4 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 7 (page 251).
Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box. Sometimes you will also need to use it/then/me.

| fill in knock down look up show round turn down |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| give up knock over put out | throw away try on |

1 They ________ a lot of houses ____________________ when they built the new road. 
2 That music is very loud. Can you ____________________ ? 
3 I ____________________ a glass and broke it. 
4 ‘What does this word mean?’ ‘Here’s a dictionary. You can ____________________ .’ 
5 I want to keep these magazines. Please don’t ____________________ . 
6 I ____________________ a pair of shoes in the shop, but I didn’t buy them. 
7 I visited a school last week. One of the teachers ____________________ . 
8 ‘Do you play the piano?’ ‘No, I started to learn, but I ____________________ after a month.’ 
9 Somebody gave me a form and told me to ____________________ . 
10 Smoking isn’t allowed here. Please ____________________ your cigarette ____________________ .
# Appendix 1

## Active and passive

### 1.1 Present and past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present simple</th>
<th>We make butter from milk.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Somebody cleans these rooms every day.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People never invite me to parties.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How do they make butter?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Butter is made from milk.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>These rooms are cleaned every day.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am never invited to parties.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How is butter made?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past simple</th>
<th>Somebody stole my car last week.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Somebody stole my keys yesterday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They didn't invite me to the party.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When did they build these houses?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My car was stolen last week.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My keys were stolen yesterday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I wasn't invited to the party.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When were these houses built?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present continuous</th>
<th>They are building a new airport at the moment. (= it isn't finished)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They are building some new houses near the river.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When I was here a few years ago, they were building a new airport. (= it wasn't finished at that time)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A new airport is being built at the moment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some new houses are being built near the river.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When I was here a few years ago, a new airport was being built.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present perfect</th>
<th>Look! They have painted the door.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>These shirts are clean. Somebody has washed them.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somebody has stolen my car.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Look! The door has been painted.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>These shirts are clean. They have been washed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My car has been stolen.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past perfect</th>
<th>Tina said that somebody had stolen her car.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tina said that her car had been stolen.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1.2 Will / can / must / have to etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Somebody will clean the office tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somebody must clean the office.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think they'll invite you to the party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They can't repair my watch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You should wash this sweater by hand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They are going to build a new airport.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somebody has to wash these clothes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They had to take the injured man to hospital.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The office will be cleaned tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The office must be cleaned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think you'll be invited to the party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My watch can't be repaired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This sweater should be washed by hand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A new airport is going to be built.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>These clothes have to be washed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The injured man had to be taken to hospital.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix 2
List of irregular verbs (→ Unit 24)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang</td>
<td>hung</td>
<td>hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light</td>
<td>lit</td>
<td>lit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td>meant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read (reed)*</td>
<td>read (red)*</td>
<td>read (red)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>ridden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>rung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rise</td>
<td>rose</td>
<td>risen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shine</td>
<td>shone</td>
<td>shone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>shot</td>
<td>shot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>shown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear</td>
<td>tore</td>
<td>torn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake</td>
<td>woke</td>
<td>woken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>worn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* pronunciation

The following verbs can be regular (-ed) or irregular (-t):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple / past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>burned or burnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>dreamed or dreamt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learned or learnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smell</td>
<td>smelled or smelt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

244
# Appendix 3
## Irregular verbs in groups

### The past simple and past participle are the same:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Past</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### The past simple and past participle are different:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Past</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake</td>
<td>woke</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Past</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>burnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smell</td>
<td>smelt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>dreamt (dremt)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant (ment)*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Past</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rise</td>
<td>rose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Past</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought (brought)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought (bought)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought (fought)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought (thought)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught (caught)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught (taught)*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Past</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read (read)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said (said)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Past</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td>threw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Past</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Past</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* pronunciation
Appendix 4
Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.)

4.1 In spoken English we usually pronounce 'I am' as one word. The short form (I’m) is a way of writing this:

- I am → I’m
- it is → it’s
- they have → they’ve
- I’m feeling tired this morning.
- ‘Do you like this jacket?’ ‘Yes, it’s nice.’
- ‘Where are your friends?’ ‘They’ve gone home.’

When we write short forms, we use ' (an apostrophe):

- I’m → I’m
- he’s → he’s
- you have → you’ve
- she will → she’ll

4.2 We use these forms with I/he/she etc.:

| am  →  'm | I’m |
| is   →  's |  's |
| are  →  're |  he’s |
| have →  've | she’s |
| has  →  's |  it’s |
| had  →  'd |  he’d |
| will →  'll |  she’d |
| would→  'd |  he’d |

- we’re
- you’re
- they’re
- we’ve
- you’ve
- they’ve
- we’d
- you’d
- they’d
- we’ll
- you’ll
- they’ll

- I’ve got some new shoes.
- We’ll probably go out this evening.
- It’s 10 o’clock. You’re late again.

's = is or has:
- She’s going out this evening. (she’s going = she is going)
- She’s gone out. (she’s gone = she has gone)

'd = would or had:
- A: What would you like to eat?
  B: I’d like a salad, please. (I’d like = I would like)
- I told the police that I’d lost my passport. (I’d lost = I had lost)

Do not use 'm/’s/’d etc., at the end of a sentence (→ Unit 40):
- ‘Are you tired?’ ‘Yes, I am.’ (not Yes, I’m.)
- She isn’t tired, but he is. (not he’s)

4.3 We use short forms with I/you/he/she etc., but you can use short forms (especially 's) with other words too:

- Who’s your favourite singer? (= who is)
- What’s the time? (= what is)
- There’s a big tree in the garden. (= there is)
- My sister’s working in London. (= my sister is working)
- Paul’s gone out. (= Paul has gone out)
- What colour’s your car? (= What colour is your car?)
4.4 Negative short forms (→ Unit 43):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Isn't (= is not)</th>
<th>Don't (= do not)</th>
<th>Can't (= cannot)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aren't (= are not)</td>
<td>Doesn't (= does not)</td>
<td>Couldn't (= could not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wasn't (= was not)</td>
<td>Didn't (= did not)</td>
<td>Won't (= will not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weren't (= were not)</td>
<td>Hasn't (= has not)</td>
<td>Wouldn't (= would not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haven't (= have not)</td>
<td>hadn't (= had not)</td>
<td>shouldn't (= should not)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We went to her house, but she wasn't at home.
- 'Where's David?'  'I don't know. I haven't seen him.'
- You work all the time. You shouldn't work so hard.
- I won't be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

4.5 's (apostrophe + s)

's can mean different things:

1. 's = is or has (→ section 4.2 of this appendix)
2. Let's = let us (→ Units 35, 53)
   - It's a lovely day. Let's go out. (= Let us go out.)
3. Kate's camera = her camera
   - my brother's car = his car
   - the manager's office = his/her office etc.
   (→ Unit 64)

Compare:
- Kate's camera was very expensive. (Kate's camera = her camera)
- Kate's a very good photographer. (Kate's = Kate is)
- Kate's got a new camera. (Kate's got = Kate has got)
# Appendix 5
## Spelling

### 5.1 Words + -s and -es (birds/watches etc.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun - s (plural) (→ Unit 66)</th>
<th>Hotel - hotels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bird → birds</td>
<td>mistake → mistakes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb + s (he/she/it -s) (→ Unit 5)</th>
<th>Remember - remembers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>think → thinks</td>
<td>live → lives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**but**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+ es after -s / -sh / -ch / -x</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bus → buses</td>
<td>pass → passes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dish → dishes</td>
<td>wash → washes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch → watches</td>
<td>teach → teaches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>box → boxes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**also**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>potato → potatoes</th>
<th>tomato → tomatoes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do → does</td>
<td>go → goes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-f / -fe → -ves</th>
<th>knife → knives</th>
<th>but</th>
<th>roof → roofs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shelf → shelves</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5.2 Words ending in -y (baby → babies / study → studied etc.)

**-y → -ies**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study → studies (not study)</th>
<th>Story → stories</th>
<th>Marry → marries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>family → families (not family)</td>
<td>city → cities</td>
<td>fly → flies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**-y → -ied (→ Unit 11)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study → studied (not studyed)</th>
<th>Try → tried</th>
<th>Marry → married</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>copy → copied</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**-y → -ier/-iest (→ Units 87, 90)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Easy → easier/easiest (not easier/easiest)</th>
<th>Happy → happiest/happier</th>
<th>Heavy → heaviest/heavier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lucky → luckier/luckiest/funnier/funniest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**-y → -ily (→ Unit 86)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Easy → easily (not easily)</th>
<th>Happy → happily</th>
<th>Heavy → heavily</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lucky → luckily/luckily</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**y does not change to i if the ending is -ay/-ey/-oy/-uy:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Holiday → holidays (not holidays)</th>
<th>Enjoy → enjoys/enjoyed</th>
<th>Stay → stays/stayed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Buy → buys</td>
<td>key → keys</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**but**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Say → said</th>
<th>Pay → paid (irregular verbs)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix 5

#### Spelling

#### 5.3 -ing

Verbs that end in -e (make/write/drive etc.) → -ing:
- make → making
- write → writing
- come → coming
- dance → dancing

Verbs that end in -ie → -ying:
- lie → lying
- die → dying
- tie → tying

#### 5.4 stop → stopped, big → bigger etc.

Vowels and consonants:

- **Vowel letters**: a e i o u
- **Consonant letters**: b c d f g k l m n p r s t w y

Sometimes a word ends in a *vowel + a consonant*. For example: stop, big, get.

Before -**ing/-ed/-er/-est, p/g/t** etc. become **pp/gg/tt** etc.

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>stop</strong></th>
<th>V+C</th>
<th>p → pp</th>
<th>stopping</th>
<th>stopped</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>run</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>n → nn</td>
<td>running</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>get</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>t → tt</td>
<td>getting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>swim</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>m → mm</td>
<td>swimming</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>big</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>g → gg</td>
<td>bigger</td>
<td>biggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hot</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>t → tt</td>
<td>hotter</td>
<td>hottest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>thin</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>n → nn</td>
<td>thinner</td>
<td>thinnest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This does *not* happen

(1) if the word ends in **two consonant letters (C+C)**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>C+C</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) if the word ends in **two vowel letters + a consonant letter (V+V+C)**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>V+V+C</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheap</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(3) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is *not* stressed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>stress</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>happen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remember</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* **but**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>prefer</th>
<th>pre-FER <em>(stress at the end)</em> → preferring/preferred</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>be-GIN <em>(stress at the end)</em> → beginning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(4) if the word ends in **-y or -w**. (At the end of words, y and w are not consonants.)

- enjoy → enjoying/enjoyed
- snow → snowing/snowed
- few → fewer/fewest
Appendix 6
Phrasal verbs (take off / give up etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs (→ Unit 114).

**on**

- **carry on** = *continue*
  - Don’t stop working. *Carry on.* (= continue working)
  - A: Excuse me, where is the station?
  - B: *Carry on* along this road and turn right at the lights. (= Continue along …)

- **also go on / walk on / drive on** etc. = *continue going/walking/driving* etc.
  - Don’t stop here. *Drive on.*

- **come on** = *be quick*
  - *Come on!* Everybody is waiting for you.

- **get on** = *manage (in a job, at school, in an exam etc.)*
  - How was your exam? How did you *get on*? (= how did you do?)

- **hold on** = *wait*
  - Can you *hold on* a minute? (= can you wait?)

**off**

- **take off** = *leave the ground (for planes)*
  - The plane *took off* 20 minutes late, but arrived on time.

- **go off** = *explode (a bomb etc.) or ring (an alarm, an alarm clock etc.)*
  - A bomb *went off* and caused a lot of damage.
  - A car alarm *goes off* if somebody tries to break into the car.

**up**

- **give up** = *stop trying*
  - I know it’s difficult, but don’t *give up.* (= don’t stop trying)

- **grow up** = *become an adult*
  - What does your son want to do when he *grows up?*

- **hurry up** = *do something more quickly*
  - *Hurry up!* We haven’t got much time.

- **speak up** = *speak more loudly*
  - I can’t hear you. Can you *speak up,* please?

- **wake up** = *stop sleeping*
  - I often *wake up* in the middle of the night.

- **wash up** = *wash the plates etc. after a meal*
  - Do you want me to *wash up*? (or … to do the washing-up?)

**down**

- **slow down** = *go more slowly*
  - You’re driving too fast. *Slow down!*

- **break down** = *stop working (for cars, machines etc.)*
  - Sue was very late because her car *broke down.*

**over**

- **fall over** = *lose your balance*
  - I *fell over* because my shoes were too big for me.
Appendix 7  Phrasal verbs + object (put out a fire / give up your job etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs + object (→ Unit 115).

• **in/out** fill in / fill out a form = complete a form
  □ Can you fill in this form, please? or Can you fill out this form, please?

• **out** put out a fire, a cigarette etc.
  □ The fire brigade arrived and put the fire out.

cross out a mistake, a word etc.
  □ If you make a mistake, cross it out.

• **on** try on clothes = put on clothes to see if they fit you
  □ (in a shop) This is a nice jacket. Shall I try it on?

• **up** give up something = stop doing it
  □ Sue gave up her job when her baby was born. (= she stopped working)
  □ ‘Are you still learning Italian?’ ‘No, I gave it up.’

look up a word in a dictionary etc.
  □ I didn’t know the meaning of the word, so I looked it up in a dictionary.

turn up the TV, radio, music, heating etc. = make it louder or warmer
  □ Can you turn the radio up? I can’t hear it.

wake up somebody who is sleeping
  □ I have to get up early tomorrow. Can you wake me up at 6.30?

• **down** knock down a building = demolish it
  □ They are going to knock down the school and build a new one.

turn down the TV, radio, music, heating etc.
  = make it more quiet or less warm
  □ The music is too loud. Can you turn it down?

• **over** knock over a cup, a glass, a person etc.
  □ Be careful. Don’t knock your cup over.
  □ There was an accident at the end of the road. A man was knocked over by a car.
  (or A man was knocked down by a car.)

• **away** throw away rubbish, things you don’t want
  □ These apples are bad. Shall I throw them away?
  □ Don’t throw away that picture. I want it.

put something away = put it in the place where you usually keep it
  □ After they finished playing, the children put their toys away.

• **back** pay somebody back = give back money that you borrowed
  □ Thank you for lending me the money. I’ll pay you back next week.

• **round/around** show somebody round/around = take somebody on a tour of a place

  □ We visited a factory last week. The manager showed us round.
Additional exercises

List of exercises:

1–2 am/is/are
3 present continuous
4 present simple
5–7 present simple, am/is/are and have (got)
8–9 present continuous and present simple
10–13 was/were and past simple
14 past simple and past continuous
15 present and past
16–18 present perfect
19–22 present perfect and past simple
23 present, past and present perfect
24–27 passive
28 future
29 past, present and future
30–31 past, present and future
32 -ing and to ...
33–34 a and the
35 prepositions

am/is/are Units 1–2

1 Write sentences for the pictures. Use the words in the boxes + is/isn't/are/aren't.

![Images of people in different scenarios]

The windows
Lisa
Kate
The children
Gary
The books
The hotel
The bus

on the table
hungry
asleep
open
full
near the station
a doctor
happy

1 The windows are open.
2 Lisa isn't happy.
3 Kate
4
5
6
7
8

252
2 Complete the sentences.
1 'Are you hungry?' ‘No, but ___________ I'm thirsty.’
2 ‘___________ your parents?’ ‘They're fine.’
3 ‘Is Anna at home?’ ‘No, ________________ at work.’
4 ‘______________ your keys?’ ‘On your desk.’
5 Where is Paul from? _______________ American or British?
6 ______________ very hot today. The temperature is 38 degrees.
7 ‘Are you a teacher?’ ‘No, ______________ a student.’
8 ‘______________ your umbrella?’ ‘Green.’
9 Where’s your car? _______________ in the car park?
10 ‘______________ tired?’ ‘No, I'm fine.’
11 ‘These shoes are nice. How ___________________?’ ‘Fifty pounds.’

3 Use the words in brackets to write sentences.
1 A: Where are your parents?
   B: ________________ TV. (they / watch / TV)
2 A: Paula is going out.
   B: ________________ (where / she / go?)
3 A: Where's David?
   B: ________________ (he / have / a shower)
4 A: ________________ ?
   B: No, they're asleep.
5 A: ________________ ?
   B: No, not at the moment.
6 A: Where are Sue and Steve?
   B: ________________ (they / come / now)
7 A: ________________ ?
   B: (why / you / stand / here?)

4 Complete the sentences. Use the present simple.
1 ___________ Sue always gets to work early.
2 ___________ we don't watch TV very often.
3 How often ___________ you wash your hair?
4 I want to go to the cinema, but ________________ to go.
5 ________________ to go out tonight?
6 ________________ near here?
7 ________________ a lot of people.
8 I enjoy travelling, but ________________ very much.
9 What time ________________ in the morning?
10 My parents are usually at home in the evening.
11 ________________ very often.
12 A: What ________________ work at five o'clock.
   B: ________________ in a hotel. (they / not / go out)

253
5 Read the questions and Clare’s answers. Then write sentences about Clare.

1 Are you married? No. 1 She isn’t married.
2 Do you live in London? Yes. 2 She lives in London.
3 Are you a student? Yes. 3
4 Have you got a car? No. 4
5 Do you go out a lot? Yes. 5
6 Have you got a lot of friends? Yes. 6
7 Do you like London? No. 7
8 Do you like dancing? Yes. 8
9 Are you interested in sport? No. 9

6 Complete the questions.

1 What’s your name? Brian.
   Are you married? Yes, I am.
   Where? In Barton Road.
   Any children? Yes, a daughter.
   How many? She’s three.

2 Who are you? I’m 29.
   What is your job? I work in a supermarket.
   Do you have a car? Yes, I have.
   How do you go to work? No, I usually go by bus.

3 Who is this man? That’s my brother.
   What does he do? He’s a travel agent.
   Where is he? No, in Manchester.

7 Write sentences from these words. All the sentences are present.

1 Sarah often / tennis
   Sarah often plays tennis.
2 my parents / a new car
   My parents have got a new car.
3 my shoes / dirty
   My shoes are dirty.
4 Sonia / 32 years old
   Sonia is 32 years old.
5 1 / two sisters
6 we often / TV in the evening
7 Jane never / a hat
8 a bicycle / two wheels
9 these flowers / beautiful
10 Mary / German very well
8. Complete the sentences.

1. Please be quiet. I’m working... [I/work]
2. Do you often go... [you/often/go] to the cinema?
3. What... [you/cook]?
4. Jack... [play] the piano very well.
5. I... [I/go] now. Goodbye!
6. Can I take this umbrella? [it/rain]
7. I... [I/not/watch] TV very much.
8. Excuse me, ... [we/look] for the museum.
9. What’s this word? How... [you/pronounce] it?

9. Which is right?

1. ‘Are you speaking / Do you speak English?’ ‘Yes, a little.’ (Do you speak is right)
2. Sometimes we’re going / we go away at weekends.
3. It’s a nice day today. The sun is shining / shines.
4. (You meet Kate in the street.) Hello, Kate. Where are you going / do you go?
5. How often are you going / do you go on holiday?
6. Emily is a writer. She’s writing / She writes books for children.
7. I’m never reading / I never read newspapers.
8. ‘Where are Michael and Jane?’ ‘They’re watching / They watch TV in the living room.’
9. Helen is in her office. She’s talking / She talks to somebody.
10. What time are you usually having / do you usually have dinner?
11. John isn’t at home at the moment. He’s visiting / He visits some friends.
12. *Would you like some tea?* ‘No, thank you. I’m not drinking / I don’t drink tea.’
10 Complete the sentences. Use one word only.

1. I got up early and _______ a shower.
2. Tom was tired last night, so he ______________ to bed early.
3. I ______________ this pen on the floor. Is it yours?
4. Kate got married when she ______________ 23.
5. Helen is learning to drive. She ______________ her first lesson yesterday.
6. 'I've got a new job.' 'Yes, I know. David ______________ me.'
7. 'Where did you buy that book?' 'It was a present. Jane ______________ it to me.'
8. We ______________ hungry, so we had something to eat.
9. 'Did you enjoy the film?' 'Yes, I ______________ it was very good.'
10. 'Did Andy come to your party?' 'No, we ______________ him, but he didn't come.'

11 Look at the questions and Kevin's answers. Write sentences about Kevin when he was a child.

When you were a child ...
- Were you tall?
- Did you like school?
- Were you good at sport?
- Did you play football?
- Did you work hard at school?
- Did you have a lot of friends?
- Did you have a bicycle?
- Were you a quiet child?

Kevin

- No. 1 He wasn't tall.
- Yes. 2 He liked school.
- Yes. 3 He had many friends.
- Yes. 4 He was good at sports.
- No. 5 He didn't work hard.
- Yes. 6 He had a lot of friends.
- No. 7 He didn't have a bicycle.
- Yes. 8 He was a quiet child.

12 Complete the questions.

1. Did you have _______ a nice holiday?
2. Where did you go _______?
3. _______ you there?
4. Amsterdam?
5. _______ you good?
6. _______ back?

Yes, it was great, thanks.
To Amsterdam.
Five days.
Yes, very much.
I have friends in Amsterdam, so I stayed with them.
Yes, it was warm and sunny.
Yesterday.

13 Put the verb in the right form (positive, negative or question).

1. It was a good party. _______ it. (I / enjoy)
2. _______ the shopping?' (you / do) 'No, I _______ time.' (I / have)
3. 'Did you phone Adam?' 'No, I'm afraid _______.' (I / forget)
4. I like your new watch. Where _______ it? (you / get)
5. I saw Lucy at the party, but _______ to her. (I / speak)
6. A: _______ a nice weekend? (you / have)

B: Yes, I went to stay with some friends of mine.
7. Paul wasn't well yesterday, so _______ to work. (he / go)
8. 'Is Mary here?' 'Yes, _______ five minutes ago.' (she / arrive)
9. Where _______ before he moved here? (Robert / live)
10. The restaurant wasn't expensive. _______ very much. (the meal / cost)
Complete the sentences. Use the past simple or past continuous.

1. It **was raining** (rain) when we **went** (go) out.

2. When I arrived at the office, Jane and Paul **were working** (work) at their desks.

3. I **opened** (open) the window because it was hot.

4. The phone **rang** (ring) when Sue **cooked** (cook) the dinner.

5. I **heard** (hear) a noise outside, so I **looked** (look) out of the window.

6. Tom **looked** (look) out of the window when the accident **happened** (happen).

7. Richard had a book in his hand, but he **did not read** (not/read) it. He **watched** (watch) TV.

8. Catherine bought a magazine, but she **did not read** (not/read) it. She didn’t have time.

9. I **finished** (finish) my meal, **paid** (pay) the bill and **left** (leave) the restaurant.

10. I **saw** (see) Kate this morning. I **walked** (walk) along the street and she **waited** (wait) for the bus.
Additional exercises

15. Complete the sentences. Use one of these forms:

- present simple (I work/drive etc.)
- present continuous (I am working/driving etc.)
- past simple (I worked/drove etc.)
- past continuous (I was working/driving etc.)

1. You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.
2. Last night Jenny fell asleep while she was reading.
3. Listen! Somebody is playing the piano.
4. 'Have you got my key?' 'No, I haven't given it back to you.'
5. David is very lazy. He doesn't like hard work.
6. Where did you go last year?
7. I saw Diane yesterday. She drove her new car.
8. A: Have you watched television very much?
   B: No, I haven't got a television set.
9. A: What did you do last Sunday morning?
   B: I was in bed asleep.
10. Andy isn't at home very much. He goes away a lot.
11. I'm trying to find a job at the moment. It's very difficult.
12. I'm tired this morning. I didn't sleep very well last night.

16. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.

1. Goodbye, Tom!
   5 minutes later
   Is Tom at home?
   No, he's just gone out.

2. Who's that man?
   I don't know. I've never seen him before.

3. Are you still watching the film?
   No, it just ended.

4. I'm looking for my glasses.
   Here they are! I've found them!
5 Is this a good book?
I don't know.

6 I'm looking for Julia. She was here a few minutes ago.

7 More coffee?
No, thanks.

8 Have you been to Sweden?
Yes, I went there a few years ago.

9 Hi. We went to the cinema later.

10 Enjoy the party!
Where are Steve and Jane?

11 Paul was asleep in the armchair. He slept up.

12 How long have you been here?
Since 2002.

13 Do you know Alan?
Yes, we've known each other for a long time.

14 The weather is horrible here. It rained all day.
17 Complete the sentences (1, 2 or 3 words).
1. Mark and Liz are married. They ________ married for five years.
2. David has been watching TV __________ 5 o'clock.
3. Martin is at work. He ________________ at work since 8:30.
4. ‘Have you just arrived in London?’ ‘No, I’ve been here ________________ five days.’
5. I’ve known Helen ___________________ we were at school together.
6. ‘My brother lives in Los Angeles.’ ‘Really? How long ________________ there?’
7. George has had the same job ___________________ 20 years.
8. Some friends of ours are staying with us at the moment. They ___________________ here since Monday.

18 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself.
1. I’ve never ________________ a horse.
2. I’ve ________________ to London many times.
3. I’ve just ____________________________________________
4. I’ve ____________________________________________(once / twice / a few times / many times)
5. I haven’t _____________________________________________ yet.
6. I’ve never __________________________________________
7. I’ve _____________________________________________ since _______________________
8. I’ve _____________________________________________ for _______________________

19 Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences (positive or negative).
1. A: Do you like London?
   B: I don’t know. I ___________ there.
2. A: Have you seen Kate?
   B: Yes, I _______ her five minutes ago.
3. A: That’s a nice sweater. Is it new?
   B: Yes, I ___________________________ it last week.
4. A: Are you tired this morning?
   B: Yes, I ___________________________ to bed late last night.
5. A: Do you want this newspaper, or can I have it?
   B: You can have it. I ___________________________ it.
6. A: Are you enjoying your new job?
   B: I ___________________________ yet. My first day is next Monday.
7. A: The weather isn’t very nice today, is it?
   B: No, but it ___________________________ nice yesterday.
8. A: Was Helen at the party on Saturday?
   B: I don’t think so. I ________________ her there.
9. A: Is your son still at school?
   B: No, he ___________________________ school two years ago.
10. A: Is Silvia married?
    B: Yes, she ___________________________ married for five years.
11. A: Have you heard of George Washington?
    B: Of course. He ___________________________ the first President of the United States.
12. A: How long does it take to make a pizza?
    B: I don’t know. I ___________________________ a pizza.
20 Write sentences with the present perfect or past simple.

1 A: Have you been to Thailand?
   B: Yes, I went there last year. (I / go / there / last year)

2 A: Do you like London?
   B: I don’t know. I’ve never been there. (I / never / there)

3 A: What time is Paul going out?
   B: He’s already gone. (he / already / go)

4 A: Has Catherine gone home?
   B: Yes, she left at 4 o’clock. (she / leave / at 4 o’clock)

5 A: New York is my favourite city.
   B: Is it? How many times have you been there? (how many times / you / there?)

6 A: What are you doing this weekend?
   B: I’m not sure. I haven’t decided yet. (I / not / decide / yet)

7 A: I can’t find my address book. Have you seen it?
   B: It’s on the table. I left it last night. (it / on the table / last night)

8 A: Do you know the Japanese restaurant in Leeson Street?
   B: Yes, I’ve eaten there a few times. (I / eat / there / a few times)

9 A: Paula and Sue are here.
   B: Are they? They arrived an hour ago. (what time / they / arrive?)

21 Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences.

1 A: Have you been to France?
   B: Yes, many times.
   A: When the last time?
   B: Two years ago.

2 A: Is this your car?
   B: Yes, it is.
   A: How long have you had it?
   B: It’s new. I bought it yesterday.

3 A: Where do you live?
   B: In Harold Street.
   A: How long have you lived there?
   B: Five years. Before that I lived in Mill Road.
   A: How long have you lived in Mill Road?
   B: About three years.

4 A: What do you do?
   B: I work in a shop.
   A: How long have you worked there?
   B: Nearly two years.
   A: What did you do before that?
   B: I was a taxi driver.
Additional exercises

22 Write sentences about yourself.
1 (yesterday morning) I was late for work yesterday morning.
2 (last night)
3 (yesterday afternoon)
4 (… days ago)
5 (last week)
6 (last year)

present, past and present perfect

23 Which is right?

1 ‘Is Sue working?’ (C) ‘No, she’s on holiday.’
   A Does Sue work?  B Is working Sue?  C Is Sue working?  D Does work Sue?

2 ‘Where?’ ‘In a village near London.’
   A lives your uncle  B does your uncle live  C your uncle lives
   D does live your uncle

3 I speak Italian, but French.
   A I speak not  B I’m not speaking  C I doesn’t speak  D I don’t speak

4 ‘Where’s Tom?’ ‘a shower at the moment.’
   A He’s having  B He have  C He has  D He has had

5 Why angry with me yesterday?
   A were you  B was you  C you were  D have you been

6 My favourite film is Cleo’s Dream. it four times.
   A I’m seeing  B I see  C I was seeing  D I’ve seen

7 I cut last night. I was too tired.
   A don’t go  B didn’t went  C didn’t go  D haven’t gone

8 Liz is from Chicago. She there all her life.
   A is living  B has lived  C lives  D lived

9 My friend for me when I arrived.
   A waited  B has waited  C was waiting  D has been waiting

10 ‘How long English?’ ‘Six months.’
   A do you learn  B are you learning  C you are learning
   D have you been learning

11 Paul is Canadian, but he lives in France. He has been there .
   A for three years  B since three years  C three years ago  D during three years

12 ‘What time?’ ‘About an hour ago.’
   A has Lisa phoned  B Lisa has phoned  C did Lisa phone  D is Lisa phoning

13 What when you saw her?
   A did Sue wear  B was Sue wearing  C has Sue worn  D was wearing Sue

14 ‘Can you drive?’ ‘No, a car, but I want to learn.’
   A I never drive  B I’m never driving  C I’ve never driven
   D I was never driving

15 I saw Helen at the station when I was going to work this morning, but she me.
   A didn’t see  B don’t see  C hasn’t seen  D didn’t saw
24 Complete the sentences.

1 These houses **were built** (build) 20 years ago. Before that there was a cinema here, but the building **was damaged** (damage) in a fire and had to **be knocked down** (knock down).

2 This bridge **was built** (build) in 1955. It **is used** (use) by hundreds of people every day. At the moment the bridge **is being painted** (paint).

3 This street **was called** (call) Wilton Street. It used to **be called** (call) James Street, but the name **was changed** (change) a few years ago.

4 This is a bicycle factory. Bicycles **were made** (make) here since 1961. It's the largest bicycle factory in the country. Thousands of bicycles **are produced** (produce) here every year.

25 Complete the sentences.

1 We **were invited** (invite) to the party, but we didn’t go.
2 The museum is very popular. Every year it **is visited** (visit) by thousands of people.
3 Many buildings **were damaged** (damage) in the storm last week.
4 A new road is going to **be built** (build) next year.
5 ‘Where’s your jacket?’ ‘It **has been cleaned** (clean). It will be ready tomorrow.’
6 She’s famous now, but in a few years her name will **be forgotten** (forget).
7 ‘Shall I do the washing-up?’ ‘No, it **is already done** (already/do).’
8 Milk should **be kept** (keep) in a fridge.
9 **Have you ever been bitten** (you/ever/bite) by a snake?
10 My bag **was stolen** (steal) from my car yesterday afternoon.

26 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

1 Somebody has stolen my keys.
   **My keys have been stolen.**
2 Somebody stole my car last week.
   **My car was stolen.**
3 Somebody wants you on the phone.
   **You are wanted on the phone.**
4 Somebody has eaten all the bananas.
   **All the bananas have been eaten.**
5 Somebody will repair the machine.
   **The machine will be repaired.**
6 Somebody is watching us.
   **We are being watched.**
7 Somebody has to do the housework.
   **The housework has to be done.**
Active or passive? Complete the sentences.

1. They ____________ (build) a new airport at the moment.
2. These shirts are clean now. They ____________ (wash).
3. ‘How did you fall?’ ‘Somebody ____________ (push) me.’
4. ‘How did you fall?’ ‘I ____________ (push),’
5. I can’t find my bag. Somebody ____________ (take) it!
6. My watch is broken. It ____________ (repair) at the moment.
7. Who ____________ (invent) the camera?
8. When ____________ (the camera/invent)?
9. These shirts are clean now. They ____________ (wash).
10. These shirts are clean now. I ____________ (wash) them.
11. The letter was for me, so why ____________ (they/send) it to you?
12. The information will ____________ (send) to you as soon as possible.

Which is the best alternative?

1. We’re having ____________ a party next Sunday. I hope you can come.
   A We have  B We’re having  C We’ll have
2. Do you know about Karen? ____________ her job. She told me last week.
   A She leaves  B She’s going to leave  C She’ll leave
3. There’s a programme on television that I want to watch. ____________
   in five minutes.
   A It starts  B It’s starting  C It will start
4. The weather is nice now, but I think ____________ later.
   A it rains  B it’s raining  C it will rain
5. ‘What ____________ next weekend?’ ‘Nothing. I’ve got no plans.’
   A do you do  B are you doing  C will you do
6. ‘When you see Tina, can you ask her to phone me?’ ‘OK, ____________ her.’
   A I ask  B I’m going to ask  C I’ll ask
7. ‘What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?’ ‘ ____________ tea, please.’
   A I have  B I’m going to have  C I’ll have
8. Don’t take that newspaper away. ____________ it.
   A I read  B I’m going to read  C I’ll read
9. Rachel is ill, so ____________ to the party tomorrow night.
   A she doesn’t come  B she isn’t coming  C she won’t come
10. I want to meet Sarah at the station. What time ____________?
     A does her train arrive  B is her train going to arrive  C is her train arriving
11. ‘Will you be at home tomorrow evening?’ ‘No. ____________’
     A I go out  B I’m going out  C I’ll go out
12. ____________ you tomorrow? ‘Yes, OK.’
     A Do I phone  B Am I going to phone  C Shall I phone
29 Complete the sentences.

1 A: Did you go (you/go) out last night?
   B: No, I stayed at home.
   A: What do you like (you/do)?
   B: I watch television.
   A: Do you go (you/go) out tomorrow night?
   B: Yes, I go to the cinema.
   A: Which film do you see (you/see)?
   B: I don’t know. I haven’t decided yet.

2 A: Are you on holiday here?
   B: Yes, we are.
   A: How long have you been here (you/be)?
   B: We arrived yesterday.
   A: And how long will you stay (you/stay)?
   B: Until the end of next week.
   A: Do you like it here (you/like)?
   B: Yes, we have a wonderful time.

3 A: Oh, I just remember (I/remember) — you were out.
   B: She always phones (she/phone) when I’m not here.
   It’s a message (she/write) a message?
   A: No, but she wants (she/want) you to call her back as soon as possible.
   B: OK, I’ll phone (I/phone) her now.
   A: It’s in my address book. I’ll get it for you.

4 A: I’m going out with Chris and Steve this evening.
   B: Where do you want to go (you/want)?
   A: To the Italian restaurant in North Street.
   B: Have you been there (you/eat)?
   A: Yes, I’ve been there two or three times. In fact I went there last night, but I’d love to go again!

5 A: I’ve lost my glasses again.
   B: When do you wear them (you/see)?
   A: Well, I come in (I/come) in.
   B: Where are they now, so where are they?
   A: No, I can’t find them (I/go) and look now.
30  Rachel is talking about her best friend, Carolyn. Put the verbs in the correct form.

Carolyn is my best friend. I remember very well the first time
(1) ........................................ (we/meet). It was our first day at secondary
school, and (2) ........................................ (we/sit) next to each other
for the first lesson. (3) ........................................ (we/not/know) any
other students in our class, and so (4) ........................................ (we/become)
friends. We found that (5) ........................................ (we/like) the same things,
especially music and sport, and so (6) ........................................ (we/spend)
a lot of time together.

(7) ........................................ (we/leave) school five years ago, but
(8) ........................................ (we/meet) as often as we can. For the last six
months Carolyn (9) ........................................ (be) in Mexico – at the
moment (10) ........................................ (she/work) in a school as a teaching
assistant. (11) ........................................ (she/come) back to England next
month, and when (12) ........................................ (she/come) back,
(13) ........................................ (we/have) lots of things to talk about.
(14) ........................................ (it/be) really nice to see her again.

31  Nick and his friend Jon are travelling round the world. Read the emails between Nick
and his parents, and put the verbs in the correct form.

Dear Mum and Dad
We’re in Los Angeles, the first stop on our round-the-world
trip! (1) ........................................ (we/arrive) here yesterday, and now
(2) ........................................ (we/stay) at a hotel near the
airport. The flight was twelve hours, but (3) ........................................
(we/enjoy) it. (4) ........................................ (we/watch)
some films and (5) ........................................ (sleep) a few hours,
which is unusual for me – usually (6) ........................................
(I/not/sleep) well on planes.
Today is a rest day for us and (7) ........................................
(we/not/do) anything special, but tomorrow
(8) ........................................ (we/go) to Hollywood
(9) ........................................ (see) the film studios.
(10) ........................................ (we/not/decide) yet
what to do after Los Angeles. Jon (11) ........................................
(want) to drive up the coast to San Francisco, but I’d prefer
(12) ........................................ (go) south to San Diego.
I hope all is well with you – (13) ........................................ (I/send)
you another email next week.
Love
Nick
Dear Nick
Thanks for your mail. It’s good to hear that (14) (you/have) a good time. We’re fine – Ellie and Jo (15) (work) hard for their exams next month. Dad has been busy at work and last week (16) (he/have) a lot of important meetings. He’s a little tired – I think (17) (he/need) a good holiday.

Keep in touch!
Love
Mum

A month later ...

Hi Mum and Dad

(18) (we/be) in California for a month now (19) (we/get) back to Los Angeles yesterday after (20) (see) many wonderful places. I think the place (21) (I/like) most was Yosemite National Park – it’s beautiful there and (22) (we/go) cycling a lot. The day before (23) (we/leave), Jon (24) (have) an accident on his bike. Luckily (25) (he/not/injure), but the bike (26) (damage).

(27) (we/change) our travel plans since my last message: now (28) (we/leave) for Hawaii on Monday (not Tuesday). (29) (we/stay) there for a week before (30) (fly) to New Zealand. (31) (that/be) different, I’m sure!
All the best to Ellie and Jo for their exams.

Love
Nick

Hi Nick

Have a good time in Hawaii! Ellie and Jo (32) (finish) their exams yesterday – (33) (I/let) you know when (34) (we/get) the results.

We’re all OK. Dad and I (35) (look) forward to our holiday next month. (36) (we/go) to Italy for two weeks – (37) (we/send) you an email from there.

Take care!
Love
Mum
32  Which is correct?

1  Don’t forget ________ off the light before you go out.
   A switch  B to switch  C switching

2  It’s late. I must ____________ now.
   A go    B to go    C going

3  I’m sorry, but I haven’t got time ________ to you now.
   A for talking  B to talk  C talking

4  Gary is always in the kitchen. He enjoys ____________
   A cook    B to cook    C cooking

5  We’ve decided ____________ away for a few days.
   A go    B to go    C going

6  You’re making too much noise. Can you please stop ____________?
   A shout  B to shout  C shouting

7  Would you like ____________ to dinner on Sunday?
   A come    B to come    C coming

8  That bag is too heavy for you. Let me ____________ you.
   A help    B to help    C helping

9  There’s a swimming pool near my house. I go ____________ every day.
   A to swim    B to swimming    C swimming

10 Did you use a dictionary ____________ the letter?
    A to translate    B for translating    C for translate

11 I’d love ____________ a car like yours.
    A have    B to have    C having

12 Could you ____________ me with this bag, please?
    A help    B to help    C helping

13 I don’t mind ____________ here, but I’d prefer to sit by the window.
    A sit    B to sit    C sitting

14 Do you want ____________ you?
    A that I help    B me to help    C me helping

15 I usually read the newspaper before ____________ work.
    A start    B to start    C starting

16 I wasn’t feeling very well, but the medicine made me ____________ better.
    A feel    B to feel    C feeling

17 Shall I phone the restaurant ____________ a table?
    A for reserve    B for reserving    C to reserve

18 Tom looked at me without ____________ anything.
    A say    B saying    C to say
33. Complete the sentences.

1. Can you pass the sugar, please?
2. Have you got ____________?
3. Have you got any milk?
4. What do you do?
5. I don't feel very well. I don't want to go to ____________.
6. What did you do last night?
7. Shall we walk home?
8. Can you play ____________?
9. I'm interested in ____________.
10. What's the difference between those cars?
Additional exercises

34 Write a/an or the if necessary. If a/an/the are not necessary, leave an empty space (-).

1 Who is _______ best player in your team?
2 I don't watch _______ television very often.
3 'Is there _______ bank near here?' 'Yes, at _______ end of this street.'
4 I can't ride _______ horse.
5 _______ sky is very clear tonight.
6 Do you live here, or are you _______ tourist?
7 What did you have for _______ lunch?
8 Who was _______ first President of _______ United States?
9 'What time is it?' 'I don't know. I haven't got _______ watch.'
10 I'm sorry, but I've forgotten your name. I can never remember _______ names.
11 What time is _______ next train to London?
12 Kate never sends _______ emails. She prefers to phone people.
13 'Where's Sue?' 'She's in _______ garden.'
14 Excuse me, I'm looking for _______ Majestic Hotel. Is it near here?
15 Gary was ill _______ last week, so he didn't go to _______ work.
16 Everest is _______ highest mountain in _______ world.
17 I usually listen to _______ radio while I'm having _______ breakfast.
18 I like _______ sport. My favourite sport is _______ basketball.
19 Julia is _______ doctor. Her husband is _______ art teacher.
20 My apartment is on _______ second floor. Turn left at _______ top of _______ stairs, and it's on _______ right.
21 After _______ dinner, we watched _______ television.
22 Last year we had _______ wonderful holiday in _______ south of _______ France.

---

35 Write a preposition (in/for/by etc.).

1 Helen is studying law _______ university.
2 What is the longest river _______ Europe?
3 Is there anything _______ television this evening?
4 We arrived _______ the hotel after midnight.
5 'Where's Mike?' 'He's _______ holiday.'
6 Tom hasn't got up yet. He's still _______ bed.
7 Lisa is away. She's been away _______ Monday.
8 The next meeting is _______ 15 April.
9 I usually go to work _______ car.
10 There's too much sugar _______ my coffee.
11 Kevin lived in London _______ six months. He didn't like it very much.
12 Were there a lot of people _______ the party?
13 What are you doing _______ the moment? Are you working?
14 I don't know any of the people _______ this photograph.
15 The train was very slow. It stopped _______ every station.
16 I like this room. I like the pictures _______ the walls.
17 'Did you buy that picture?' 'No, it was given to me _______ a friend of mine.'
18 I'm going away _______ a few days. I'll be back _______ Thursday.
19 Silvia has gone _______ Italy. She's _______ Milan at the moment.
20 Emma left school _______ fifteen and got a job _______ a shop.
If you are not sure which units you need to study, use this study guide.

You have to decide which alternative (A, B, C etc.) is right. SOMETIMES MORE THAN ONE ALTERNATIVE IS CORRECT.

If you don’t know (or if you are not sure) which alternatives are correct, study the unit (or units) on the right. You will find the correct sentence in the unit.

The key to this study guide is on page 314.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>STUDY UNIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Can you close the window, please?</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A I cold                   B I’m cold                   C I have cold            D It has cold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Tom</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A isn’t interested         B not interested          C doesn’t interested    D doesn’t interest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 ‘</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Is at home your mother    B Does your mother at home     C Is your mother at home   D Are your mother at home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 These postcards are nice.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A How much are they?        B How many are they?     C How much are they?   D How much is they?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 Look, there’s Sarah.</td>
<td>3, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A She wearing              B She has wearing          C She is wearing        D She’s wearing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6 You can turn off the television.</td>
<td>3, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A I’m not watch            B I’m not watching        C I not watching       D I don’t watching</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7 ‘</td>
<td>4, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Is working Paul          B Is work Paul            C Is Paul work         D Is Paul working</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8 Look, there’s Emily!</td>
<td>4, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Where she is going?       B Where she go?              C Where’s she going?   D Where she going?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9 The earth</td>
<td>5, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A going                    B go                           C goes                  D does go             E is go</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.10 We</td>
<td>5, 23, 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A often go                 B go often                    C often going           D are often go</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.11 We</td>
<td>6, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A not watch                B doesn’t watch              C don’t watch           D don’t watching</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.12 ‘</td>
<td>7, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Do you work              B Are you work              C Does you work         D Do you working     E Work you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.13 I don’t understand this sentence. What</td>
<td>7, 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A mean this word           B means this word            C does mean this word   D does this word mean   E this word means</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

271
1.14 Please be quiet.  
A I working.  B I work.  C I'm working.  D I'm work.  
1.15 Tom a shower every morning.  
A has  B having  C is having  D have  
1.16 What at the weekend?  
A do you usually  B are you usually doing  C are you usually do  
D do you usually do  E do you usually  
1.17 Sarah isn't feeling well. a headache.  
A She have  B She have got  C She has  D She's got  
1.18 Tracey and Jeff any children.  
A don't have  B doesn't have  C no have  D haven't got  E hasn't got

Past

2.1 The weather last week.  
A is good  B was good  C were good  D good  E had good  
2.2 Why late this morning?  
A you was  B did you  C was you  D you were  E were you  
2.3 Terry in a bank from 1996 to 2003.  
A work  B working  C works  D worked  E was work  
2.4 Caroline the cinema three times last week.  
A go  B went  C goes  D got  E was  
2.5 I television yesterday.  
A didn't watch  B didn't watched  C wasn't watched  D don't watch  E didn't watching  
2.6 'How ?' 'I don't know. I didn't see it.'  
A happened the accident  B did happen the accident  
C does the accident happen  D did the accident happen  
E the accident happened  
2.7 What at 11.30 yesterday?  
A were you doing  B was you doing  C you were doing  D were you do  E you was doing  
2.8 Jack was reading a book when the phone .  
A ringing  B ring  C rang  D was ringing  E was ring  
2.9 I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They at the bus stop.  
A waiting  B waited  C were waiting  D was waiting  E were waited

Present perfect

3.1 'Where's Rebecca?' 'to bed.'  
A She is gone  B She has gone  C She goes  D She have gone  E She's gone  
3.2 'Are Diane and Paul here?' 'No, they .'  
A don't arrive yet  B have already arrived  C haven't already arrived  D haven't arrived yet
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

3.3 My sister _____________ by plane.
A has never travel  B has never travelled  C is never travelled
D has never been travelled  E have never travelled

3.4 _____________ that woman before, but I can’t remember where.
A I see  B I seen  C I’ve saw  D I’ve seen  E I’ve seeing

3.5 ‘How long _____________ married?’ ‘Since 1998.’
A you are  B you have been  C has you been  D are you
E have you been

3.6 ‘Do you know Lisa?’ ‘Yes, _____________ her for a long time.’
A I knew  B I’ve known  C I know  D I am knowing

3.7 Richard has been in Canada _____________.
A for six months  B since six months  C six months ago  D in six months

3.8 ‘When did Tom go out?’ _____________
A For ten minutes.  B Since ten minutes.  C Ten minutes ago.
D In ten minutes.

3.9 We _____________ a holiday last year.
A don’t have  B haven’t had  C hasn’t had  D didn’t have
E didn’t had

3.10 Where _____________ on Sunday afternoon? I couldn’t find you.
A you were  B you have been  C was you  D have you been
E were you

Passive

4.1 This house _____________ 100 years ago.
A is built  B is building  C was building  D was built  E built

4.2 We _____________ to the party last week.
A didn’t invite  B didn’t invited  C weren’t invited  D wasn’t invited
E haven’t been invited

4.3 ‘Where _____________ born?’ ‘In Cairo.’
A you are  B you were  C was you  D are you  E were you

4.4 My car is at the garage. It _____________.
A is being repaired  B is repairing  C have been repaired  D repaired
E repairs

4.5 I can’t find my keys. I think _____________.
A they’ve been stolen  B they are stolen  C they’ve stolen
D they’re being stolen

Verb forms

5.1 It _____________, so we didn’t need an umbrella.
A wasn’t rained  B wasn’t rain  C didn’t raining  D wasn’t raining

5.2 Somebody _____________ this window.
A has broke  B has broken  C has breaked  D has break
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

Future

6.1 Andrew __________ tennis tomorrow.
   A is playing  B play  C plays  D is play

6.2 __________ out tonight?
   A Are you going  B Are you go  C Do you go  D Go you
   E Do you going

6.3 ‘What time is the concert tonight?’ ‘It __________ at 7.30.’
   A is start  B is starting  C starts  D start  E starting

6.4 What __________ to the wedding next week?
   A are you wearing  B are you going to wear  C do you wear
   D you are going to wear

6.5 I think Kelly __________ the exam.
   A passes  B will pass  C will be pass  D will passing

6.6 __________ to the cinema on Saturday. Do you want to come with us?
   A We go  B We’ll go  C We’re going  D We will going

6.7 ‘___________ you tomorrow, OK?’ ‘OK, bye.’
   A I phone  B I phoning  C I’m phoning  D I’ll phone

6.8 There’s a good film on TV tonight. __________ it.
   A I watch  B I’ll watch  C I’m going to watch  D I’ll watching

6.9 It’s a nice day. __________ for a walk?
   A Do we go  B Shall we go  C Are we go  D We go  E Go we

Modals, imperative etc.

7.1 __________ to the cinema this evening, but I’m not sure.
   A I’ll go  B I’m going  C I may go  D I might go

7.2 ‘___________ here?’ ‘Yes, of course.’
   A Can I sit  B Do I sit  C May I sit  D Can I to sit

7.3 I’m having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel __________.
   A can’t come  B can’t to come  C can’t coming  D couldn’t come

7.4 Before Maria came to Britain, she __________ understand much English.
   A can  B can’t  C not  D couldn’t  E doesn’t

7.5 We __________ walk home last night. There were no buses.
   A have to  B had to  C must  D must to  E must have

7.6 I __________ go yet. I can stay a little longer.
   A must  B mustn’t  C must not  D don’t need  E don’t need to

7.7 It’s a good film. You __________ go and see it.
   A should to  B ought to  C ought  D should  E need

7.8 What time __________ go to the dentist tomorrow?
   A you must  B you have to  C have you to  D do you have to

7.9 We __________ wait long for the bus – it came in a few minutes.
   A don’t have to  B hadn’t to  C didn’t have to  D didn’t had to  E mustn’t
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

7.10 ‘________________ some coffee?’ ‘No, thank you.’
A Are you liking  B You like  C Would you like  D Do you like

7.11 Please ________________ . Stay here with me.
A don’t go  B you no go  C go not  D you don’t go

7.12 Dave ________________ in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.
A working  B works  C worked  D use to work  E used to work

There and it

8.1 Excuse me, ________________ a hotel near here?
A has there  B is there  C there is  D is it

8.2 ________________ a lot of accidents on this road. It’s very dangerous.
A Have  B It has  C There have  D They are  E There are

8.3 I was hungry when I got home, but ________________ anything to eat.
A there wasn’t  B there weren’t  C it wasn’t  D there hasn’t been

8.4 ________________ three kilometres from our house to the city centre.
A It’s  B It has  C There is  D There are

8.5 ________________ true that you’re going away?
A Is there  B Is it  C Is  D Are you

Auxiliary verbs

9.1 I haven’t got a car, but my sister ________________ .
A have  B is  C has  D hasn’t  E has got

9.2 I don’t like hot weather, but Sue ________________ .
A does  B doesn’t  C do  D does like  E likes

9.3 ‘Nicole got married last week.’ ‘______________ Really?’
A Is she?  B Got she?  C Did she?  D Has she?

9.4 You haven’t met my mother, ________________ ?
A haven’t you  B have you  C did you  D you have  E you haven’t

9.5 Bill doesn’t watch TV. He doesn’t read newspapers ________________ .
A too  B either  C neither  D never

9.6 ‘I’d like to go to Australia.’ ‘______________’
A So do I.  B So am I.  C So would I.  D Neither do I.
E So I would.

9.7 Sue ________________ much at weekends.
A don’t  B doesn’t  C don’t do  D doesn’t do

Questions

10.1 ‘When ________________ ?’ ‘I’m not sure. More than 100 years ago.’
A did the telephone invent  B has the telephone invented
C was invented the telephone  D was the telephone invented
E the telephone was invented

10.2 ‘I broke my finger last week.’ ‘How ________________ that?’
A did you  B you did  C you did do  D did you do
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

10.3 Why ________________ me last night? I was waiting for you to phone.
A didn’t you phone  B you not phone  C you don’t phone
D you didn’t phone

10.4 ‘Who ________________ in this house?’ ‘I don’t know.’
A lives  B does live  C does lives  D living

10.5 What ________________ when you told him the story?
A said Paul  B did Paul say  C Paul said  D did Paul said

10.6 ‘Tom’s father is in hospital.’ ________________
A In which hospital he is?  B In which hospital he is in?
C Which hospital he is in?  D Which hospital is he in?

10.7 Did you have a good holiday? ________________
A How was the weather like?  B What was the weather like?
C What the weather was like?  D Was the weather like?

10.8 ________________ taller – Joe or Gary?
A Who is  B What is  C Which is  D Who has

10.9 There are four umbrellas here. ________________ is yours?
A What  B Who  C Which  D Who

10.10 How long ________________ to cross the Atlantic by ship?
A is it  B does it need  C does it take  D does it want

10.11 I don’t remember what ________________ at the party.
A Kate was wearing  B was wearing Kate  C was Kate wearing

10.12 ‘Do you know ________________?’ ‘Yes, I think so.’
A if Jack is at home  B is Jack at home  C whether Jack is at home
D that Jack is at home

Reported speech

11.1 I saw Steve a week ago. He said that ________________ me, but he didn’t.
A he phone  B he phones  C he’ll phone  D he’s going to phone
E he would phone

11.2 ‘Why did Tim go to bed so early?’ ‘He ________________.’
A said he was tired  B said that he was tired  C said me he was tired
D told me he was tired  E told that he was tired

-ing and to ...

12.1 You shouldn’t ________________ so hard.
A working  B work  C to work  D worked

12.2 It’s late. I ________________ now.
A must to go  B have go  C have to going  D have to go

12.3 Tina has decided ________________ her car.
A sell  B to sell  C selling  D to selling

12.4 I don’t mind ________________ early.
A get up  B to get up  C getting up  D to getting up
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

12.5 Do you like ____________ early?
   A get up   B to get up   C getting up   D to getting up

12.6 Do you want ____________ you some money?
   A me lend   B me lending   C me to lend   D that I lend

12.7 He's very funny. He makes ____________.
   A me laugh   B me laughing   C me to laugh   D that I laugh

12.8 Paula went to the shop ____________ a newspaper.
   A for get   B for to get   C for getting   D to get   E get

Go, get, do, make and have

13.1 It's a nice day. Let's go ____________.
   A for a swim   B on a swim   C to swimming   D swimming

13.2 I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she ____________ better soon.
   A has   B makes   C gets   D goes

13.3 Kate ____________ the car and drove away.
   A went into   B went in   C got in   D got into

13.4 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll ____________ it.'
   A do   B make   C get   D open

13.5 I'm sorry, I ____________ a mistake.
   A did   B made   C get   D had

13.6 '______________ a good time in London?' 'Yes, I really enjoyed it.'
   A Have you   B Had you   C Do you have   D Did you have

Pronouns and possessives

14.1 I don't want this book. You can have ____________.
   A it   B them   C her   D him

14.2 Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with ____________?
   A her   B they   C them   D him

14.3 I know Donna, but I don't know ____________ husband.
   A their   B his   C she   D her

14.4 Oxford is famous for ____________ university.
   A his   B its   C it's   D their

14.5 I didn't have an umbrella, so Helen gave me ____________.
   A her   B hers   C her umbrella   D she's

14.6 I went out to meet a friend of ____________.
   A mine   B my   C me   D I   E myself

14.7 We had a good holiday. We enjoyed ____________.
   A us   B our   C ours   D ourself   E ourselves

14.8 Kate and Helen are good friends. They know ____________ well.
   A each other   B them   C themselves   D theirselves
14.9 Have you met ____________________________________?
   A the wife of Mr Black  B Mr Black’s wife  C the wife Mr Black
   D Mr Black’s wife    E the Mr Black’s wife

14.10 Have you seen ____________________________________?
   A the car of my parents  B my parent’s car  C my parents’ car
   D my parents car

A and the

15.1 I’m going to buy ____________________________.
   A hat and umbrella  B a hat and a umbrella  C a hat and an umbrella
   D an hat and an umbrella

15.2 ‘What’s your job?’ ‘__________________________’

15.3 I’m going shopping. I need ________________________.
   A some new jeans  B a new jeans  C a new pair of jeans
   D a new pair jeans

15.4 I like the people here. ______________________ very friendly.
   A She is  B They are  C They is  D It is  E He is

15.5 We can’t get into the house without ____________________.
   A some key  B a key  C key

15.6 I’d like ____________________ about hotels in London.
   A some information  B some informations  C an information

15.7 We enjoyed our holiday. __________________________ was very nice.
   A Hotel  B A hotel  C An hotel  D The hotel

15.8 My house is at ________________________.
   A end of street  B end of the street  C the end of the street
   D the end of street

15.9 What did you have for ________________________?
   A the breakfast  B breakfast  C a breakfast

15.10 I finish ______________________________ at 5 o’clock every day.
   A the work  B work  C a work

15.11 I’m tired. I’m going ____________________________.
   A in bed  B in the bed  C to a bed  D to the bed  E to bed

15.12 We don’t eat __________________________ very often.
   A the meat  B some meat  C a meat  D meat

15.13 __________________________ is in New York.
   A The Times Square  B Times Square

15.14 My friends are staying at ________________________.
   A the Regent Hotel  B Regent Hotel
Determiners and pronouns

16.1 ‘I’m going on holiday next week.’ ‘Oh, ......................... nice.’
   A it’s   B this is   C that’s

16.2 ‘Is there a bank near here?’ ‘Yes, there’s ..................... at the end of this street.’
   A some   B it   C one   D a one

16.3 This cup is dirty. Can I have ...................... ?
   A clean one   B a clean one   C clean   D a clean

16.4 I’m going shopping. I’m going to buy ...................... clothes.
   A any   B some

16.5 ‘Where’s your luggage?’ ‘I haven’t got ...................... .’
   A one   B some   C any

16.6 Tracey and Jeff ...................... .
   A have got no children   B haven’t got no children   C haven’t got any children
   D have got any children

16.7 ‘How much money have you got?’ ‘...................... .’

16.8 There is ...................... in the room. It’s empty.
   A anybody   B nobody   C anyone   D no-one

16.9 ‘What did you say?’ ‘...................... .’

16.10 I’m hungry. I want ...................... .
   A something for eat   B something to eat   C something for eating

16.11 Bill watches TV for about two hours ...................... .
   A all evening   B all evenings   C all the evenings   D every evenings
   E every evening

16.12 ...................... friends.
   A Everybody need   B Everybody needs   C Everyone need   D Everyone needs

16.13 ...................... children like playing.
   A Most   B The most   C Most of   D The most of

16.14 I like ...................... those pictures.
   A both   B both of   C either   D either of

16.15 I haven’t read ...................... these books.
   A neither   B neither of   C either   D either of

16.16 Have you got ...................... friends?
   A a lot of   B much   C many   D much of   E many of

16.17 We like films, so we go to the cinema ...................... .
   A a lot of   B much   C many   D a lot

16.18 There were ...................... people in the theatre. It was nearly empty.
   A a little   B few   C little   D a few of

16.19 They have ...................... money, so they’re not poor.
   A a little   B a few   C few   D little   E little of
Adjectives and adverbs

17.1 I don't speak any ________________ .  
   A foreign languages  
   B languages foreign  
   C languages foreigns

17.2 He ate his dinner very ________________ .  
   A quick  
   B quicker  
   C quickly

17.3 You speak English very ________________ .  
   A good  
   B fluent  
   C well  
   D slow

17.4 Helen wants ________________ .  
   A a more big car  
   B a car more big  
   C a car bigger  
   D a bigger car

17.5 'Do you feel better today?' 'No, I feel ________________ .'  
   A good  
   B worse  
   C more bad  
   D more worse

17.6 Athens is older ________________ Rome.  
   A as  
   B than  
   C that  
   D of

17.7 I can run faster ________________ .  
   A than him  
   B that he can  
   C than he can  
   D as he can  
   E as he

17.8 Tennis isn't ________________ football.  
   A popular as  
   B popular than  
   C as popular than  
   D so popular that  
   E as popular as

17.9 The weather today is the same ________________ yesterday.  
   A as  
   B that  
   C than  
   D like

17.10 The Europa Hotel is ________________ in the city.  
   A the more expensive hotel  
   B the most expensive hotel  
   C the hotel most expensive  
   D the hotel the more expensive  
   E the hotel more expensive

17.11 The film was very bad. I think it's the ________________ film I've ever seen.  
   A worse  
   B baddest  
   C most bad  
   D worst  
   E more worse

17.12 Why don't you buy a car? You've got ________________ .  
   A enough money  
   B money enough  
   C enough of money

17.13 Is your English ________________ a conversation?  
   A enough good to have  
   B good enough for have  
   C enough good for  
   D good enough to have

17.14 I'm ________________ out.  
   A too tired for go  
   B too much tired for going  
   C too tired to go  
   D too much tired to go

Word order

18.1 Sue is interested in the news. She ________________ .  
   A reads every day a newspaper  
   B reads a newspaper every day  
   C every day reads a newspaper

18.2 ________________ coffee in the morning.  
   A I drink always  
   B Always I drink  
   C I always drink
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

18.3 _______________ during the day.
   A They are at home never  B They are never at home
   C They never are at home  D Never they are at home

18.4 ‘Where’s Emma?’ ‘She _______________.’
   A isn’t here yet  B isn’t here already  C isn’t here still

18.5 I locked the door and I gave _______________.
   A Sarah the keys  B to Sarah the keys  C the keys Sarah
   D the keys to Sarah

Conjunctions and clauses

19.1 I can’t talk to you now. I’ll talk to you later when _______________ more time.
   A I’ll have  B I had  C I have  D I’m going to have

19.2 _______________ late this evening, don’t wait for me.
   A If I’m  B If I’ll be  C When I’m  D When I’ll be

19.3 I don’t know the answer. If I _______________ the answer, I’d tell you.
   A know  B would know  C have known  D knew

19.4 I like this jacket. _______________ it if it wasn’t so expensive.
   A I buy  B I’ll buy  C I bought  D I’d bought  E I’d buy

19.5 Emma lives in a house _______________ is 400 years old.
   A who  B that  C which  D it  E what

19.6 The people _______________ work in the office are very friendly.
   A who  B that  C they  D which  E what

19.7 Did you find the book _______________?
   A who you wanted  B that you wanted  C what you wanted
   D you wanted  E you wanted it

19.8 I met _______________ can speak six languages.
   A a woman who  B a woman which  C a woman  D a woman she

Prepositions

20.1 Bye! I’ll see you _______________.
   A until Friday  B at Friday  C in Friday  D on Friday

20.2 Hurry! The train leaves _______________ five minutes.
   A at  B on  C from  D after  E in

20.3 ‘How long will you be away?’ ‘_______________ Monday.’
   A On  B To  C Until  D Till  E Since

20.4 We played tennis yesterday. We played _______________ two hours.
   A in  B for  C since  D during

20.5 I always have breakfast before _______________ to work.
   A I go  B go  C to go  D going

20.6 Write your name _______________ the top of the page.
   A at  B on  C in  D to
20.7 There are a lot of apples .................................. those trees.
   A at    B on    C in    D to

20.8 What's the largest city .................................. the world?
   A at    B on    C in    D of

20.9 The office is .................................. the first floor.
   A at    B on    C in    D to

20.10 I met a lot of people .................................. the party.
   A on    B to    C in    D at

20.11 I want to go .................................. Italy next year.
   A at    B on    C in    D to

20.12 What time did you arrive .................................. the hotel?
   A at    B on    C in    D to

20.13 'Where is David in this picture?' 'He's .................................. Barbara.'
   A at front of    B in the front of    C in front of    D in front from

20.14 I jumped .................................. the wall into the garden.
   A on    B through    C across    D over    E above

20.15 Jane isn't at work this week. She's .................................. holiday.
   A on    B in    C for    D to    E at

20.16 Do you like travelling ..................................?
   A with train    B with the train    C in train    D on train    E by train

20.17 I'm not very good .................................. telling stories.
   A on    B with    C at    D in    E for

20.18 Tom left without .................................. goodbye.
   A say    B saying    C to say    D that he said

20.19 I'm going to phone .................................. this evening.
   A with my parents    B to my parents    C at my parents    D my parents

20.20 'Do you like eating in restaurants?' 'It depends .................................. the restaurant.'
   A in    B at    C of    D on    E over

Phrasal verbs

21.1 The car stopped and a woman got ................................. .
   A off    B down    C out    D out of

21.2 It was cold, so I ......................................... .
   A put on my coat    B put my coat on    C put the coat on me
   D put me the coat on

21.3 I've got Rachel's keys. I have to ................................. to her.
   A give back    B give them back    C give back them    D give it back

282
Key to Exercises

UNIT 1

1 2 they’re
3 it isn’t / it’s not
4 that’s
5 I’m not
6 you aren’t / you’re not

1.2
2 ’m/am 6 are
3 is 7 is … are
4 are 8 ’m/am … is
5 ’s/is

1.3
2 I’m / I am
3 He’s / He is
4 they’re / they are
5 It’s / It is
6 You’re / You are
7 She’s / She is
8 Here’s / Here is

1.4
Example answers:
1 My name is Robert.
2 I’m from Australia.
3 I’m 25.
4 I’m a gardener.
5 My favourite colours are black and white.
6 I’m interested in plants.

1.5
2 They’re / They are cold.
3 He’s / He is hot.
4 He’s / He is afraid.
5 They’re / They are hungry.
6 She’s / She is angry.

1.6
2 It’s / It is windy today. or
It isn’t / It’s not windy today.
3 My hands are cold. or
My hands aren’t / are not cold.
4 Brazil is a very big country.
5 Diamonds aren’t / are not cheap.
6 Toronto isn’t / is not in the US.
8 I’m / I am hungry. or
I’m not / I am not hungry.

9 I’m / I am a good swimmer. or
I’m not / I am not a good swimmer.
10 I’m / I am interested in football. or
I’m not / I am not interested in football.

UNIT 2

2.1
2 F 6 E
3 H 7 B
4 C 8 I
5 A 9 D

2.2
3 Is your job interesting?
4 Are the shops open today?
5 Where are you from?
6 Are you interested in sport?
7 Is the post office near here?
8 Are your children at school?
9 Why are you late?

2.3
2 Where’s / Where is
3 How old are
4 How much are
5 What’s / What is
6 Who’s / Who is
7 What colour are

2.4
2 Are you American?
3 How old are you?
4 Are you a teacher?
5 Are you married?
6 Is your wife a lawyer?
7 Where’s / Where is she from?
8 What’s / What is her name?
9 How old is she?

2.5
2 Yes, I am. or No, I’m not.
3 Yes, it is. or
No, it isn’t. / No, it’s not.
4 Yes, they are. or
No, they aren’t. / No, they’re not.
5 Yes, it is. or
No, it isn’t. / No, it’s not.
6 Yes, I am. or No, I’m not.

UNIT 3

3.1
2 It’s waiting
3 You are playing
4 He’s / He is lying
5 They’re / They are having
6 She’s / She is sitting

3.2
2 It’s cooking
3 You are standing
4 It’s swimming
5 You are staying
6 It’s having
7 You are building
8 ’m/am going

3.3
3 She’s / She is sitting on the floor.
4 She isn’t / She’s not reading a book.
5 She isn’t / She’s not playing the piano.
6 She’s / She is laughing.
7 She’s / She is wearing a hat.
8 She isn’t / She’s not writing a letter.

3.4
3 I’m sitting on a chair. or
I’m not sitting on a chair.
4 I’m eating. or
I’m not eating.
5 It’s raining. or
It isn’t raining. / It’s not raining.
6 I’m learning English.
7 I’m listening to music. or
I’m not listening to music.
8 The sun is shining. or
The sun isn’t shining.
9 I’m wearing shoes. or
I’m not wearing shoes.
10 I’m not reading a newspaper.

UNIT 4

4.1
2 Are you going now?
3 Is it raining?
4 Are you enjoying the film?
5 Is that clock working?
6 Are you waiting for a bus?
**UNIT 5**

5.1  
2 thinks 5 has  
3 flies 6 finishes  
4 dances

5.2  
2 live  5 They go  
3 She eats 6 He sleeps  
4 He plays

5.3  
2 open  7 costs  
3 closes 8 cost  
4 teaches 9 boils  
5 meet 10 like … likes

6 washes

5.4  
2 I never go to the cinema.  
3 Martina always works hard.  
4 Children usually like chocolate.  
5 Julia always enjoys parties.  
6 I often forget people’s names.  
7 Tim never watches television.  
8 We usually have dinner at 7.30.  
9 Jenny always wears nice clothes.

**UNIT 6**

5.5  
Example answers:  
2 I sometimes read in bed.  
3 I often get up before 7 o’clock.  
4 I never go to work by bus.  
5 I usually drink two cups of coffee in the morning.

6.1  
2 Jane doesn’t play the piano very well.  
3 They don’t know my phone number.  
4 We don’t work very hard.  
5 He doesn’t have a bath every day.  
6 You don’t do the same thing every day.

6.2  
2 Kate doesn’t like classical music.  
I like (or I don’t like) classical music.  
3 Ben and Sophie don’t like boxing.  
Kate likes boxing.  
I like (or I don’t like) boxing.  
4 Ben and Sophie like horror films.  
Kate doesn’t like horror films.  
I like (or I don’t like) horror films.

6.3  
Example answers:  
2 I never go to the theatre.  
3 I don’t ride a bicycle very often.  
4 I never eat in restaurants.  
5 I often travel by train.

6.4  
2 doesn’t use  
3 don’t go  
4 doesn’t wear  
5 don’t know  
6 doesn’t cost  
7 don’t see

6.5  
3 don’t know  
4 doesn’t talk  
5 drinks  
6 don’t believe  
7 like  
8 doesn’t eat

**UNIT 7**

7.1  
2 Do you play tennis?  
3 Does Lucy live near here?  
4 Do Tom’s friends play tennis? / Do they play tennis?  
5 Does your brother speak English? / Does he speak English?

6.2  
2 Jane doesn’t play the piano very well.  
3 They don’t know my phone number.  
4 We don’t work very hard.  
5 He doesn’t have a bath every day.  
6 You don’t do the same thing every day.

6.2  
2 Kate doesn’t like classical music.  
I like (or I don’t like) classical music.  
3 Ben and Sophie don’t like boxing.  
Kate likes boxing.  
I like (or I don’t like) boxing.  
4 Ben and Sophie like horror films.  
Kate doesn’t like horror films.  
I like (or I don’t like) horror films.

6.3  
Example answers:  
2 I never go to the theatre.  
3 I don’t ride a bicycle very often.  
4 I never eat in restaurants.  
5 I often travel by train.

6.4  
2 doesn’t use  
3 don’t go  
4 doesn’t wear  
5 don’t know  
6 doesn’t cost  
7 don’t see

6.5  
3 don’t know  
4 doesn’t talk  
5 drinks  
6 don’t believe  
7 like  
8 doesn’t eat

7.2  
3 How often do you watch TV?  
4 What do you want for dinner?  
5 Do you like football?  
6 Does your brother like football?  
7 What do you do in your free time?  
8 Where does your sister work?  
9 Do you often go to the cinema?  
10 What does this word mean?  
11 Does it often snow here?  
12 What time do you usually go to bed?  
13 How much does it cost to phone New York?  
14 What do you usually have for breakfast?

7.3  
2 Do you enjoy / Do you like  
3 do you start  
4 Do you work  
5 do you go  
6 does he do  
7 does he teach  
8 Does he enjoy / Does he like

7.4  
2 Yes, I do. or No, I don’t.  
3 Yes, I do. or No, I don’t.  
4 Yes, it does. or No, it doesn’t.  
5 Yes, I do. or No, I don’t.
UNIT 8

8.1
2 No, she isn’t.
Yes, she does.
She’s playing the piano.
3 Yes, he does.
Yes, he is.
He’s cleaning a window.
4 No, they aren’t.
Yes, they do.
They teach.

8.2
2 don’t 6 do
3 are 7 does
4 does 8 doesn’t
5 is … don’t

8.3
4 is singing
5 She wants
6 do you read
7 you’re sitting
8 I don’t understand
9 I’m going … Are you coming
10 does your father finish
11 I’m not listening
12 He’s/He is cooking
13 doesn’t usually drive …
usual walks
14 doesn’t like … She prefers

UNIT 9

9.1
2 he’s got
3 they’ve got
4 she hasn’t got
5 it’s got
6 I haven’t got

9.2
2 He’s got a computer. or
He has a computer.
3 He hasn’t got a dog. or
He doesn’t have a dog.
4 He hasn’t got a mobile phone. or
He doesn’t have a mobile phone.
5 He’s got a watch. or
He has a watch.
6 He’s got two brothers and a sister. or
He has two brothers and a sister.
7 I’ve got a computer. / I have a computer. or
I haven’t got a computer. / I don’t have a computer.

UNIT 10

10.1
2 Jack and Kate were at/in the cinema.
3 Sue was at the station.
4 Mr and Mrs Hall were in/at a restaurant.
5 Ben was on the beach / on a beach / at the beach / at the seaside.
6 (Example answer) I was at work.

10.2
2 is … was 6 re/are
3 ‘m/am 7 Was
4 was 8 was
5 were 9 are … were

10.3
2 wasn’t … was
3 was … were
4 ‘Were Kate and Bill at the party?’ ‘Kate was there, but Bill wasn’t.’ or
‘Kate wasn’t there, but Bill was.’
5 were
6 weren’t … were

10.4
2 Was your exam difficult?
3 Where were Sue and Chris last week?
4 How much was your new camera?
5 Why were you angry yesterday?
6 Was the weather nice last week?

UNIT 11

11.1
2 opened
3 started … finished
4 wanted
5 happened
6 rained
7 enjoyed … stayed
8 died

11.2
2 saw 8 thought
3 played 9 copied
4 paid 10 knew
5 visited 11 put
6 bought 12 spoke
7 went

11.3
2 got 9 checked
3 had 10 had
4 left 11 waited
5 drove 12 waited
6 got 13 arrived
7 packed 14 took
8 walked
UNIT 13

13.1
2 Jack and Kate were at the cinema. They were watching a film.
3 Tim was in his car. He was driving.
4 Tracey was at the station. She was waiting for a train.
5 Mr and Mrs Hall were in the park. They were walking.
6 (Example answer) I was in a café. I was having a drink with some friends.

13.2
2 she was playing tennis
3 she was reading a/the newspaper
4 she was cooking (lunch)
5 she was having breakfast
6 she was cleaning the kitchen

13.3
2 What were you doing
3 Was it raining
4 Why was Sue driving
5 Was Tim wearing

13.4
2 He was carrying a bag.
3 He wasn’t going to the dentist.
4 He was eating an ice-cream.
5 He wasn’t carrying an umbrella.
6 He wasn’t going home.
7 He was wearing a hat.
8 He wasn’t riding a bicycle.

UNIT 14

14.1
1 happened … was painting … fell
2 arrived … got … were waiting
3 was walking … met … was going … was carrying … stopped

14.2
2 was studying
3 did the post arrive … came … was having
4 didn’t go
5 were you driving … stopped … wasn’t driving

UNIT 15

15.1
2 She has/She’s closed the door.
3 They have/They’ve gone to bed.
4 It has/It’s stopped raining.
5 He has/He’s had a shower.
6 The picture has fallen down.

15.2
2 ‘ve bought / have bought
3 ‘s gone / has gone
4 Have you seen
5 has broken
6 ‘ve told / have told
7 has taken
8 haven’t seen
9 has she gone
10 ‘ve forgotten / have forgotten
11 ‘s invited / has invited
12 Have you decided
13 haven’t told
14 ‘ve read / have read

UNIT 16

16.1
2 He’s/He has just got up.
3 They’ve/They have just bought a car.
4 The race has just started.

16.2
2 they’ve/they have already seen it.
3 I’ve/I have already phoned him.
4 He’s/He has already gone (away).
5 I’ve/I have already read it.
6 She’s/She has already started (it).

16.3
2 The bus has just gone.
3 The train hasn’t left yet.
4 He hasn’t opened it yet.
5 They've/They have just finished their dinner.
6 It hasn't stopped raining yet.

16.4
2 Have you met your new neighbours yet?
3 Have you paid your phone bill yet?
4 Has Tom/he sold his car yet?

UNIT 17

17.1
3 Have you ever been to Australia?
4 Have you ever lost your passport?
5 Have you ever flown in a helicopter?
6 Have you ever won a race?
7 Have you ever been to New York?
8 Have you ever driven a bus?
9 Have you ever broken your leg?

17.2
Helen:
2 She's/She has been to Australia once.
3 She's/She has never won a race.
4 She's/She has flown in a helicopter a few times.
You (example answers):
5 I've/I have never been to New York.
6 I've/I have played tennis many times.
7 I've/I have never driven a lorry.
8 I've/have been late for work a few times.

17.3
2–6
She's/She has done a lot of interesting things.
She's/She has travelled all over the world. or
She's/She has been all over the world.
She's/She has been married three times.
She's/She has written ten books.
She's/She has met a lot of interesting people.

UNIT 18

18.1
3 have been
4 has been
5 have lived / have been living
6 has worked / has been working
7 has had
8 have been learning

18.2
2 How long have they been there? or ... been in Brazil?
3 How long have you known her? or ... known Amy?
4 How long has she been learning Italian?
5 How long has he lived in Canada? / How long has he been living ... ?
6 How long have you been a teacher?
7 How long has it been raining?

18.3
2 She has lived in Wales all her life.
3 They have been on holiday since Sunday.
4 The sun has been shining all day.
5 She has been waiting for ten minutes.
6 He has had a beard since he was 20.

18.4
2 I know
3 I've known
4 have you been waiting
5 works
6 She has been reading
7 have you lived
8 I've had
9 is ... He has been

UNIT 19

19.1
3 for 6 for
4 since 7 for
5 since 8 for ... since

19.2
Example answers:
2 A year ago.
3 A few weeks ago.
4 Two hours ago.
5 Six months ago.

19.3
3 for 20 years
4 20 years ago
5 an hour ago
6 a few days ago
7 for six months
8 for a long time

19.4
2 Jack has been here since Tuesday.
3 It's been raining for an hour.
4 I've known Sue since 2002.
5 Claire and Matthew have been married for six months.
6 Liz has been studying medicine (at university) for three years.
7 David has played / David has been playing the piano since he was seven years old.

19.5
Example answers:
1 I've lived in ... all my life.
2 I've been in the same job for ten years.
3 I've been learning English for six months.
4 I've known Chris for a long time.
5 I've had a headache since I got up this morning.

UNIT 20

20.1
2 I started (it)
3 they arrived
4 she went (away)
5 I wore it
20.2
3 I finished
4 OK
5 did you finish
6 OK
7 (Steve's grandmother) died
8 Where were you / Where did you go

20.3
3 played
4 did you go
5 Have you ever met
6 wasn't
7 's/has visited
8 switched
9 lived
10 haven't been

20.4
1 Did you have was
2 Have you seen went
haven't seen
3 has worked / has been working
was worked
didn't enjoy
4 've/have seen 've/have never spoken
Have you ever spoken met

UNIT 21

21.1
3 Glass is made from sand.
4 Stamps are sold in a post office.
5 This room isn't used very often.
6 Are we allowed to park here?
7 How is this word pronounced?
9 The house was painted last month.
10 My phone was stolen a few days ago.
11 Three people were injured in the accident.
12 When was this bridge built?
13 I wasn't woken up by the noise.
14 How were these windows broken?
15 Were you invited to Jon's party last week?

21.2
2 Football is played in most ...
3 Why was the letter sent to ...
4 ... where cars are repaired.
5 Where were you born?
6 How many languages are spoken ...
7 ... but nothing was stolen.
8 When was the bicycle invented?

21.3
3 is made
4 were damaged
5 was given
6 are shown
7 were invited
8 was made
9 was stolen ... was found

21.4
2 Sally was born in Manchester.
3 Her parents were born in Ireland.
4 I was born in ...
5 My mother was born in ...

UNIT 22

22.1
2 A bridge is being built.
3 The windows are being cleaned.
4 The grass is being cut.

22.2
5 The window has been broken.
4 The roof is being repaired.
5 The car has been damaged.
6 The houses are being knocked down.
7 The trees have been cut down.
8 They have been invited to a party.

22.3
3 has been repaired
4 was repaired
5 are made
6 were they built
7 Is the computer being used (or Is anybody using the computer)

UNIT 23

23.1
3 are 7 do
4 Does 8 is
5 Do 9 does
6 Is 10 Are

23.2
2 don't
3 'm/am not
4 isn't
5 don't
6 doesn't
7 'm/am not
8 aren't / 're not

23.3
2 Did 7 were
3 were 8 Has
4 was 9 did
5 Has 10 have
6 did

23.4
2 was 6 've/have
3 Have 7 is
4 are 8 was
5 were 9 has

23.5
3 eaten 8 understand
4 enjoying 9 listening
5 damaged 10 pronounced
6 use 11 open
7 gone

UNIT 24

24.1
3 got 10 happened
4 brought 11 heard
5 paid 12 put
6 enjoyed 13 caught
7 bought 14 watched
8 sat 15 understood
9 left

24.2
2 began begun
3 ate eaten
4 drank drunk
5 drove driven
6 spoke spoken
7 wrote written
8 came come
9 knew known
10 took taken
Key to Exercises

24.3
3 slept
4 saw
5 rained
6 lost ... seen
7 stolen
8 went
9 finished
10 built
11 learnt/learned
12 ridden
13 known
14 fell ... hurt
15 ran ... run

24.4
2 told 8 spoken
3 won 9 cost
4 met 10 driven
5 woken up 11 sold
6 swam 12 flew
7 thought

UNIT 25

25.1
2 Richard is going to the cinema.
3 Rachel is meeting Dave.
4 Karen is having lunch with Ken.
5 Tom and Sue are going to a party.

25.2
2 Are you working next week?
3 What are you doing tomorrow evening?
4 What time are your friends coming?
5 When is Liz going on holiday?

25.3
Example answers:
3 I'm going away at the weekend.
4 I'm playing basketball tomorrow.
5 I'm meeting a friend this evening.
6 I'm going to the cinema on Thursday evening.

25.4
3 She's getting
4 are going ... are they going
5 finishes
6 I'm not going
7 I'm going ... We're meeting
8 are you getting ... leaves
9 does the film begin
10 are you doing ... I'm working

UNIT 26

26.1
2 I'm going to have a bath.
3 I'm going to buy a car.
4 We're going to play football.

26.2
3 'm/am going to walk
4 's/is going to stay
5 'm/am going to eat
6 're/are going to give
7 's/is going to lie down
8 Are you going to watch
9 is Rachel going to do

26.3
2 The shelf is going to fall (down).
3 The car is going to turn (right).
4 He's / He is going to kick the ball.

26.4
Example answers:
1 I'm going to phone Maria this evening.
2 I'm going to get up early tomorrow.
3 I'm going to buy some shoes tomorrow.

UNIT 27

27.1
2 she'll be 5 she's
3 she was 6 she was
4 she'll be 7 she'll be

27.2
Example answers:
2 I'll be at home.
3 I'll probably be in bed.
4 I'll be at work.
5 I don't know where I'll be.

27.3
2 'll/will 5 'll/will
3 won't 6 'll/will
4 won't 7 won't

27.4
3 I think we'll win the game.
4 I don't think I'll be here tomorrow.
5 I think Sue will like her present.
6 I don't think they'll get married.
7 I don't think you'll enjoy the film.

27.5
2 are you doing
3 They're going
4 will lend
5 I'm going
6 will phone
7 He's working
8 Will you
9 are coming

UNIT 28

28.1
2 I'll send 5 I'll do
3 I'll eat 6 I'll stay
4 I'll sit 7 I'll show

28.2
2 I think I'll have
3 I don't think I'll play
4 I think I'll buy
5 I don't think I'll buy

28.3
2 I'll do
3 I watch
4 I'll go
5 is going to buy
6 I'll give
7 Are you doing ... I'm going
8 I'm working

28.4
2 Shall I turn off the television?
3 Shall I make some sandwiches?
4 Shall I turn on the light?

28.5
2 where shall we go?
3 what shall we buy?
4 who shall we invite?
UNIT 29

29.1
2 I might see you tomorrow.
3 Sarah might forget to phone.
4 It might snow today.
5 I might be late tonight.
6 Mark might not be here next week.
7 I might not have time to go out.

29.2
2 I might go away.
3 I might see her on Monday.
4 I might have fish.
5 I might get/take a taxi, or... go by taxi.
6 I might buy a new car.

29.3
3 He might get up early.
4 He isn’t/He’s not working tomorrow.
5 He might be at home tomorrow morning.
6 He might watch television.
7 He’s going out in the afternoon.
8 He might go shopping.

29.4
Example answers:
1 I might read a newspaper.
2 I might go out with some friends in the evening.
3 I might have an egg for breakfast.

UNIT 30

30.1
2 Can you ski?
3 Can you play chess?
4 Can you run ten kilometres?
5 Can you drive (a car)?
6 Can you ride (a horse)?
7 I can/can’t swim.
8 I can/can’t ski.
9 I can/can’t play chess.
10 I can/can’t run ten kilometres.
11 I can/can’t drive (a car).
12 I can/can’t ride (a horse).

30.2
2 can see 4 can’t find
3 can’t hear 5 can speak

30.3
2 couldn’t eat
3 can’t decide
4 couldn’t find
5 can’t go
6 couldn’t go

30.4
2 Can/Could you pass the salt (please)?
3 Can/Could you turn off the radio (please)?
4 Can/Could I have your phone number (please)?
5 Can/Could I look at your newspaper (please)?
6 Can/Could I use your pen (please)?

UNIT 31

31.1
2 must meet
3 must wash
4 must learn
5 must go
6 must win
7 must be

31.2
2 I must 5 I had to
3 I had to 6 I had to
4 I must 7 I must

31.3
2 don’t need to hurry
3 mustn’t lose
4 don’t need to wait
5 mustn’t forget
6 don’t need to phone

31.4
2 C 4 B
3 A 5 D

31.5
2 don’t need to
3 had to
4 must
5 mustn’t
6 must
7 must
8 had to
9 don’t need to
10 mustn’t

UNIT 32

32.1
2 You should go
3 You should eat
4 you should visit
5 you should wear
6 You should take

32.2
2 He shouldn’t eat so much.
3 She shouldn’t work so hard.
4 He shouldn’t drive so fast.

32.3
2 Do you think I should learn (to drive)?
3 Do you think I should get another job?
4 Do you think I should invite Gary (to the party)?

32.4
3 I think you should sell it.
4 I think she should have a holiday.
5 I don’t think they should get married.
6 I don’t think you should go to work.
7 I think he should go to the doctor.
8 I don’t think we should stay there.

32.5
Example answers:
2 I think everybody should have enough food.
3 I think people should drive more carefully.
4 I don’t think the police should carry guns.
5 I think I should take more exercise.

UNIT 33

33.1
2 have to do
3 has to read
4 have to speak
5 has to travel
6 have to hit

33.2
2 have to go
3 had to buy
4 have to change
5 had to answer
33.3
2 did he have to wait
3 does she have to go
4 did you have to pay
5 do you have to do
33.4
2 doesn’t have to wait.
3 didn’t have to get up early.
4 doesn’t have to work (so) hard.
5 don’t have to leave now.
33.5
3 have to pay
4 had to borrow
5 must stop or have to stop
(both are correct)
6 has to meet
7 must tell or have to tell
(both are correct)
33.6
2 I have to go to work every day.
3 I had to go to the dentist yesterday.
4 I have to go shopping tomorrow.

UNIT 34
34.1
2 Would you like an apple?
3 Would you like some coffee? / ... a cup of coffee?
4 Would you like some cheese? / ... a piece of cheese?
5 Would you like a sandwich?
6 Would you like some cake? / ... a piece of cake?
34.2
2 Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?
3 Would you like to come to a concert next week?
4 Would you like to borrow my umbrella?
34.3
2 Do you like
3 Would you like
4 would you like
5 Would you like
6 I like
7 would you like
8 Would you like
9 Do you like
10 I’d like
11 I’d like
12 do you like

UNIT 35
35.1
3 Don’t buy
4 Smile
5 Don’t sit
6 Have
7 Don’t forget
8 Sleep
9 Be ... Don’t drop
35.2
2 let’s take a taxi
3 let’s watch TV
4 let’s go to a restaurant
5 let’s wait a little
35.3
3 No, let’s not go out. or
No, don’t let’s go out.
4 No, don’t close the window.
5 No, don’t phone me (tonight).
6 No, let’s not wait for Andy. or
No, don’t let’s wait for Andy.
7 No, don’t turn on the light.
8 No, let’s not go by bus. or
No, don’t let’s go by bus.

UNIT 36
36.1
2 He used to play football.
3 She used to be a taxi driver.
4 They used to live in the country.
5 He used to wear glasses.
6 This building used to be a hotel.
36.2
2–6
She used to play volleyball.
She used to go out most evenings. / She used to go out a lot.
She used to play the guitar.
She used to read a lot. / She used to like reading.
She used to go away two or three times a year. / She used to travel a lot.

UNIT 37
37.1
3 There’s / There is a hospital.
4 There isn’t a swimming pool.
5 There are two cinemas.
6 There isn’t a university.
7 There aren’t any big hotels.
37.2
Example answers:
3 There is a university in ...
4 There are a lot of big shops.
5 There isn’t an airport.
6 There aren’t many factories.
37.3
2 There’s / There is
3 is there
4 There are
5 are there
6 There isn’t
7 Is there
8 Are there
9 There’s / There is ...
   There aren’t
37.4
2–6
There are eight planets in
the solar system.
There are fifteen players in
a rugby team.
There are twenty-six
letters in the English
alphabet.
There are thirty days in
September.
There are fifty states in the
USA.
37.5
2 It’s
3 There’s
4 There’s ... Is it
5 Is there ... there’s
6 It’s
7 Is there
Key to Exercises

UNIT 38

38.1
2 There was a carpet
3 There were three pictures
4 There was a small table
5 There were some flowers
6 There were some books
7 There was an armchair
8 There was a sofa

38.2
3 There was
4 Was there
5 there weren't
6 There wasn't
7 Were there
8 There wasn't
9 There was
10 there weren't

38.3
2 There are
3 There was
4 There's/There is
5 There's been/There has been or There was
6 there was
7 there will be
8 there were ... there are
9 There have been
10 there will be or there are

UNIT 39

39.1
2 It's cold. 5 It's snowing.
3 It's windy. 6 It's cloudy.
4 It's sunny/fine. or It's a nice day.

39.2
2 It's / It is
3 Is it
4 is it ... it's / it is
5 It's / It is
6 Is it
7 is it
8 It's / It is
9 It's / It is

39.3
2 How far is it from the hotel to the beach?
3 How far is it from New York to Washington?
4 How far is it from your house to the airport?

39.4
3 It 6 it
4 It ... It 7 It ... there
5 There 8 It

39.5
2 It's nice to see you again.
3 It's impossible to work in this office.
4 It's easy to make friends.
5 It's interesting to visit different places.
6 It's dangerous to go out alone

UNIT 40

40.1
2 is 5 will
3 can 6 was
4 has

40.2
2 I'm not 5 isn't
3 weren't 6 hasn't
4 haven't

40.3
3 doesn't 6 does
4 do 7 don't
5 did 8 didn't

40.4
Example answers:
2 I like sport, but my sister doesn't.
3 I don't eat meat, but Jenny does.
4 I'm American, but my husband isn't.
5 I haven't been to Japan, but Jenny has.

40.5
2 wasn't 7 has
3 are 8 do
4 has 9 hasn't
5 can't 10 will
6 did 11 might

40.6
2 Yes, I have. or No, I haven't.
3 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
4 Yes, it is. or No, it isn't.
5 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
6 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
7 Yes, I will. or No, I won't.
8 Yes, I have. or No, I haven't.
9 Yes, I did. or No, I didn't.
10 Yes, I was. or No, I wasn't.

UNIT 41

41.1
2 Do you? 5 Do I?
3 Didn't you? 6 Did she?
4 Doesn't she?

41.2
3 Have you? 8 Aren't you?
4 Can't she? 9 Did you?
5 Were you? 10 Does she?
6 Didn't you? 11 Won't you?
7 Is there? 12 Isn't it?

41.3
2 aren't they
3 wasn't she
4 haven't you
5 don't you
6 doesn't he
7 won't you

41.4
2 are you 6 didn't she
3 isn't she 7 was it
4 can't you 8 doesn't she
5 do you 9 will you

UNIT 42

42.1
2 either 5 either
3 too 6 either
4 too 7 too

42.2
2 So am I.
3 So have I.
4 So do I.
5 So will I.
6 So was I.
7 Neither can I.
8 Neither did I.
9 Neither have I.
10 Neither am I.
11 Neither do I.

42.3
1 So am I.
2 So can I. or I can't.
3 Neither am I. or I am.
4 So do I. or I don't.
5 Neither do I. or I do.
6 So did I. or I didn't.
7 Neither have I. or I have.
8 Neither do I. or I do.
9 So am I. or I'm not.
10 Neither have I. or I have.
11 Neither did I. or I didn't.
12 So do I. or I don't.
UNIT 43
2 They aren’t / They’re not married.
3 I haven’t had dinner.
4 It isn’t cold today.
5 We won’t be late.
6 You shouldn’t go.

UNIT 44
2 Were you late this morning?
3 Has Kate got a key?
4 Will you be here tomorrow?
5 Is Paul going out this evening?
6 Do you like your job?
7 Does Nicole live near here?
8 Did you enjoy the film?
9 Did you have a good holiday?

UNIT 45
2 Which fell off the shelf?
3 Who wants to see me?
4 Who took your umbrella? / Who took it?
5 What made you ill?
6 Who is / Who’s coming?

UNIT 46
2 What are you looking for?
3 Who did you go to the cinema with?
4 What/Who was the film about?
5 Who did you give the money to?
6 Who was the book written by?
46.2
2 What are they looking at?
3 Which restaurant is he going to?
4 What are they talking about?
5 What is she listening to?
6 Which bus are they waiting for?

46.3
2 Which hotel did you stay at?
3 Which (football) team does he play for?
4 Which school did you go to?

46.4
2 What is the food like?
3 What are the people like?
4 What is the weather like?

46.5
2 What was the film like?
3 What were the lessons like?
4 What was the hotel like?

UNIT 47

47.1
3 What colour is it?
4 What time did you get up?
5 What type of music do you like?
6 What kind of car do you want (to buy)?

47.2
2 Which coat
3 Which film/movie
4 Which bus

47.3
3 Which 8 Who
4 What 9 What
5 Which 10 Which
6 What 11 What
7 Which

47.4
2 How far
3 How old
4 How often
5 How deep
6 How long

47.5
2 How heavy is this box?
3 How old are you?

4 How much did you spend?
5 How often do you watch TV?
6 How far is it from Paris to Moscow?

UNIT 48

48.1
2 How long does it take by car from Milan to Rome?
3 How long does it take by train from Paris to Geneva?
4 How long does it take by bus from the city centre to the airport?

Example answers:
2 It takes ... hours to fly from ... to New York.
3 It takes ... years to study to be a doctor in ... .
4 It takes ... to walk from my home to the nearest shop.
5 It takes ... to get from my home to the nearest airport.

48.2
2 How long did it take you to walk to the station?
3 How long did it take him to paint the bathroom?
4 How long did it take you to learn to ski?
5 How long did it take them to repair the computer?

48.4
2 It took us 20 minutes to walk home. / ... to get home.
3 It took me six months to learn to drive.
4 It took Mark/him three hours to drive to London. / ... to get to London.
5 It took Lisa/her a long time to find a job. / ... to get a job.
6 It took me ... to ... 

UNIT 49

49.1
2 I don’t know where she is.
3 I don’t know how old it is.
4 I don’t know when he’ll be here.
5 I don’t know why he was angry.
6 I don’t know how long she has lived here.

49.2
2 where Susan works
3 what Peter said
4 why he went home early
5 what time the meeting begins
6 how the accident happened

49.3
2 are you
3 they are
4 the museum is
5 do you want
6 elephants eat
7 it is

49.4
2 Do you know if/whether they are married?
3 Do you know if/whether Sue knows Bill?
4 Do you know if/whether Gary will be here tomorrow?
5 Do you know if/whether he passed his exam?

49.5
2 Do you know where Paula is?
3 Do you know if/whether she is working today? / ... she’s working today?
4 Do you know what time she starts work?
5 Do you know if/whether the shops are open tomorrow?
6 Do you know where Sarah and Tim live?
7 Do you know if/whether they went to Jane’s party?

Example answers:
2 Do you know what time the bus leaves?
3 Excuse me, can you tell me where the station is?
4 I don’t know what I’m going to do this evening.
5 Do you know if there’s a restaurant near here?
6 Do you know how much it costs to rent a car?
UNIT 50

50.1
2 She said (that) she was very busy.
3 She said (that) she couldn’t go to the party.
4 He said (that) he had to go out.
5 He said (that) he was learning Russian.
6 She said (that) she didn’t feel very well.
7 They said (that) they would be home late. / ... they’d be ...
8 She said (that) she had just come back from holiday. / ... she’d just come back ...
9 She said (that) she was going to buy a new computer.
10 They said (that) they hadn’t got a key. / They said (that) they didn’t have a key.

50.2
2 She said (that) she wasn’t hungry.
3 he said (that) he needed it.
4 she said (that) she didn’t want to go.
5 She said (that) I could have it.
6 He said (that) he would send me a postcard. / ... he’d send ...
7 Nicole said (that) he had gone home. / ... he’d gone home.
8 He said (that) he wanted to watch TV.
9 She said (that) she was going to the cinema.

50.3
3 said 7 said
4 told 8 told
5 tell 9 tell
6 say 10 say

UNIT 51

51.1
3 phone
4 phone Paul
5 to phone Paul
6 to phone Paul
7 phone Paul
8 to phone Paul
9 phone Paul
10 phone Paul

51.2
3 get
4 going
5 watch
6 flying
7 listening
8 eat
9 waiting
10 wear
11 doing / staying

51.3
4 to go
5 rain
6 to leave
7 help
8 studying
9 to go
10 wearing
11 to stay
12 have
13 having
14 to have
15 hear
16 go
17 listening
18 to make
19 to know...
20 use

UNIT 52

52.1
3 to see
4 to swim
5 cleaning
6 to ask
7 visiting
8 going
9 to be
10 waiting
11 to do
12 to speak
13 to go
14 crying / to cry
15 to work / talking

52.2
2 to help
3 to see
4 reading
5 to lose
6 to send
7 raining
8 to go
9 watching / to watch
10 to wait

52.3
2 going to museums
3 to go
4 writing / to write letters
5 to go (there)
6 travelling by train
7 walking

52.4

Example answers:
1 I enjoy cooking.
2 I don’t like driving.

53.1
2 I want you to listen carefully.
3 I don’t want you to be angry.
4 Do you want me to wait for you?
5 I don’t want you to phone me tonight.
6 I want you to meet Sarah.

53.2
2 A woman told me to turn left after the bridge.
3 I advised him to go to the doctor.
4 She asked me to help her.
5 I told him to come back in ten minutes.
6 Paul let me use his phone.
7 I told her not to phone before 8 o’clock.
8 Ann’s mother taught her to play the piano.

53.3
2 to repeat
3 wait
4 to arrive
5 to get
6 go
7 borrow
8 to tell
9 to make (or to get)
10 think

UNIT 54

54.1
2–4
I went to the café to meet a friend.
I went to the chemist to get some medicine.
I went to the supermarket to buy some food.
### Key to Exercises

#### 54.2
- 2 to read the newspaper
- 3 to open this door
- 4 to get some fresh air
- 5 to wake him up
- 6 to see who it was

#### 54.3
*Example answers:*
- 2 to talk to you now
- 3 to tell her about the party
- 4 to do some shopping
- 5 to buy a car

#### 54.4
- 2 to 7 to
- 3 to 8 to
- 4 for 9 for
- 5 to 10 for
- 6 for 11 to ... for

#### 54.5
- 2 for the film to begin
- 3 for it to arrive
- 4 for you to tell me

### UNIT 55

#### 55.1
- 3 to
- 4 to
- 5 – (no preposition)
- 6 for
- 7 to
- 8 on ... to
- 9 for
- 10 on
- 11 to
- 12 – (no preposition)
- 13 on
- 14 for
- 15 on

#### 55.2
- 2 went fishing
- 3 goes swimming
- 4 going skiing
- 5 go shopping
- 6 went jogging

#### 55.3
- 2 to university
- 3 shopping
- 4 to sleep
- 5 home
- 6 skiing
- 7 riding
- 8 for a walk
- 9 on holiday ... to Portugal

### UNIT 56

#### 56.1
- 2 get your jacket
- 3 get a doctor
- 4 get a taxi
- 5 get the job
- 6 get some milk
- 7 get a ticket
- 8 get a good salary
- 9 get a lot of rain
- 10 get a new computer

#### 56.2
- 2 getting dark
- 3 getting married
- 4 getting ready
- 5 getting late

#### 56.3
- 2 get wet
- 3 got married
- 4 gets angry
- 5 got lost
- 6 get old
- 7 got better

#### 56.4
- 2 got to Bristol at 11.45.
- 3 I left the party at 11.15 and got home at midnight.
- 4 (Example answer) I left home at 8.30 and got to the airport at 10 o'clock.

#### 56.5
- 2 got off
- 3 got out of
- 4 got on

### UNIT 57

#### 57.1
- 2 to 7 done
- 3 make 8 make
- 4 made 9 making
- 5 did 10 do
- 6 do 11 doing

#### 57.2
- 2 They’re / They are doing (their) homework.
- 3 He’s / He is doing the shopping. or He is shopping.
- 4 She’s / She is making a jacket.
- 5 They’re / They are doing an exam. (or ... taking an exam.)
- 6 He’s / He is making the/his bed.

#### 57.3
- 2 make 8 make
- 3 do 9 do
- 4 done 10 making
- 5 made 11 made
- 6 doing 12 make ... do
- 7 did

### UNIT 58

#### 58.1
- 3 He hasn’t got / He doesn’t have
- 4 Gary had
- 5 Have you got / Do you have
- 6 we didn’t have
- 7 She hasn’t got / She doesn’t have
- 8 Did you have

#### 58.2
- 2 She’s / She is having a cup of tea.
- 3 He’s / He is having a rest.
- 4 They’re / They are having a good time.
- 5 They’re / They are having dinner.
- 6 He’s / He is having a bath.

#### 58.3
- 3 Have a nice / good trip!
- 4 Did you have a nice / good weekend?
- 5 Did you have a nice / good game (of tennis)?
- 6 Have a nice / good time! or Have a nice / good evening! or Have fun!
- 7 Did you have a nice / good holiday?

#### 58.4
- 2 have something to eat
- 3 had a glass of water
- 4 have a walk
- 5 had an accident
- 6 have a look
UNIT 59

59.1
2 him  5 him
3 them  6 them
4 her  7 her

59.2
2 I ... them  6 she ... them
3 he ... her  7 they ... me
4 they ... us  8 she ... you
5 we ... him

59.3
2 I like him.
3 I don't like it.
4 Do you like it?
5 I don't like her.
6 Do you like them?

59.4
2 him  8 them
3 them  9 me
4 they 10 her
5 us 11 them
6 it 12 he ... it
7 She

59.5
2 Can you give it to him?
3 Can you give them to her?
4 Can you give it to me?
5 Can you give it to them?
6 Can you give them to us?

UNIT 60

60.1
2 her hands
3 our hands
4 his hands
5 their hands
6 your hands

60.2
2 They live with their parents.
3 We live with our parents.
4 Jane lives with her parents.
5 I live with my parents.
6 John lives with his parents.
7 Do you live with your parents?
8 Most children live with their parents.

UNIT 61

61.1
2 mine  6 yours
3 ours  7 mine
4 hers  8 his
5 theirs

61.2
2 yours
3 my ... Mine
4 Yours ... mine
5 her
6 My ... hers
7 their
8 Ours

61.3
3 of hers
4 friends of ours
5 friend of mine
6 friend of his
7 friends of yours

61.4
2 Whose camera is this?
   It's hers.
3 Whose gloves are these?
   They're mine.
4 Whose hat is this?
   It's his.
5 Whose money is this?
   It's yours.
6 Whose books are these?
   They're ours.

UNIT 62

62.1
2 Yes, I know her, but I can't remember her name.
3 Yes, I know them, but I can't remember their names.

4 Yes, I know you, but I can't remember your name.

62.2
2 He invited us to stay with him at his house.
3 They invited me to stay with them at their house.
4 I invited them to stay with me at my house.
5 She invited us to stay with her at her house.
6 Did you invite him to stay with you at your house?

62.3
2 I gave her my address, and she gave me hers.
3 He gave me his address, and I gave him mine.
4 We gave them our address, and they gave us theirs.
5 She gave him her address, and he gave her his.
6 You gave us your address, and we gave you ours.
7 They gave you their address, and you gave them yours.

62.4
2 them  6 us
3 him  7 her
4 our  8 their
5 yours  9 mine

UNIT 63

63.1
2 myself  6 himself
3 herself  7 yourself
4 themselves  8 yourselves
5 myself

63.2
2 When I saw him, he was by himself.
3 Don't go out by yourself.
4 I went to the cinema by myself.
5 My sister lives by herself.
6 Many people live by themselves.
### Key to Exercises

#### 63.3
- They can’t see each other.
- They phone each other a lot.
- They don’t know each other.
- They’re sitting next to each other.
- They gave each other presents/a present.

#### 63.4
- each other 7 each other
- yourselves 8 each other
- us 9 them
- ourselves 10 themselves

#### UNIT 64

**64.1**
- Helen is Brian’s wife.
- James is Sarah’s brother.
- James is Daniel’s uncle.
- Sarah is Paul’s wife.
- Helen is Daniel’s grandmother.
- Sarah is James’s sister.
- Paul is Sarah’s husband.
- Paul is Daniel’s father.
- Daniel is James’s nephew.

**64.2**
- Andy’s 5 Diane’s
- Dave’s 6 Alice’s
- Jane’s

**64.3**
- OK
- Simon’s phone number
- My brother’s job
- OK
- OK
- Paula’s favourite colour
- your mother’s birthday
- My parents’ house
- OK
- OK
- OK
- Silvia’s party
- OK

#### UNIT 65

**65.1**
- a 5 a 8 an
- a 6 an 9 an
- an 7 a

**65.2**
- a vegetable
- a game
- a tool
- a mountain
- a planet

**65.3**
- a fruit
- a river
- a flower
- a musical instrument

**65.4**
- Tom never wears a hat.
- I can’t ride a bicycle.
- My brother is an artist.
- Rebecca works in a bookshop.
- Jane wants to learn a foreign language.
- Mike lives in an old house.
- This evening I’m going to a party.

#### UNIT 66

**66.1**
- 2 boats
- 3 women
- 4 cities
- 5 umbrellas
- 6 addresses
- 7 knives
- 8 sandwiches
- 9 families
- 10 feet
- 11 holidays
- 12 potatoes

**66.2**
- 2 teeth
- 5 fish
- 3 people
- 6 leaves
- 4 children

**66.3**
- with a lot of beautiful trees.
- with two men.
- OK
- three children.
- Most of my friends are students.
- He put on his pyjamas...
- OK
- Do you know many people...
- I like your trousers. Where did you get them?

#### UNIT 67

**67.1**
- 3 a jug
- 4 water
- 5 toothpaste
- 6 a toothbrush
- 7 an egg
- 8 money
- 9 a wallet
- 10 sand
- 11 a bucket
- 12 an envelope

**67.2**
- 3 a hat.
- 4 a job?
- OK
- 6 an apple...
- 7 a party...
- 8 a wonderful thing.
- 9 an island.
- 10 a key.
- OK
- 12 a good idea.
- 13 a car?
- 14 a cup of coffee?
- OK
- 16 an umbrella.

**67.3**
- 2 a piece of wood
- 3 a glass of water
- 4 a bar of chocolate
- 5 a cup of tea
- 6 a piece of paper
- 7 a bowl of soup
- 8 a loaf of bread
- 9 a jar of honey

#### UNIT 68

**68.1**
- I bought a newspaper or a paper, some flowers or a bunch of flowers and a pen.
- I bought some stamps, some postcards and some bread or a loaf of bread.
UNIT 69

69.1
2 the same time
3 the same age
4 the same colour
5 the same problem

69.3
2 ... send me a postcard.
3 What is the name of ... 4 ... a very big country.
5 What is the largest ...
6 ... the colour of the carpet.
7 ... a headache.
8 ... an old house near the station.
9 ... the name of the director of the film ...

UNIT 70

70.1
2 ... the second floor.
3 ... the moon?
4 ... the best hotel in this town?
6 OK
7 ... the city centre.
8 ... the end of May.
9 OK
10 ... the first time I met her.
11 OK
12 The Internet is a good way of getting information.
13 OK
14 ... on the top shelf on the right.
15 ... in the country about ten miles from the nearest town.

70.2
2 the airport
3 a cup
4 a nice picture
5 the dictionary
6 the floor

70.3
2 the guitar
3 breakfast
4 television/TV
5 the sea
6 the bottom

70.4
2 the name
3 The sky
4 television
5 the police
6 the capital
7 lunch
8 the middle

UNIT 71

71.1
2 the cinema
3 hospital
4 the airport
5 home
6 prison

71.2
3 school
4 the station
5 home
6 bed
7 the post office

71.3
2 the cinema
3 go to bed
4 go to prison
5 go to the dentist
6 go to university/college
7 go to hospital / are taken to hospital

71.4
3 the doctor
4 OK
5 OK
6 OK
7 the bank
8 OK
9 OK
10 the city centre
11 the station
12 OK
13 OK
14 OK
15 the theatre

UNIT 72

72.1
Example answers:
2 I don't like dogs.
3 I hate museums.
4 I love big cities.
5 Tennis is all right.
6 I love chocolate.
7 I don't like computer games.
8 I hate parties.

72.2
Example answers:
2 I'm not interested in politics.
3 I'm interested in sport.
4 I don't know much about art.
5 I don't know anything about astronomy.
6 I know a little about economics.
20. The Panama Canal joins the Atlantic Ocean and the Pacific Ocean.

UNIT 74

74.1
2 that house
3 these postcards
4 those birds
5 this seat
6 These plates

74.2
2 Is that your umbrella?
3 Is this your book?
4 Are those your books?
5 Is that your bicycle/bike?
6 Are these your keys?
7 Are these your keys?
8 Is this your watch?
9 Are those your glasses?
10 Are these your gloves?

74.3
2 that’s 6 this is
3 This is 7 That’s
4 That’s 8 that’s
5 that

UNIT 75

75.1
2 I don’t need one
3 I’m going to get one
4 I haven’t got one
5 I’ve just had one
6 there’s one in Mill Road

75.2
2 a new one
3 a better one
4 an old one
5 a big one
6 a different one

75.3
2 Which ones?
The green ones.
3 Which one?
The one with a/the red door.
4 Which ones?
The ones on the top shelf.
5 Which one?
The black one.
6 Which one?
The one on the wall.
7 Which one?
The tall one with long hair.
8 Which ones?
The yellow ones.

UNIT 76

76.1
2 some 8 some
3 any 9 some
4 any 10 any ... any
5 any 11 some ... any
6 some 12 some
7 any

76.2
2 some questions
3 any photographs
4 any foreign languages
5 some friends
6 some milk
7 any batteries
8 some fresh air
9 some cheese
10 any help

76.3
3 I’ve got some / I have some
4 I haven’t got any /
   I haven’t any / I don’t have any
5 I didn’t buy any
6 I bought some
7 I didn’t make any

76.4
2 something
3 anything
4 anything
5 Somebody/Someone
6 anything
7 anybody/anyone
8 something
9 anything
10 anybody/anyone

UNIT 77

77.1
2 There are no shops near here.
3 Carla has got no free time.
4 There is no light in this room.
5 There isn’t any milk in the fridge.
6 There aren’t any buses today.
8 Tom hasn’t got any brothers or sisters.
UNIT 80
80.1
2 Every day
3 every time
4 Every room
5 every word

80.2
2 every day
3 all day
4 every day
5 all day
6 all day
7 every day

80.3
2 every 6 all
3 all 7 every
4 all 8 all
5 Every 9 every

80.4
2 everything
3 Everybody/Everyone
4 everything
5 everywhere
6 Everybody/Everyone
7 everywhere
8 Everything

80.5
2 is 6 was
3 has 7 makes
4 likes 8 Is ... Does
5 has

UNIT 79
79.1
2 something
3 somewhere
4 somebody/someone

79.2
2a Nowhere.
3a Nothing.
4a Nobody/No-one.
2b I’m not going anywhere.
3b I don’t want anything.
4b I’m not looking for anybody/anyone.

79.3
3 anything
4 anything
5 somebody/someone
6 something
7 anybody/anyone ... nobody/ no-one
8 anything
9 Nobody/No-one
10 anybody/anyone
11 Nothing
12 anywhere
13 somewhere
14 anything
15 anybody/anyone

79.4
2 anything to eat
3 nothing to do
4 anywhere to sit
5 something to drink
6 nowhere to park
7 something to read
8 somewhere to stay

UNIT 78
78.1
2 There’s nobody in the office.
3 I’ve got nothing to do.
4 There’s nothing on TV.
5 There was no-one at home.
6 We found nothing.

78.2
2 There wasn’t anybody on the bus.
3 I haven’t got anything to read.
4 I haven’t got anyone to help me.
5 She didn’t hear anything.
6 We haven’t got anything for dinner.

78.3
3a Nothing.
4a Nobody/No-one.
5a Nobody/No-one.
6a Nothing.
7a Nothing.
8a Nobody/No-one.
3b I don’t want anything.
4b I didn’t meet anybody/anyone.
5b Nobody/No-one knows the answer.
6b I didn’t buy anything.
7b Nothing happened.

8b Nobody/No-one was late.

80.1
2 Every day
3 every time
4 Every room
5 every word

80.2
2 every day
3 all day
4 every day
5 all day
6 all day
7 every day

80.3
2 every 6 all
3 all 7 every
4 all 8 all
5 Every 9 every

80.4
2 everything
3 Everybody/Everyone
4 everything
5 everywhere
6 Everybody/Everyone
7 everywhere
8 Everything

80.5
2 is 6 was
3 has 7 makes
4 likes 8 Is ... Does
5 has

UNIT 81
81.1
3 Some 10 Most
4 Most of 11 most of
5 most 12 Some
6 any of 13 All or All of
7 all or all of 14 some of
8 None of 15 most of
9 any of

81.2
2 All of them.
3 Some of them.
4 None of them.
5 Most of them.
6 None of it.

81.3
3 Some people ...
4 Some of the questions ...
or Some questions ...
5 OK
6 All insects ...
7 OK (or ... all of these books)
8 Most of the students ... 
or Most students ...
9 OK
10 ... most of the night

UNIT 82

82.1
3 Both 9 Neither
4 Neither 10 either of
5 Neither 11 Both
6 both 12 neither of
7 Either 13 Both
8 neither of 14 either of

82.2
2 Both windows are open.
3 Neither man is wearing a hat, or Neither of them is wearing ...
4 Both men have (got) beards. or Both of them have ...
5 Both buses go to the airport. or ... are going to the airport.
6 Neither answer is right.

82.3
3 Both of them are students.
4 Neither of them has (got) a car.
5 Both of them live in London.
6 Both of them like cooking.
7 Neither of them can play the piano.
8 Both of them read newspapers.
9 Neither of them is interested in sport.

UNIT 83

83.1
2 many 8 many
3 much 9 How many
4 many 10 How much
5 many 11 How much
6 much 12 How many
7 much

83.2
2 much time
3 many countries
4 many people
5 much luggage
6 many times

83.3
2 a lot of interesting things
3 a lot of accidents
4 a lot of fun
5 a lot of traffic

83.4
3 a lot of snow
4 OK
5 a lot of money
6 OK
7 OK
8 a lot

83.5
3 She plays tennis a lot.
4 He doesn't use his car much. (or ... a lot.)
5 He doesn't go out much. (or ... a lot.)
6 She travels a lot.

UNIT 84

84.1
2 a few 5 a little
3 a little 6 a few
4 a few

84.2
2 a little milk
3 A few days
4 a little Russian
5 a few friends
6 a few times
7 a few chairs
8 a little fresh air

84.3
2 very little coffee
3 very little rain
4 very few hotels
5 very little time
6 Very few people
7 very little work

84.4
2 A few 5 few
3 a little 6 a little
4 little 7 little

84.5
2 ... a little luck
3 ... a few things
4 OK
5 ... a few questions
6 ... few people
7 OK

UNIT 85

85.1
2 I like that green jacket.
3 Do you like classical music?
4 I had a wonderful holiday.
5 We went to a Japanese restaurant.

85.2
2 black clouds
3 long holiday
4 hot water
5 fresh air
6 sharp knife
7 dangerous job

85.3
2 It looks new.
3 I feel ill.
4 You look surprised.
5 They smell nice.
6 It tastes horrible.

85.4
2 It doesn't look new.
3 You don't sound American.
4 I don't feel cold.
5 They don't look heavy.
6 Maybe, but it doesn't taste good.

UNIT 86

86.1
2 badly 5 fast
3 quietly 6 dangerously
4 angrily

86.2
2 work hard
3 sleep well
4 win easily
5 Think carefully
6 know her very well
7 explain things very clearly/well
8 Come quickly

86.3
2 angry 8 quiet
3 slowly 9 badly
4 slow 10 nice (See Unit 85C.)
5 careful 11 quickly
6 hard 12 suddenly

86.4
2 well 5 well
3 good 6 good ... good
4 well

302
### UNIT 87

#### 87.1
1. bigger
2. slower
3. more expensive
4. higher
5. more dangerous

#### 87.2
1. stronger
2. happier
3. more modern
4. more important
5. better
6. larger
7. more serious
8. prettier
9. more crowded

#### 87.3
1. hotter/warmer
2. more expensive
3. worse
4. further
5. more difficult or harder

#### 87.4
1. taller
2. harder
3. more comfortable
4. better
5. more interesting
6. warmer
7. better
8. bigger
9. more beautiful
10. sharper
11. more polite
12. worse

### UNIT 88

#### 88.1
1. Liz is taller than Ben.
2. Liz starts work earlier than Ben.
4. Ben has got more money than Liz.
5. Liz is a better driver than Ben.
6. Ben is more patient than Liz.
7. Ben is a better dancer than Liz. / Ben dances better than Liz.
8. Liz is more intelligent than Ben.

#### 88.2
1. Liz speaks French better than Ben. / Liz speaks better French than Ben. / Liz’s French is better than Ben’s.
2. Ben goes to the cinema more than Liz. / ... more often than Liz.

#### 88.3
1. 2 You’re older than her. / ... than she is.
2. 3 You work harder than me. / ... than I do.
3. 4 You watch TV more than him. / ... than he does.
4. 5 You’re a better cook than me. / ... than I am. or You cook better than me. / ... than I do.
5. 6 You know more people than us. / ... than we do.
6. 7 You’ve got more money than them. / ... than they have.
7. 8 You can run faster than me. / ... than I can.
8. 9 You’ve been here longer than her. / ... than she has.
9. 10 You got up earlier than them. / ... than they did.
10. 11 You were more surprised than him. / ... than he was.

### UNIT 89

#### 89.1
1. 2 A is longer than B, but not as long as C.
2. 3 C is heavier than A, but not as heavy as B.
3. 4 A is older than C, but not as old as B.
4. 5 B has got more money than C, but not as much as A. or ... but less (money) than A.
5. 6 C works harder than A, but not as hard as B.

#### 89.2
1. 2 Your room isn’t as big as mine. / ... as my room,
2. 3 I didn’t get up as early as you. / ... as you did.
3. 4 They didn’t play as well as us. / ... as we did.
4. 5 You haven’t been here as long as me. / ... as I have.
5. 6 He isn’t as nervous as her. / ... as she is.

#### 89.3
1. 2 as 6 than
2. 3 than 7 as
3. 4 than 8 than
4. 5 as

#### 89.4
1. 2 Julia lives in the same street as Laura.
2. 3 Julia got up at the same time as Andy.
3. 4 Andy’s car is the same colour as Laura’s.

### UNIT 90

#### 90.1
1. 2 C is longer than A. D is the longest.
2. 3 D is younger than C. B is the shortest.
3. 4 D is younger than C. B is the youngest.
4. 5 D is more expensive than A. C is the oldest.
5. 6 A is the cheapest.
6. 7 A is the best.
7. 8 D is the worst.
Key to Exercises

90.2
2 the happiest day
3 the best film
4 the most popular singer
5 the worst mistake
6 the prettiest village
7 the coldest day
8 the most boring person

90.3
2 Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
3–6 Brazil is the largest country in South America.
Alaska is the largest state in the USA.
The Nile is the longest river in Africa. / ... in the world.
Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.

UNIT 91

91.1
2 enough chairs
3 enough paint
4 enough wind

91.2
2 The car isn’t big enough.
3 His legs aren’t long enough.
4 He isn’t strong enough.

91.3
3 old enough
4 enough time
5 big enough
6 eat enough
7 enough space
8 tired enough
9 practise enough

UNIT 92

92.1
2 too heavy
3 too low
4 too fast
5 too big
6 too crowded

92.2
3 enough
4 too many
5 too
6 enough
7 too much

92.3
3 It’s too far.
4 It’s too expensive.
5 It isn’t/It’s not big enough.
6 It was too difficult.
7 It isn’t good enough.
8 It’s too busy.
9 It was too long.

92.4
2 too early to go to bed
3 too young to get married
4 too dangerous to go out at night
5 too late to phone Sue (now)
6 too surprised to say anything

UNIT 93

93.1
3 I like this picture very much.
4 Tom started his new job last week.
5 OK
6 Jane bought a present for her friend. or Jane bought her friend a present.
7 I drink three cups of coffee every day.
8 OK
9 I borrowed fifty pounds from my brother.

93.2
2 I bought a new computer last week.
3 Paul finished his work quickly.
4 Emily doesn’t speak French very well.
5 I did a lot of shopping yesterday.
6 Do you know London well?
7 We enjoyed the party very much.
8 I explained the problem carefully.
9 We met some friends at the airport.

93.3
2 I arrived at the hotel early.
3 Julia goes to Italy every year.
4 We have lived here since 1988.
5 Sue was born in London in 1980.
6 Paul didn’t go to work yesterday.
7 Helen went to a wedding last weekend.
8 I had my breakfast in bed this morning.
9 Barbara is going to university in September.
10 I saw a beautiful bird in the garden this morning.
11 My parents have been to the United States many times.
12 I left my United States many times.
13 Are you going to the cinema tomorrow evening?
14 I took the children to school this morning.

UNIT 94

94.1
2 He always gets up early.
3 He’s/He is never late for work.
4 He sometimes gets angry.
5 He rarely goes swimming.
6 He’s/He is usually at home in the evenings.

94.2
2 Susan is always polite.
3 I usually finish work at 5 o’clock.
4 Sarah has just started a new job.
5 I rarely go to bed before midnight.
6 The bus isn’t usually late.
7 I don’t often eat fish.
8 I will never forget what you said.
9 Have you ever lost your passport?
10 Do you still work in the same place?
11 They always stay in the same hotel.
12 Jane doesn’t usually work on Saturdays.
13 Is Tina already here?
14 What do you usually have for breakfast?
15 I can never remember his name.

94.3
2 Yes, and I also speak French.
3 Yes, and I’m also hungry.
4 Yes, and I’ve also been to Ireland.
5 Yes, and I also bought some books.

94.4
1 They both play football. They’re/They are both students. They’ve both got cars. They both have cars.
2 They’re/They are all married. They were all born in England. They all live in New York.

UNIT 95

95.1
2 Do you still live in Clare Street?
3 Are you still a student?
4 Have you still got a motorbike? Do you still have …
5 Do you still go to the cinema a lot?
6 Do you still want to be a teacher?

95.2
2 He was looking for a job. He’s/He is still looking (for a job). He hasn’t found a job yet.
3 She was asleep. She’s/She is still asleep. She hasn’t woken up yet. She isn’t awake yet. She hasn’t got up yet. She isn’t up yet.

96.4
2 lend you some money
3 send the letter to me
4 buy you a present
5 pass me the sugar
6 give it to her
7 showed the policeman my identity card

UNIT 97

97.1
3 I went to the window and (I) looked out.
4 I wanted to phone you, but I didn’t have your number.
5 I jumped into the river and (I) swam to the other side.
6 I usually drive to work, but I went by bus this morning.
7 Do you want me to come with you, or shall I wait here?

97.2
Example answers:
2 because it was raining. because the weather was bad.
3 but it was closed.
4 so he didn’t eat anything. so he didn’t want anything to eat.
5 because there was a lot of traffic. because the traffic was bad.
6 Sue said goodbye, got into her car and drove off/away.

97.3
Example answers:
3 I went to the cinema, but the film wasn’t very good.
4 I went to a café and met some friends of mine.
5 There was a film on television, so I watched it.
6 I got up in the middle of the night because I couldn’t sleep.

UNIT 98

98.1
2 When I’m tired, I like to watch TV.
3 When I phoned her, there was no answer.
4 When I go on holiday, I always go to the same place.
5 When the programme ended, I turned off the TV.
6 When I got to the hotel, there were no rooms.

98.2
2 when they heard the news
3 they went to live in New Zealand
4 while they were away
5 before they came here
6 somebody broke into the house
7 they didn’t believe me

98.3
2 I finish
3 it’s
4 I’ll be ... she leaves
5 stops
6 We’ll come ... we’re
7 I come ... I’ll bring
8 I’m
9 I’ll give ... I go
10 I’ll tell ... I’m

98.4
*Example answers:*
2 you finish your work
3 I’m going to buy a motorbike
4 you get ready
5 I won’t have much free time
6 I come back

UNIT 99

99.1
2 If you pass the exam, you’ll get a certificate.
3 If you fail the exam, you can do it again.
4 If you don’t want this magazine, I’ll throw it away.
5 If you want those pictures, you can have them.
6 If you’re busy now, we can talk later.
7 If you’re hungry, we can have lunch now.
8 If you need money, I can lend you some.

99.2
2 I give
3 is
4 I’ll call

5 I’ll be ... get
6 Will you go ... they invite

99.3
*Example answers:*
3 ... you’re busy.
4 ... you’ll feel better in the morning.
5 ... you’re not watching it.
6 ... she doesn’t study.
7 ... I’ll go and see Chris.
8 ... the weather is good.
9 ... it rains today.

99.4
2 When
3 If
4 If
5 if
6 When
7 if
8 when ... if

UNIT 100

100.1
3 wanted
4 had
5 were/was
6 didn’t enjoy
7 could
8 tried
9 didn’t have

100.2
3 I’d go / I would go
4 she knew
5 we had
6 you won
7 I wouldn’t stay
8 we lived
9 It would be
10 the salary was/were
11 I wouldn’t know
12 would you change

100.3
2 I’d watch it / I would watch it
3 we had some pictures on the wall
4 the air would be cleaner
5 every day was/were the same
6 I’d be bored / I would be bored
7 we had a bigger house / we bought a bigger house
8 we would/could buy a bigger house

100.4
*Example answers:*
2 I’d go to Antarctica
3 I didn’t have any friends
4 I’d buy a house if I had enough money.
5 I’d try and help
6 there were no guns

UNIT 101

101.1
2 A butcher is a person who sells meat.
3 A musician is a person who plays a musical instrument.
4 A patient is a person who is ill in hospital.
5 A dentist is a person who takes care of your teeth.
6 A fool is a person who does stupid things.
7 A genius is a person who is very intelligent.
8 A liar is a person who doesn’t tell the truth.

101.2
2 The woman who opened the door was wearing a yellow dress.
3 Most of the students who took the exam passed (it).
4 The policeman who stopped our car wasn’t very friendly.

101.3
2 who
3 which
4 which
5 who
6 which
7 who
8 which
9 which

101.4
3 ... a machine that/which makes coffee.
4 OK (which is also correct)
5 ... people who/that never stop talking.
6 OK (who is also correct)
7 OK (that is also correct)
8 ... the sentences that/which are wrong.
9 ... a car that/which cost £40,000.
UNIT 102

102.1
2 I've lost the pen you gave me.
3 I like the jacket Sue is wearing.
4 Where are the flowers I gave you?
5 I didn't believe the story he told us.
6 How much were the oranges you bought?

102.2
2 The meal you cooked was excellent.
3 The shoes I'm wearing aren't very comfortable.
4 The people we invited to dinner didn't come.

102.3
2 Who are the people you were talking to?
3 Did you find the keys you were looking for?
4 Where is the party you are going to?
5 What's the name of the film you were talking about?
6 What's that music you're listening to?
7 Did you get the letter you were waiting for?

102.4
2 What's the name of the restaurant where you had dinner?
3 How big is the village where you live?
4 Where exactly is the factory where you work?

UNIT 103

103.1
3 at 11 at
4 on 12 in
5 in 13 on
6 in 14 on
7 on 15 at
8 on 16 at
9 at 17 at
10 on 18 in

103.2
2 on 11 at
3 at 12 on
4 in 13 in
5 in 14 at
6 in 15 in
7 on 16 on
8 on 17 in
9 in 18 at
10 at 19 at

103.3
2 on Friday
3 on Monday
4 at 4 o'clock on Thursday / on Thursday at 4 o'clock
5 on Saturday evening
6 at 2:30 on Tuesday (afternoon) / on Tuesday (afternoon) at 2:30

103.4
2 I'll call you in three days.
3 My exam is in two weeks.
4 Tom will be here in half an hour. / ... in 30 minutes.

103.5
3 in
4 – (already complete)
5 – (already complete)
6 in
7 at
8 – (already complete)
9 – (already complete)
10 on
11 in
12 at

UNIT 104

104.1
2 Alex lived in Canada until 1999.
3 Alex has lived in England since 1999.
4 Karen lived in France until 2003.
5 Karen has lived in Switzerland since 2003.
6 Clare worked in a hotel from 1998 to 2001.
7 Clare has worked in a restaurant since 2001.
8 Adam was a teacher from 1992 to 1998.
9 Adam has been a journalist since 1998.
10 Alex has lived in England for ...... years.
11 Karen has lived in Switzerland for ...... years.
12 Clare worked in a hotel for three years.
13 Clare has worked in a restaurant for ...... years.

UNIT 105

105.1
2 after lunch
3 before the end
4 during the course
5 before they went to Australia
6 during the night
7 while you are waiting
8 after the concert

105.2
3 while
4 for
5 while
6 during
7 while
8 for
9 during
10 while

105.3
2 eating
3 answering
4 having/taking
5 finishing/doing
6 going/travelling

105.4
2 John worked in a bookshop for two years after leaving school.
3 Before going to sleep, I read for a few minutes.
4 After walking for three hours, we were very tired.
5 Let's have a cup of coffee before going out.

UNIT 106

106.1
2 In the box.
3 On the box.
4 On the wall.
5 At the bus stop.
6 In the field.
7 On the balcony.
Key to Exercises

8 In the pool.
9 At the window.
10 On the ceiling.
11 On the table.
12 At the table.

106.2
2 in
3 on
4 in
5 on
6 at
7 in
8 in
9 at
10 at
11 in
12 at
13 on
14 at
15 on the wall in the living room.

UNIT 107

107.1
2 At the airport.
3 In bed.
4 On a ship.
5 In the sky.
6 At a party.
7 At the doctor’s.
8 On the second floor.
9 At work.
10 On a plane.
11 In a taxi.
12 At a wedding.

107.2
2 in
3 in
4 at
5 at
6 in
7 at
8 at
9 in
10 in
11 on
12 on
13 at
14 in
15 on

UNIT 108

108.1
2 to
3 in
4 to
5 in
6 to
7 to
8 in
9 to

108.2
2 to
3 in
4 to
5 at home ... to work
6 to
7 — (already complete)
8 to
9 at
10 at
11 at
12 to Maria’s house ... at home
13 — (already complete)
14 meet at the party ... go to the party

108.4
1 to
2 — (already complete)
3 at
4 in
5 to
6 — (already complete)

108.5

Example answers:
2 to work
3 at work
4 to Canada
5 to parties
6 at a friend’s house

UNIT 109

109.1
2 next to / beside / by
3 in front of
4 between
5 next to / beside / by
6 in front of
7 behind
8 on the left
9 in the middle

109.2
2 behind
3 above
4 in front of
5 on
6 by / next to / beside
7 below / under
8 above
9 under
10 by / next to / beside
11 opposite
12 on

109.3
2 The fountain is in front of the theatre.
3 The bank/bookshop is opposite the theatre, or Paul’s office is opposite the theatre. or The theatre is opposite ...
4 The bank/bookshop/supermarket is next to ...
5 Paul’s office is above the bookshop.
6 The bookshop is between the bank and the supermarket.

UNIT 110

110.1
2 Go under the bridge.
3 Go up the hill.
4 Go down the steps.
5 Go along this street.
6 Go into the hotel.
7 Go past the hotel.
8 Go out of the hotel.
9 Go over the bridge.
10 Go through the park.

110.2
2 off
3 over
4 out of
5 across
6 round/around
7 through
8 on
9 round/around
10 into the house through a window

110.3
1 out of
2 round/around
3 in
4 from here to the airport
5 round/around
6 on/over
7 over
8 out of

UNIT 111

111.1
2 on time
3 on holiday
4 on the phone
5 on television
111.2
2 by
3 with
4 about
5 on
6 by
7 at
8 on
9 with
10 about grammar by Vera P. Bull

UNIT 112
112.1
2 in
3 to
4 at
5 with
6 of

112.2
2 at
3 to
4 about
5 of
6 of
7 from/to (You can also say different than …)
8 in
9 for
10 about
11 of
12 for/about getting angry with you

112.3
2 interested in going
3 good at getting
4 fed up with waiting
5 sorry for/about waking
6 Thank you for waiting.

112.4
2 Sue walked past me without speaking.
3 Don’t do anything without asking me first.
4 I went out without locking the door.

112.5
Example answers:
2 I’m afraid of the dark.
3 I’m not very good at drawing.
4 I’m not interested in cars.
5 I’m fed up with living here.

UNIT 113
113.1
2 to 5 at
3 for 6 for
4 to

113.2
2 to
3 to
4 for
5 to
6 of/about
7 for
8 on
9 to
10 for
11 to
12 — (already complete)
13 to
14 on
15 of/about

113.3
1 at 4 after
2 after 5 at
3 for 6 for

113.4
Example answers:
3 It depends on the programme.
4 It depends on what it is.
5 It depends on the weather.
6 It depends on how much you want.

UNIT 114
114.1
2 went in
3 looked up
4 rode off/away
5 turned round/around
6 got off
7 sat down
8 got out

114.2
2 away
3 round/around
4 going out … be back
5 down
6 over

114.3
2 back
3 in
4 up
10 going away … coming back

UNIT 115
115.1
2 She took off her hat. or She took her hat off.
3 He put down his bag. or He put his bag down.
4 She picked up the magazine. or She picked the magazine up.
5 He put on his sunglasses. or He put his sunglasses on.
6 She turned off the tap. or She turned the tap off.

115.2
2 He put his jacket on.
He put it on.
3 She took off her glasses.
She took them off.
4 I picked the phone up.
I picked it up.
5 They gave the key back.
They gave it back.
6 We turned off the lights.
We turned them off.

115.3
2 take it back
3 picked them up
4 switched it off
5 bring them back

115.4
3 knocked over
4 look it up
5 throw them away
6 tried on
7 showed me round
8 gave it up or gave up (without it)
9 fill it in
10 put your cigarette out
Key to Additional exercises

1 Kate is a doctor.
2 The children are asleep.
3 Gary isn’t hungry.
4 The books aren’t on the table.
5 The hotel is near the station.
6 The bus isn’t full.

2
3 she’s / she is
4 Where are
5 Is he
6 It’s / It is
7 I’m / I am or
   No, I’m not. I’m a student.
8 What colour is
9 It
10 Are you
11 How much are they?

3
3 He’s / He is having a shower.
4 Are the children playing?
5 Is it raining?
6 They’re / They are coming now.
7 Why are you standing here?
   I’m / I am waiting for somebody.

4
3 Sam doesn’t want
4 Do you want
5 Does Helen live
6 Sarah knows
7 I don’t travel
8 You usually get up
9 They don’t go out
10 Tom always finishes
11 does Julia do ... She works

5
3 She’s / She is a student.
4 She hasn’t got a car.
5 She goes out a lot.
6 She’s got / She has got a lot of friends.
7 She doesn’t like London.
8 She likes dancing.
9 She isn’t / She’s not interested in sport.

6
1 Are you married?
   Where do you live?
   Have you got / Do you have any children?
   How old is she?
2 How old are you?
   What do you do? / Where do you work? / What’s your job?
   Do you like / enjoy your job?
   Have you got / Do you have a car?
   Do you (usually) go to work by car?
3 What’s his name? / What’s he called?
   What does he do? / What’s his job?
   Does he live / work in London?

7
4 Sonia is 32 years old.
5 I’ve got / I have two sisters.
6 We often watch TV in the evening.
7 Jane never wears a hat.
8 A bicycle has got two wheels. / ... has two wheels.
9 These flowers are beautiful.
10 Mary speaks German very well.

8
3 are you cooking
4 plays
5 I’m going
6 It’s raining
7 I don’t watch
8 we’re looking
9 do you pronounce

9
2 we go
3 is shining
4 are you going
5 do you go
6 She writes
7 I never read
8 They’re watching
9 She’s talking
10 do you usually have
11 He’s visiting
12 I don’t drink

10
2 went
3 found
4 was
5 had
6 told
7 gave
8 were
9 thought
10 invited / asked

11
3 He was good at sport.
4 He played football.
5 He didn’t work hard at school.
6 He had a lot of friends.
7 He didn’t have a bicycle.
8 He wasn’t a quiet child.

12
3 How long were you there? / How long did you stay there?
4 Did you like / enjoy Amsterdam?
5 Where did you stay?
6 Was the weather good?
7 When did you get / come back?

13
3 I forgot
4 did you get
5 I didn’t speak
6 Did you have
7 he didn’t go
8 she arrived
9 did Robert live
10 The meal didn’t cost

14
2 were working
3 opened
4 rang ... was cooking
5 heard ... looked
6 was looking ... happened
7 wasn’t reading ... was watching
8 didn’t read
9 finished ... paid ... left
10 saw ... was walking ... was waiting
15
3 is playing
4 gave
5 doesn't like
6 did your parents go
7 saw ... was driving
8 Do you watch
9 were you doing
10 goes
11 'm/am trying
12 didn't sleep

16
3 it's/it has just finished/ended.
4 I've/I have found them.
or I've got them.
5 I haven't read it.
6 Have you seen her?
7 I've/I have had enough.
8 Have you (ever) been to Sweden?
9 We've/We have (just) been to the cinema.
10 They've/They have gone to a party.
11 He's/He has (just) woken up.
12 How long have you lived here? or ... have you been living here?
13 we've/we have known each other for a long time.
14 It's/It has been raining all day. or It has rained all day. or It has been horrible/bad all day.

17
3 's/has been
4 for
5 since
6 has he lived / has he been / has he been living
7 for
8 've/been/have been

18
Example answers:
3 I've just started this exercise.
4 I've met Julia a few times.
5 I haven't had dinner yet.
6 I've never been to Australia.
7 I've lived here since I was born.
8 I've lived here for three years.

19
3 bought/got
4 went
5 've/have read or read or 've/have finished with
6 haven't started (it) or haven't begun (it)
7 was
8 didn't see
9 left
10 's/has been
11 was
12 've/have never made

20
3 He's/He has already gone.
4 she left at 4 o'clock.
5 How many times have you been there?
6 I haven't decided yet.
7 It was on the table last night.
8 I've eaten there a few times.
9 What time did they arrive?

21
1 When was the last time? or When did you go the last time?
2 How long have you had it?
I bought/got it yesterday.
3 How long have you lived there? have you been there? have you been living there?
Before that we lived in Mill Road.
How long did you live in Mill Road?
4 How long have you worked there? have you been working there?
What did you do before that?
I was a taxi driver. or I worked as a taxi driver.

22
Example answers:
2 I didn't go out last night.
3 I was at work yesterday afternoon.
4 I went to a party a few days ago.
5 It was my birthday last week.
6 I went to America last year.

23
2 B 9 C
3 D 10 D
4 A 11 A
5 A 12 C
6 D 13 B
7 C 14 C
8 B 15 A

24
1 was damaged ... be knocked down
2 was built ... is used ... is being painted
3 is called ... be called ... was changed
4 have been made ... are produced

25
2 is visited
3 were damaged
4 be built
5 is being cleaned
6 be forgotten
7 has already been done
8 be kept
9 Have you ever been bitten
10 was stolen

26
2 My car was stolen last week.
3 You're/You are wanted on the phone.
4 All the bananas have been eaten.
5 The machine will be repaired.
6 We're/We are being watched.
7 The housework has to be done.

27
3 pushed
4 was pushed
5 has taken
6 is being repaired
7 invented
8 was the camera invented
9 have been washed or were washed
10 I've/I have washed them. or I washed them.
11 did they send or have they sent
12 be sent
Key to Additional exercises

28
2 B 8 B
3 A 9 B
4 C 10 A
5 B 11 B
6 C 12 C
7 C

29
1 I stayed
did you do
I watched
Are you going
I’m going
are you going to see
I don’t know. I haven’t decided
2 have you been
We arrived
are you staying / are you going to stay
do you like
we’re having
3 I’ve just remembered –
Karen phoned
She always phones ... Did she leave
she wants
I’ll phone ... Do you know
I’ll get
4 I’m going ... Do you want
are you going
Have you ever eaten
I’ve been ... I went
5 I’ve lost ... Have you seen
You were wearing ... I came
I’m not wearing
Have you looked / Did you look
I’ll go

30
1 we met
2 we sat / we were sitting
3 We didn’t know
4 we became
5 we liked
6 we spent
7 We left
8 we meet
9 has been
10 she’s working
11 She’s coming
12 she comes
13 we’ll have / we’re going to have
14 It will be

31
2 we’re staying
3 we enjoyed
4 We watched
5 slept
6 I don’t sleep
7 we’re not doing / we’re not going to do
8 we’re going
9 to see
10 We haven’t decided
11 wants
12 to go
13 I’ll send
14 you’re having
15 are working / have been working
16 he had
17 he needs
18 We’ve been
19 We got
20 seeing
21 I liked
22 we went
23 we left
24 had
25 he wasn’t injured
26 was damaged
27 We’ve changed / We changed
28 we’re leaving
29 We’re staying / We’re going to stay / We’ll stay
30 flying
31 That will be / That’s going to be
32 finished
33 I’ll let
34 we get
35 are looking
36 We’re going
37 we’ll send

32
2 A 11 B
3 B 12 A
4 C 13 C
5 B 14 B
6 C 15 C
7 B 16 A
8 A 17 C
9 C 18 B
10 A

33
2 a car
3 the fridge
4 a teacher
5 school
6 the cinema
7 a taxi
8 the piano
9 computers
10 the same

34
4 a horse
5 The sky
6 a tourist
7 for lunch (–)
8 the first President of the United States
9 a watch
10 remember names (–)
11 the next train
12 sends emails (–)
13 the garden
14 the Majestic Hotel
15 ill last week (–) ... to work (–)
16 the highest mountain in the world
17 to the radio ... having breakfast (–)
18 like sport (–) ... is basketball (–)
19 a doctor ... an art teacher
20 the second floor ... the top of the stairs ... on the right
21 After dinner (–) ... watched television (–)
22 a wonderful holiday in the south of France (–)

35
2 in 12 at
3 on 13 at
4 at 14 in
5 on 15 at
6 in 16 on
7 since 17 by
8 on 18 for ... on
9 by 19 to ... in
10 in 20 at ... in
11 for
<p>| Present | 6.6  | C    | 12.7 | A    |
|         | 6.7  | D    | 12.8 | D    |
|         | 6.8  | C    |      |      |
|         | 6.9  | B    |      |      |
| <em>Modals, imperative etc.</em> | 7.1  | C, D | 13.1 | A, D |
|         | 7.2  | A, C | 13.2 | C    |
|         | 7.3  | A    | 13.3 | C, D |
|         | 7.4  | D    | 13.4 | A, D |
|         | 7.5  | B    | 13.5 | B    |
|         | 7.6  | E    | 13.6 | D    |
|         | 7.7  | B, D |      |      |
|         | 7.8  | D    |      |      |
|         | 7.9  | C    |      |      |
|         | 7.10 | C    |      |      |
|         | 7.11 | A    |      |      |
|         | 7.12 | E    |      |      |
| <em>There and it</em> | 8.1  | B    | 14.1 | A    |
|         | 8.2  | E    | 14.2 | C    |
|         | 8.3  | A    | 14.3 | D    |
|         | 8.4  | A    | 14.4 | B    |
|         | 8.5  | B    | 14.5 | B, C |
| <em>Auxiliary verbs</em> | 9.1  | C    | 14.6 | A    |
|         | 9.2  | A    | 14.7 | E    |
|         | 9.3  | C    | 14.8 | A    |
|         | 9.4  | B    | 14.9 | D    |
|         | 9.5  | B    |      |      |
|         | 9.6  | C    |      |      |
|         | 9.7  | D    |      |      |
| <em>Questions</em> | 10.1 | D    | 15.1 | C    |
|         | 10.2 | D    | 15.2 | B    |
|         | 10.3 | A    | 15.3 | A, C |
|         | 10.4 | A    | 15.4 | B    |
|         | 10.5 | B    | 15.5 | B    |
|         | 10.6 | D    | 15.6 | A    |
|         | 10.7 | B    | 15.7 | D    |
|         | 10.8 | A    | 15.8 | C    |
|         | 10.9 | C, E | 15.9 | B    |
|         | 10.10| C    | 15.10| B    |
|         | 10.11| A    | 15.11| E    |
|         | 10.12| A, C | 15.12| D    |
| <em>Determiners and pronouns</em> | 11.1 | E    | 15.13| B    |
|         | 11.2 | A, B, D | 15.14| A    |
| <em>Present perfect</em> | 3.1  | B, E | 16.1 | C    |
|         | 3.2  | D    | 16.2 | C    |
|         | 3.3  | B    | 16.3 | B    |
|         | 3.4  | D    | 16.4 | B    |
|         | 3.5  | E    | 16.5 | C    |
|         | 3.6  | B    | 16.6 | A, C |
|         | 3.7  | A    | 16.7 | D    |
|         | 3.8  | C    | 16.8 | B, D |
|         | 3.9  | D    | 16.9 | A    |
|         | 3.10 | E    | 16.10| B    |
| <em>Past</em> | 2.1  | B    | 16.11| E    |
|         | 2.2  | E    | 16.12| B, D |
|         | 2.3  | D    | 16.13| A    |
|         | 2.4  | B    | 16.14| A, B |
|         | 2.5  | A    | 16.15| D    |
|         | 2.6  | D    | 16.16| A, C |
|         | 2.7  | A    | 16.17| D    |
|         | 2.8  | C    | 16.18| B    |
|         | 2.9  | C    | 16.19| A    |
| <em>Passive</em> | 4.1  | D    |      |      |
|         | 4.2  | C    |      |      |
|         | 4.3  | E    |      |      |
|         | 4.4  | A    |      |      |
|         | 4.5  | A    |      |      |
| <em>Verb forms</em> | 5.1  | D    |      |      |
|         | 5.2  | B    |      |      |
| <em>Future</em> | 6.1  | A    |      |      |
|         | 6.2  | A    |      |      |
|         | 6.3  | C    |      |      |
|         | 6.4  | A, B |      |      |
|         | 6.5  | B    |      |      |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives and adverbs</th>
<th>Conjunctions and clauses</th>
<th>Prepositions</th>
<th>Phrasal verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17.1 A</td>
<td>18.4 A</td>
<td>20.1 D</td>
<td>21.1 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.2 C</td>
<td>18.5 A, D</td>
<td>20.2 E</td>
<td>21.2 A, B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.3 C</td>
<td></td>
<td>20.3 C, D</td>
<td>21.3 B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.4 D</td>
<td></td>
<td>20.4 B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.5 B</td>
<td></td>
<td>20.5 A, D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.6 B</td>
<td></td>
<td>20.6 A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.7 A, C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.8 E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.9 A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.10 B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.11 D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.12 A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.13 D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.14 C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.1 B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.2 C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.3 B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.1 C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.2 A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.3 D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.4 E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.5 B, C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.6 A, B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.7 B, D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.8 A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.7 B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.8 C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.9 B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.10 D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.11 D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.12 A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.13 C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.14 D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.15 A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.16 E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.17 C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.18 B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.19 D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.20 D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).

a/an 65
a and some 67–68
a/an and the 69
about 111E
above 109E
active and passive Appendix 1
across 110
adjectives 85
adjectives and adverbs
(quick/quickly) 86
comparatives (older / more
expensive) 87–89
superlatives (the oldest / the most
expensive) 90
get + adjective (get tired etc.) 56B
possessive adjectives (my/your/her
e.tc.) 60, 62
something/anything e.tc. + adjective
79C
adjectives + preposition (afraid of
e.tc.) 112A
adverbs 86
word order (always/usually/often
e.tc.) 94
advise (advise somebody to ...) 53B
afraid (of) 112A
after 98, 105
ago 19B
all
all and every etc. 80
all (of) 81
word order 94
along 110
already 95C
already + present perfect 16B
word order 94
also (word order) 94
always
always + present simple 5C
word order 94
am/is/are 1–2
am/is/are + -ing (present
continuous) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C
there is / there are 37
an see a
and 97
angry (with/about) 112A
another 65B
any
any and some 76
not + any 77
any and no 77
any (of) 81
anybody/anyone/anything
76D, 78–79
anywhere 79
apostrophe (‘I’m, it’s etc.)
Appendix 4
apostrophe’s (my brother’s car) 64
are see am/is/are
around 110, 114–115,
Appendix 7
arrive 108C
articles (a/an/the) 65–73
a/an 65, 67–68
a/an and the 69
the 70–73
as (not as ... as) 89
ask
ask somebody to ... 53B
ask somebody for ... 113A
at
at 8 o’clock / at night etc. 103
at the bus stop / at work etc.
106–107
at and to 108
at the age of ... 111B
auxiliary verbs 23, 40–42
away
run away / throw away etc.
(phrasal verbs) 114–115,
Appendix 7

back
come back / give back etc. (phrasal
verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7
be (infinitive of am/is/are)
am/is/are 1–2
am/is/are + -ing (present
continuous) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C
was/were 10
was/were + -ing (past continuous)
13, 23A, 51C
have/has been (present perfect)
15–18
passive 21–22, Appendix 1
will be 27
because 97
been
have/has been (present perfect)
15–18
been and gone 17C
there has/have been 38B
before 98, 105
begin (begin to ... or begin -ing)
52C
behind 109A
belong (to) 113A
below 109E
beside 109A
best 90B
better 87D
between 109A
bit (a bit older/bigger etc.) 88D
born 21C
both 82
word order 94
but 97
by 111C
by after the passive (I was bitten by
a dog.) 21D
by myself / by yourself etc. 63C
by (= beside) 109C
can/can’t 30
comparative (older / more
expensive etc.) 87–89
conditional (if ...) if I do ... 99
if I did ... 100
conjunctions 97–100
and / but / or / so / because 97
when / before / while / after / until 98
if 99–100
continue (continue to ... or
continue -ing) 52C
corrections (short forms – I’m,
it’s, you’re etc.) Appendix 4
could/couldn’t 30C–D
countable and uncountable
nouns 67–68
depend (on) 113C
did
didn’t in negatives 12, 23D, 40C,
43B, 51A
did in questions 12, 23D, 40C,
44B, 51A
different (from) 112A
direct speech and reported
speech 50
do and make 57
don’t / doesn’t in negatives 6, 23D,
40C, 43B, 51A
do / does in questions 7, 23D,
40C, 44B, 51A
don’t go / don’t fall etc.
in imperative 35B
down 110
sit down / put down etc. (phrasal
verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
during 105
Index

each other 63D
either
either and too 42A
either (of) 82
embedded questions (Do you know what …? etc.) 49
end (at the end of) 103B, 106B
enjoy
enjoy -ing 52B
enjoy myself/yourself etc. 63A
enough 91
enough and too 92D
ever
Have you ever …? 17
superlative + ever 90E
word order 94
every 80
everybody/everyone/everything/everywhere 80C
expect 52A, 53B
far
How far is it? 39A, 47D
far — further 87B
fast 86C
fed up (with) 112A
few / a few 84
finish (finish -ing) 52B
for
for ten minutes / for three years etc. 19, 104D
for and to … 54B
for a walk etc. 55C
for and during 105C
from 104A, 110
front (in front of) 109A–B
full (of) 112A
further 87B
future 25–28
I’m working tomorrow. (present continuous) 25
The concert starts at 7.30. (present simple) 25C
(I’m going to do something) 26
will 27–28
shall 27D, 28C
future after when/when/while etc. 98B
future after if 99B
geographical names with and without the 73
gerund see -ing
get 56
get to (a place) 56C, 108C
get on / get up etc. (phrasal verbs) 114, Appendix 6
give
give something to somebody / give somebody something 96
give up / give back etc. (phrasal verbs) 115, Appendix 6–7
go
55
go -ing (go swimming etc.) 55D
go home / go to work / go to the cinema 71
go in / go back etc. (phrasal verbs) 114
going to (I’m going to do something) 26
gone and been 17C
good
good and well 86D
good at 112A
got
past of get 11C, 56
have/has got 9, 58A
had
past of have 11C
had to 33B
He said he had (done something)
50, Appendix 1.1
happen (to) 113A
hard 86C
has see have
hate 52C–D
have 9, 58
have got / has got 9, 58A
have done / have been etc. (present perfect) 15–18, 23C
have to 33
have a nice time / have fun etc. 35A
there has/has been 38B
have breakfast / have a shower etc. 58B
her 59–60, 62
hers 61–62
herself 63
him 59, 62
himself 63
his 60–62
holiday (on holiday) 55B, 111A
home 55A, 71A, 108B
get home 56C, 108C
how 47
How long have you …? (present perfect) 18
how big? / how old? / how far? etc. 47D
How long does it take? 48
how much? / how many? 83A
I/you/he/she etc. (personal pronouns) 59, 62
if 99–100
if we go / if you see etc. 99
if and when 99C
if I had / if we went 100
Do you know if …? 49C
imperative (do this / don’t do that etc.) 35
in
in April / in summer etc. 103
in a room / in hospital etc. 106–107
in five minutes / in three years etc. 103E
in and to 108
put something in 110
go in / fill in etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7
infinite (do/see/play etc.)
infinite (do/see etc.) and to + infinite (to do / to see etc.) 51, 53
can/will/should etc. + infinite 51A
verbs + to + infinite (I want to go etc.) 51B, 52–53
infinite and -ing (do/doing etc.) 51–52
I went to the shop to buy … (infinite for purpose) 54
infinite and for … 54B
adjective + infinite (it’s easy to …) 39B
something to eat / nowhere to go etc. 79D
-ing (doing/playing/going etc.)
am/is/are + -ing (present continuous) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C
was/were + -ing (past continuous) 13, 23A, 51C
-ing and infinite (do/doing etc.) 51–52
verbs + -ing (enjoy -ing etc.) 52B–C
go -ing (go swimming etc.) 55D
prepositions + -ing 105D, 112B
interested (in) 112A
into 110
irregular verbs 11C, 24B,
Appendix 2–3
is see am/is/are
it 39, 59B
it is and there is 37B, 39A
it’s and its 60C
its 60
just
just + present perfect 16A
word order 94
kind (kind to somebody / kind of somebody) 112A
know (Do you know where …? ) 49

316
learn (learn to ...) 52A
left (on the left) 109A
lend (lend something to somebody) 96
less 88C
let 53D
let’s (let’s go / let’s dance etc.) 35C, 53D
like (What is it like?) 46B
like (verb) would like 34, 52D, 53A
do you like? and would you like? 34C
like to ... or like -ing 52C
listen (to) 113A
little / a little 84
look
look + adjective (look tired etc.) 85C
look at / for / after 113B
lot (a lot of ...) 83
love 52C–D
make 57
make somebody do something 53D
make and do 57
many
many and much 83
not as many (as) 89B
too many 92C
married
married to 112A
get married 56B
may 29D
me / you / him etc. (personal pronouns) 59, 62
middle (in the middle of) 107A, 109A
might 29
mind (I don’t mind -ing) 52B
mine / yours / hers etc. (possessive pronouns) 61–62
modal verbs (will / can / might etc.) 27–34, 51A
more 87C, 88
most
most (of) 81
the most expensive / the most difficult etc. 90
much
much and many 83
much bigger / much more expensive 88D
not as much (as) 89B
too much 92C
must 31
mustn’t 31C
must and should 32E
must and have to 33D
my / your / his etc. (possessive adjectives) 60, 62
myself / yourself etc. (reflexive pronouns) 63
need
don’t need to 31D
need to ... 52A
negatives 43
negative questions 44C
no and none 77
not + any 77–78
neither
Neither am I / Neither do I etc. 42B
neither (of) 82
never
never + present simple 5C
never + present perfect 17B
word order 94
next to 109A
nice (nice to somebody / nice of somebody) 112A
no (no money / no friends etc.) 77A–B, 81B
nobody / no-one / nothing 78–79
no-one and none 77C
none 77B–C, 81B–C
nor (Nor am I / Nor do I etc.) 42B
nouns (countable and uncountable) 67–68
nowhere 79
of
the roof of the building etc. 64C
the ... of ... 73E
off 110
got off / turn off etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6
offer (to do something) 52A
often
often + present simple 5C
word order 94
on
on Monday / on 25 April etc. 103
on the table / on the wall 106–107
on the left / right 109A
on holiday / on television etc. 111A
on go (on holiday / a trip etc.) 55B
got on / put on etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
one / ones 75
opposite 109B
or 97A–B
ought to 32F
our 60, 62
ours 61–62
ourselves 63
out
out of 110
go out / put out etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
over 110
climb over / knock over (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
pair (a pair of ...) 66B
passive 21–22, 23B, Appendix 1
present simple (is done) and past simple (was done) 21
present continuous (is being done) and present perfect (has been done) 22
will / can / must etc. (be) done
Appendix 1.2
past (Go past the cinema ...) 110
past continuous (was / were + -ing) 13–14, 23A, 51C
past continuous (I was doing) and past simple (I did) 14
past continuous passive,
Appendix 1.1
past participle (cleaned / done / seen etc.) 24A
present perfect (I have cleaned) 15, 23C
passive (the room was cleaned) 21–22, 23B, Appendix 1
regular (cleaned) and irregular (seen) 24B, Appendix 2–3
past perfect
He said he had (done something) 50
active and passive Appendix 1.1
past simple (did / cleaned / saw etc.) 11–12
negative (didn’t ...) 12, 43B
questions (did ... ?) 12, 44B
was / were 10
regular (cleaned) and irregular verbs (saw) 11B–C, Appendix 2–3
past simple + ago 19B
past simple (I did) and present perfect (I have done) 20
past simple (I did) and past continuous (I was doing) 14
past simple passive (the room was cleaned) 21, 23B, Appendix 1.1
if + past simple (if I had / if we went) 100
people 66C–D
personal pronouns (I / we / you etc.) 59, 62
persuade (persuade somebody to ...) 53B
phrasal verbs (get up / put on etc.) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
plural (up → caps / man → men etc.) 66
police (plural) 66D
positive adjectives (my/your/his etc.) 60, 62
positive pronouns (mine/your/his etc.) 61–62
prefer 52C–D
prepositions 103–113
at/on/in (time) 103
for/since 19, 104
until 104A–B
before/after/during/while 105
in/at/on (places) 106–107
to/in/at (places) 108
on 103, 106–107, 109A, 111A
at 103, 106–108, 111B
under/below/opp site etc.
(position) 109
up/over/through etc. (movement) 110
by 109C, 111C
with/without 111D, 112B
about 111E
prepositions + -ing (in -ing / without -ing etc.) 105D, 112B
adjective + prepositions (afraid of etc.) 112A
verb + preposition (listen to / wait for etc.) 113
prepositions at the end (Who is she talking to?) 46
prepositions in relative clauses
(the man she is talking to) 102B
present continuous (am/is/are + -ing) 3–4, 23A, 51C
negative (I'm not -ing) 3
questions (are you -ing?) 4
present continuous (I am doing) and present simple (I do) 8
present continuous passive 22A, Appendix 1.1
present continuous for the future
(What are you doing tomorrow?) 25
present perfect (I have done) 15–20, 23C
present perfect + just 16A
present perfect + already 16B
present perfect + yet 16C, 95B
Have you ever ...? 17
gone and been 17C
How long have you ...? 18
present perfect + for/since 18–19
present perfect continuous (I have been -ing) 18B
present perfect (I have done) and past simple (I did) 20
present perfect passive 22B,
Appendix 1.1
regular and irregular verbs 15B,
24, Appendix 2–3
present simple (I work / she works etc.) 5–7, 23D
negative (don't/doesn't) 6, 43B
questions (do/does ... ?) 7, 44B
present simple + always/usually/never etc. 5C
present simple (I do) and present continuous (I am doing) 8
present simple passive (the room is cleaned) 21, 23B, Appendix 1.1
present simple for the future
(The concert starts at 7.30.) 25C
present simple after when/while etc. 98B
present simple after if 99B
promise (promise to ...) 52A
pronouns
personal pronouns (I/me/you etc.) 59, 62
possessive pronouns (mine yours etc.) 61–62
reflexive pronouns (myself/yourself etc.) 63
ones/ones 75
relative pronouns (who/which/that) 101–102
put
put something in ... 110
put on / put out etc. (phrasal verbs) 115, Appendix 7
questions 44–47
am/is/are ... ? 2
do/does ... ? (present simple) 7, 44B
did ... ? (past simple) 12, 44B
Why don’t ... ? / Why isn’t ... ? etc. 44C
Who saw you? / Who did you see? 45
preposition at the end (Who is she talking to?) 46
What / Which / How ... ? 47
How long does it take? 48
Do you know where ... ?
(embedded questions) 49
reply questions (Have you? / Are you? etc.) 41A
question tags (... do you? / ... isn’t it? etc.) 41B
reflexive pronouns (myself / yourself etc.) 63
regular and irregular verbs 11,
24, Appendix 2–3
relative clauses 101–102
relative pronouns (who/which/that) 101–102
reply questions (Have you? / Are you?) 41A
reported speech
He said that ... / He told me that ... 50
He told me to ... 53B–C
right (on the right) 109A
round 110
turn round / show round (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7
's (apostrophe 's) 64, Appendix 4.5
same 70B, 89E
say/said
He said that ... (reported speech) 50
say and tell 50B
shall 27D, 28C
short forms (I'm / it's / you've etc.) Appendix 4
should 32
simple past see past simple
simple present see present simple
since 19A, 104C
singular and plural (flower → flowers) 66
so
so am I / so do I etc. 42B
I was tired, so I went to bed. 97
some
some and a/an 67–68
some and any 76
some (as) 81
somebody/someone / something/somewhere 76, 79
sometimes
sometimes + present simple 5C
word order 94
sorry (sorry about and sorry for)
112A
speak (to) 113A
spelling Appendix 5
start (start to ... and start -ing) 52C
still 95
word order 94
stop (stop -ing) 52B
suggest (suggest -ing) 52B
superlative (the biggest / the most expensive etc.) 90

318
tags (question tags) 41B

take (How long does it take?) 48

talk (to) 113A

tell/told
He told me that ... 50
tell and say 50B
Can you tell me where ... ? 49A
He told me to ... 53B–C

tenses
active and passive Appendix 1.1
present continuous (I am doing) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C
present simple (I do) 5–7, 23D, 25C
past simple (I did) 11–12, 14, 20, 23D
past continuous (I was doing) 13–14, 23A, 51C
present perfect (I have done) 15–20, 23C
be/have/do in present and past tenses 23

than 88–89

that 74
He said that ... (reported speech) 50C
that and this 74
a thing that ... (relative clauses) 101

the 69–73
the and a/an 69
the same 70B
the sun / the sky etc. 70C
the cinema / the theatre / the bank etc. 71B
flowers / the flowers 72
the in names of places 73
the biggest / the most expensive etc. 90

their 60, 62
theirs 61, 62
them 59, 62
themselves 63

there
there is/are 37
there was/were 38A
there has/have been 38B
there will be 38C
there is and it is 37B

des 74

dine (think about / think of) 113A

dhis 74

dthose 74

by 110

till (= until) 104B

to
time 104A
places 108, 110

go to ... 55A, 108A
get to ... 56C, 108C
to + infinitive (to go / to be etc.) see infinitive

too 92
too and either 42A
turn (turn round / turn on etc.) (phrasal verbs) 114–115,
Appendix 7

uncountable nouns
(salt/water/music etc.) 67–68
under 109D, 110

until 98B, 104A–B
up 110
get up / pick up etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7

us 59, 62
used (I used to ...) 36
usually
usually + present simple 5C
word order 94
verbs
present tenses 1–9, 23, 25
past tenses 10–14, 20, 23
present perfect 15–20, 23
past continuous 21–22, Appendix 1
regular and irregular verbs 24,
Appendix 2–3
future 25–28
modal verbs (will / can / should etc.) 27–34, 51A
negatives 43
questions 44–47
reported speech 50
verbs + -ing 51–52
verbs + to ... (infinitive) 51–53
verbs + preposition (look at / speak to etc.) 113

phrasal verbs (get up / put on etc.) 114–115, Appendix 6–7

wait (for) 54C, 113A
want
want to ... 52A
want somebody to ... 53A
was/were 10
was/were + -ing (past continuous) 13, 23A, 51C
was/were done (passive) 21, 23B
there was/were 38A
if I was/were ... 100B
well 86D

were see was

what
What ... ? and Who ... ? 45C
What ... like? 46B
What ... ? 47
What ... ? and Which ... ? 47C

when 98

which
Which ... ? 47
Which ... ? and What ... ? 47C
Which one/ones? 75B

a thing which ... (relative clauses) 101

while 98, 105

who
Who ... ? 45

a person who ... (relative clauses) 101

whose (Whose is this?) 61D

will 27–28
will and shall 27D, 28C
won’t 27A

there will be 38C

with/without 111D

without + -ing 112B

won’t (= will not) 27A

word order
questions 44–46
present continuous questions 4B
present simple questions 7B
past simple questions 12D

passive 21–22
Do you know where ... ?
(embedded questions) 49
verb + object 93A

place and time 93B
always / usually / often etc. 94

after give / lend / send etc. 96

worse 87D

worst 90B

would
I’d like / would you like? 34
would like / love etc. 52D

He would buy a car if he had the money. 100

write (to) 113A

yet 95B

yet + present perfect 16C
you 59, 62

your 60, 62

yours 61–62

yourself / yourselves 63